

Test Your Tactical Ability

Yakov
Neishtadt



POPULAR

First published 1981

Reprinted with corrections 1984

© Yakov Neishtadt

ISBN 0 7134 40139 (limp)

Set by Hope Services, Abingdon

and printed in Great Britain by

Billing & Sons Ltd, London, and Worcester

for the Publishers: Chess Digest, Inc.,

11836 Judd Court, Suite 338-E

Dallas, Texas, 75243

A BATSFORD/CHESS DIGEST, INC., CHESS BOOK

Adviser: R. G. Wade, O.B.E.

Technical Editor: P. A. Lamford

Contents

Introduction	7
1 Decoying	12
2 Attraction	28
3 Destroying the Guard	38
4 Clearing a Square or a Line	41
5 The Pin	49
6 Line Closing	55
7 Blocking	59
8 Combining Tactical Devices	62
9 Promoting a Pawn	78
10 A Miraculous Escape	84
11 A Tactics Exam	93
12 Do You Know the Classics?	125
Solutions to Exercises	136

Introduction

It is well known that the best way of practising is either to play an actual game or to take part in competitions. In other words, in order to play better, one has to play more, and, whenever possible, against strong players. However, this basic truth needs to be qualified to a certain extent.

Every game is an exam of sorts. But it is an exam without any precise replies to questions that could be extremely important for achieving perfection. Did you (and your opponent) proceed correctly in the situation that was constantly changing from move to move? What was the critical moment, i.e. where was the decisive blunder made and was it exploited as it deserved to be?

'In order to do that you would have to analyze the game very carefully', the reader might interrupt. 'But not on your own', we might add, 'but with a chessplayer who is obviously more qualified than you are'.

Your analysis, no matter how careful it may be, needs to be checked, since this analysis is limited by the extent to which you understand chess. Let us assume that you have found the place where, as it may appear to you, you lost your way, and you have brought the inaccuracies and errors to light, and you now know how you should have played. But have you really found the best moves? And how sharp is your tactical vision? Have you not missed a profitable combinational possibility in your analysis? Finally, how developed is your 'feel for the position', i.e. how do you grasp the situation, how do you assess the positions that may arise after you have gone through the variations? In general, are you not building castles in the air and, at the same time, are you not sometimes missing decisive combinations, labouring under the conviction that there is nothing extraordinary in the position?

But even if you have at your disposal the permanent opportunity of analyzing your games together with an experienced coach, it is doubtful whether you will achieve any real results if you only spend time on your own games. It is also essential to look at other peoples' creations — both classical and modern: instructive games by masters, model combinations and original ones, typical plans of play. Let us add to this a command of the fundamentals of opening and endgame theory.

8 *Introduction*

We can find all this (or at least we should be able to find it) in a traditional textbook on chess. By playing through the instructive games cited in the textbook, you memorize what you see and try to act in a like manner in similar situations.

It is difficult to judge on the question of how you will have assimilated other peoples' experience, since there is no contact between the author of the book and the reader. After all, there is no exam to sit on the course you have attended.

In general, every method described here has its pluses and its minuses. They, as it were, complement one another.

But can one study the works of others in conditions that are close to those of an actual game? This is the aim of the method, currently gaining acceptance, of solving exercises.

Test Your Tactical Ability is a compilation of such exercises, it is your teach-yourself book and your sparring-partner. By pondering over positions and suggesting solutions for Masters and Grandmasters (as well as rank and file chessplayers who have realized outstanding combinations), you will easily be able to check your own ability. The detailed answers to each exercise will enable you to establish how you got on with the job.

By solving the exercises you will noticeably broaden your chess horizon and develop your combinational abilities. Experience comes from what one has seen, but even more so from what one has lived through. The tactical operations which you carry out yourself will imprint themselves on your memory much more reliably, than if you were to try and assimilate the same material from a textbook.

In all the positions cited the moment before the decisive turnabout of events has been highlighted. Human memory is emotional — we remember things best of all if they have a bright emotional hue to them. Thus the solutions to the positions, as a rule, are striking or, at the very least, unusual. The method of 'sensation' (A. Nimzowitsch's term) is designed to contribute to the best possible assimilation of the material.

The exercises, which are grouped by theme, are preceded by a short theoretical section, which includes an explanation and a few characteristic examples. Following this 'introductory lecture' come the exercises themselves. Some have a short explanatory note, others come under the general heading 'How would you have played?'. In every one of these sections the examples are arranged in order of increasing difficulty.

In the largest section (which includes 150 exercises out of a total of 378) the theme of the imminent tactical operation is no longer indicated. This has been done on purpose, in order to complicate the exercise and to deprive the reader (who will have managed to acquire a certain amount of experience) of a substantial hint.

54 classic positions have been selected for a special section. Looking at the diagrams, you can either check your chess erudition or . . . follow the example of the classical players and find the strongest continuation.

The names of the participants in each contest will be found in the solutions. If there is no reference to an actual game it means that an instructive position has been cited.

And, finally, a small piece of advice on the subject of method, or rather, a recommendation. Since we have set ourselves the task of getting the learning process close to the conditions of an actual game, try, once you have set up the position, to do the exercise without moving the pieces, and only start going through the analysis when you are convinced that you cannot solve the example mentally.

The reader will probably want to point out that by no means all the famous Grandmasters figure by virtue of their combination in *Test Your Tactical Ability*. But this book is not a collection of combinations by outstanding players, but a set of exercises, and thus the examples have not been selected on the 'principle of representation', but with a purely instructive aim in mind.

Alongside fragments from the games of illustrious Masters you will come across examples from simultaneous displays and totally insignificant competitions.

It may happen that this book, which is aimed at a wide cross-section of readers, will be opened by a chessplayer of some experience -- a Master or even a Grandmaster. Well, we can also guarantee him not less than a hundred unfamiliar positions!

And now, before getting down to work, let us go through the definition of a combination.

A combination is a forced variation with a sacrifice, pursuing a definite aim and leading to a material transformation of the position. A combination is a material leap, a burst that clears the situation on the board by revealing the true values and exposing the false ones.

May we also draw attention to the element of surprise, and in connection with that, the aesthetic effect of a combination. Sacrifices affect our imagination, especially when they result in the triumph of a small force.

There are, of course, combinations that are very well known. They are similar in design and as time has passed, each one of them has become a sort of tactical device. But the game of chess is so complex and protean that the possibilities for new, original combinations are truly endless. In addition to which, every chess position is concrete i.e. it contains its own features, which are proper to it and it only, and so experience, although it does teach, does not fully insure anybody against making mistakes. Top-rank chess-players the world over have had the opportunity to become convinced of this.

So let us go over the essential features of a combination:

1. Coordinated action of two or more pieces.
2. Forced aspect of the variation.
3. Presence of a sacrifice.
4. Positive aim of the operation.

The last condition relates to the classification of combinations.

The aim of any combination is the achievement of an objective advantage; otherwise it is no longer a combination. Such an aim can be mating the enemy king, the gain of material, a profitable change in the position (e.g. intensifying the attack, improving the interaction of the forces, getting to a promising ending etc.), and in an unfavourable situation it can mean saving the game (e.g. by perpetual check, stalemate, equalizing on material or reaching a theoretically drawn endgame), as well as weakening the opponent's attack or relieving your own defences (say, by reducing your opponent's positional pressure), and creating obstacles to your opponent's realization of an advantage.

Combinations can be classified by the successes scored by the side realizing a combination, as well as by other features. For instance, by *the material* which is sacrificed (combinations with a queen sacrifice, rook sac., material sac., minor piece sac., pawn sac.), by *the pieces* that take part in the combination and play a major role in it, by *the target* of the combination and, finally (this is the most important subdivision) – by *the ideas* behind the combination.

We now come to two categories which have not only a theoretical significance, but also a profoundly practical one. Before looking for a combination, the chessplayer establishes what grounds there are for a search in a given position. After all, a search is not conducted on an empty spot – it is dictated by the peculiarities of the situation.

The *motif* of a combination – that is the peculiarity of a situation that points which way the search will go. For instance, the crowded position of the enemy king or conversely, the distance between a piece and its guard, an insufficient or illusory guard on the eighth (or on the first) rank, a weakness on the squares directly adjacent to the king, bishops occupying open diagonals on which there might be an important target (very often the king), individual pieces left unguarded, upsetting the interaction of various pieces, exposing the position of the queen, limiting its mobility, the disposition of the king or the queen on one line (vertical, horizontal, or diagonal), the disposition of the major pieces on one diagonal, the possibility of exploiting the so-called geometric properties of the pieces (e.g. a double blow with the queen, a knight fork, an open attack etc.). The motif is nothing other than the primary bearing.

So, first of all, we have the direction of the search (the motif), and then

the search itself, the discovery of combinational ideas and the calculation of concrete variations.

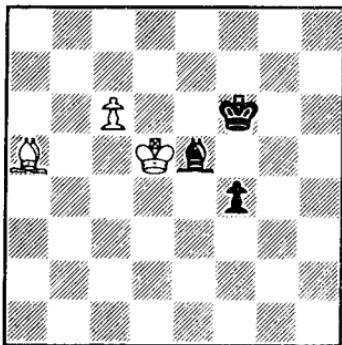
The *theme* of a combination (or the idea behind it) can be defined by the reply to the following question: by what means, by what method will the combination be realized? For example, by decoying the queen away from guarding a key square (the theme, or the idea of decoying), by attracting a rook to a fork (the theme, or the idea of attraction) etc.

The themes of the tactical operations have been dealt with fairly thoroughly, and we will come back to them in greater detail.

1 Decoying

That is the name of the tactical device that forces the opponent's piece or pawn to leave its position and give access to an important square (or line).

The motives behind the operation (or its final aims) can vary; let us begin with a simple illustrative example from the endgame.



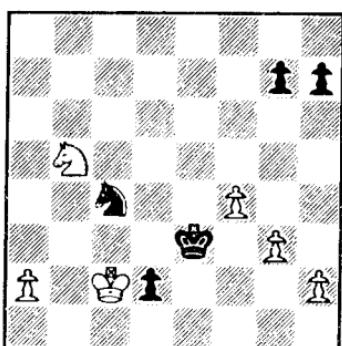
White to Move

Black's bishop must guard the c7 square, otherwise White's pawn will promote to a queen. But, if he continues 1 $\mathbb{Q}c3$, White deflects his opponent's bishop away from the key diagonal and after 1 ... $Bxc3$ 2 $c7$ wins.

Barcza

Moscow, 1949

Simagin

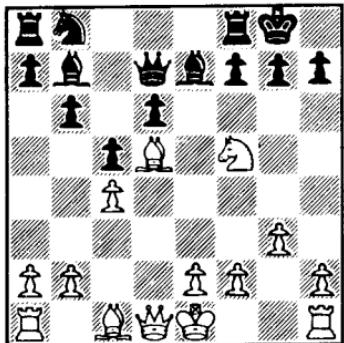


Black to Move

The straightforward move 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}e2$ is followed by 2 $\mathbb{Q}c3+$, and White has sound control over the promotion square of the d-pawn. This means that the knight must be drawn away, in order to prevent it from reaching c3. This is achieved by the move 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}a3+!$ After 2 $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ the pawn promotes to a queen.

In the examples we have seen, the aim of the decoying sacrifice was to allow the passed pawn to reach the promotion square. Now let us examine some instances where the decoying is followed by a

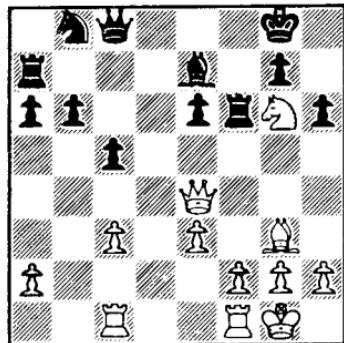
knight fork. The final aim of such an operation is usually the gain of material advantage.



White to Move

1 $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{W}xb7$ 2 $\mathbb{W}d5!$ Black resigned, in view of the fact that he loses a piece: 2 . . . $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$ and 4 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$; 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 3 $\mathbb{W}xc6!$

Panczik . . . Schurade
Zakopane, 1978



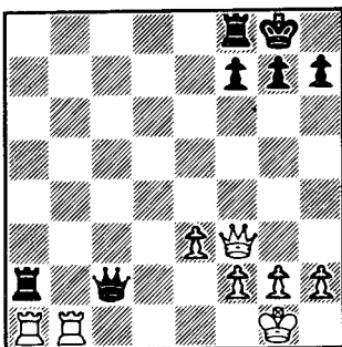
White to Move

The game was brought to a close by the astounding 'long' move 1 $\mathbb{Q}a8!!$ The capture of the queen is followed by 2 $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$ and 3 $\mathbb{Q}xc8$, winning a piece. And if 1 ... $\mathbb{R}b7$, then 2 $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$ $\mathbb{R}xe7$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ with the same result.

Let us have a look at a motif that occurs very frequently — the exploitation of a hidden weakness on the eighth (or the first) rank. If the king has no 'flight square' (or if it cannot be used, i.e. the square is under attack), the act of decoying the pieces guarding the eighth (or the first) rank can bring about a catastrophe.

Füster

Balogh



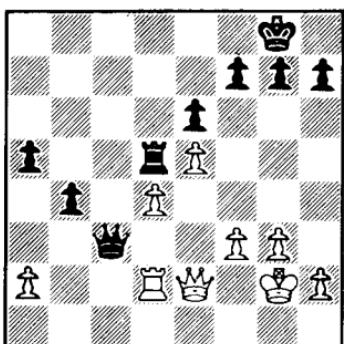
Black to Move

There followed 1 . . . ♜b2!
(mating the rook!) 0-1

14 Decoying

Lepek

Correspondence, 1962

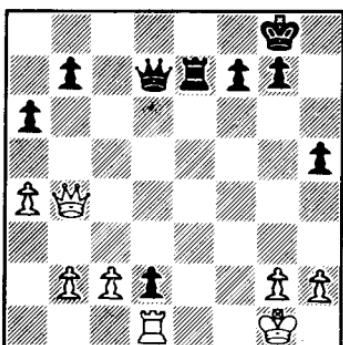


White to Move

1 $\mathbb{B}c2!$ $\mathbb{W}xd4$ 2 $\mathbb{B}c4$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ (one can easily see that Black's replies are forced — otherwise the eighth rank will be left unprotected) 3 $\mathbb{B}c8+$ $\mathbb{E}d8$ 4 $\mathbb{W}b5!$ Decoying the queen ends the game.

Madsen

Correspondence, 1953



Black to Move

Here Black wins by 1 ... $\mathbb{B}c1+$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xe1$ $\mathbb{W}d4+$.

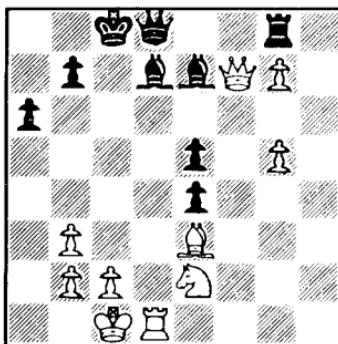
It can sometimes happen that a piece is overworked with too many

Koonen

responsibilities — it has to defend two, or even several, important potential targets (other pieces, squares, lines). The act of decoying the overworked piece leaves one of the targets defenceless.

Kveinis

Ordzhonikidze, 1978



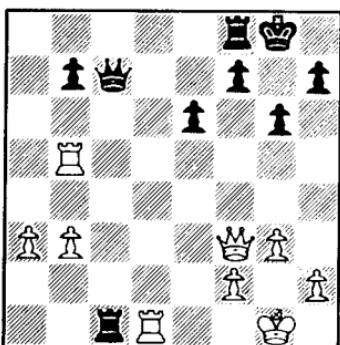
White to Move

After the king has been deflected — 1 $\mathbb{W}c4+$ $\mathbb{W}b8$, a tactical blow exploiting the overworked queen wins the game — 2 $\mathbb{B}xd7$.

Here are some more examples of typical decoying sacrifices.

Ragozin

Panov
12th U.S.S.R. Championship, 1940

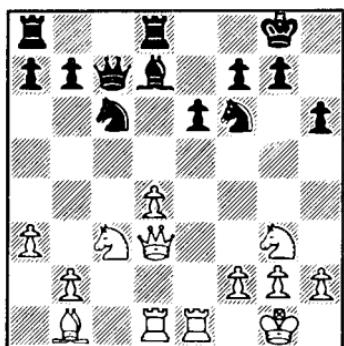


Black to Play

With his last move White parried the check with the rook. What should Black do? The move 1... $\mathbb{Q}c6$, drawing the queen away from defending the rook at d1, and at the same time attacking the rook at b5, forced White to resign.

Höfer

Hamburg, 1975

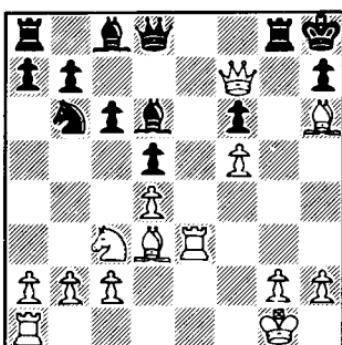


White to Move

1 $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ (drawing the knight away from defending h7) 1... $\mathbb{Q}xh5$. If 2 $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}h8$, then the king shelters on e7, and because of this, that square must be made inaccessible. After another decoying blow 2 $\mathbb{Q}d5$, Black resigned.

Formanek

Warsaw, 1927



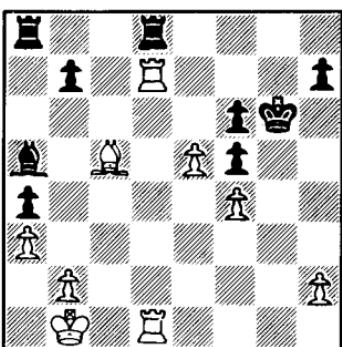
White to Move

1 $\mathbb{B}e8!$ A double decoy (1... $\mathbb{Q}xe8$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ and 3 $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ mate and 1... $\mathbb{B}xe8$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ mate). 1-0.

Polugayevsky

Moscow, 1960

Szilagyi



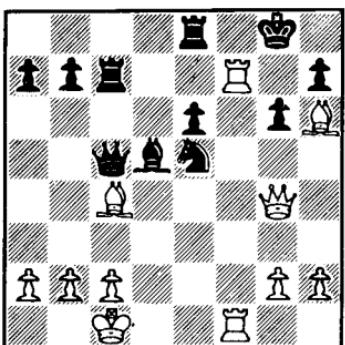
White to Move

1 $\mathbb{E}g1+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 2 $\mathbb{A}f8+!!$ (the act of decoying the rook away from d8 allows White to realize a winning manoeuvre) 2 ... $\mathbb{E}xf8$ 3 $\mathbb{E}d3!$. and mate at h3 is unavoidable.

Tseshkovsky

Korensky

Omsk, 1973



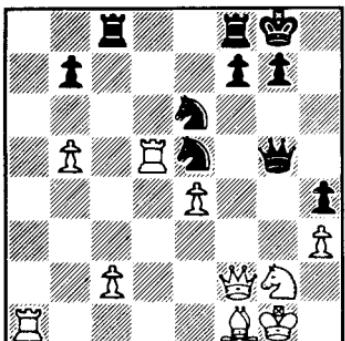
White to Move

If the queen were not at c5, White would mate, and thus 1 $\mathbb{W}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ (1 ... $\mathbb{W}xd4$ 2 $\mathbb{E}f8+$ $\mathbb{E}xf8$ 3 $\mathbb{E}xf8$ mate) 2 $\mathbb{W}xc5$ $\mathbb{E}xf7$ 3 $\mathbb{E}e1$. 1-0

Paoli

Smyslov

Venice, 1950



Black to Move

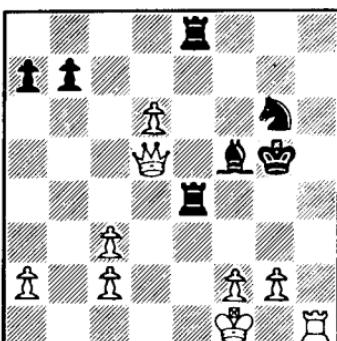
1 ... $\mathbb{E}xc2!$ 2 $\mathbb{W}xc2$ $\mathbb{E}f3+$ 3 $\mathbb{W}f2$. If 3 $\mathbb{Q}h1$, then 3 ... $\mathbb{W}g3$ with mate on h2 or (if the knight moves) on g1.

3 ... $\mathbb{W}g3+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ is followed by 4 $\mathbb{Q}ed4+$. 0-1.

Abrahams

Winter

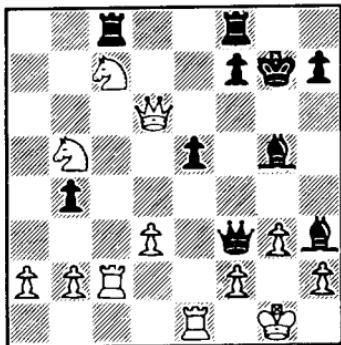
London, 1946



White to Move

1 $\mathbb{E}h5+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 2 $\mathbb{W}xf5+$ $\mathbb{W}h6$ 3 $\mathbb{W}xe4!$ Both these decoying sacrifices are temporary. After 3 ... $\mathbb{E}xe4$ 4 d7 Black cannot be prevented from promoting his pawn. As a result of the combination, White wins a piece and is left with a winning material advantage.

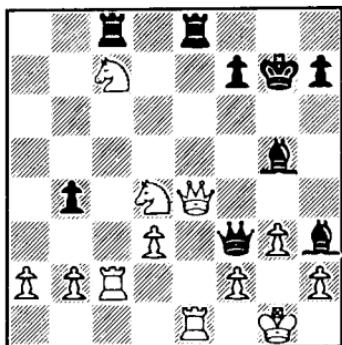
Levitina **Gaprindashvili**
*U.S.S.R. Womens' Championship,
 Tbilisi, 1979*



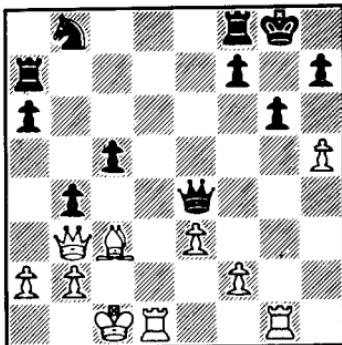
White to Move

Black has just moved her queen to f3 and threatens mate. In reply to the only possible defence 1 $\mathbb{W}c6$, Gaprindashvili, in her preliminary calculations, planned 1... e4 and in reply to 2 $\mathbb{W}xe4$, the decoying sacrifice 2... $\mathbb{Q}fe8$.

But once the queen move to c6 had been made, the former women's World Champion discovered that White, in her turn, could attack the queen by means of 3 ♘d4, and rejected her original plan (instead of 1 . . . e4, she played 1 . . . ♕f5 and soon suffered defeat).

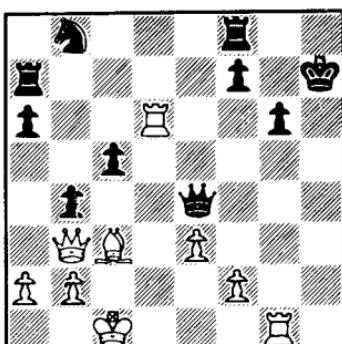


However another decoying sacrifice — 3... ♗g2+! led to mate in two moves.



White to Move

Black's king is in danger, and an important part in the attack could be played by the bishop, which Black has sought to remove from the long diagonal with his last move (b5-b4). However, it does not have to retreat: 1 hg hg 2 ♘d6! threatens ♘d6xg6+, and so the reply 2 . . . ♗h7 is forced.



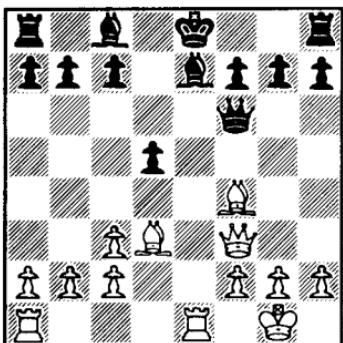
The result of the struggle is decided by the 'quiet' move 3 $\mathbb{W}c4!$, decoying the queen.

The queen cannot be captured because of mate (4 $\mathbb{B}h1+$). If it

retreats along the h1-a8 diagonal, there follows 4 $\mathbb{W}h4+$, and if 3 ... $\mathbb{B}e7$, then 2 $\mathbb{W}xe4$ and 5 $\mathbb{B}h1+$. At last, the bishop at c3 will have fulfilled its role after all!

EXERCISES

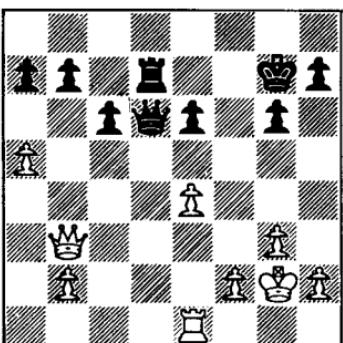
DIAGRAM 1



White to Move

- 1) White went on to take the d-pawn, leaving the bishop en prise. Can it be captured?

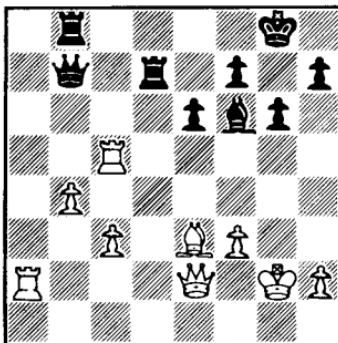
DIAGRAM 2



White to Move

- 2) In reply to 1 $\mathbb{W}c3+$ Black covered the check by means of 1 ... $\mathbb{W}d4$. Assess this move.

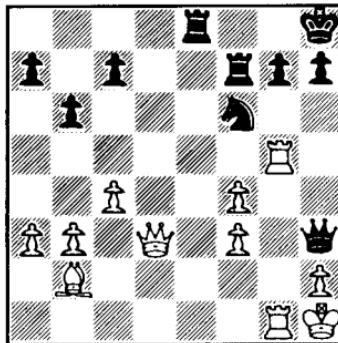
DIAGRAM 3



Black to Move

- 3) With the move 1 ... $\mathbb{B}c8$ Black offered to exchange the rooks. How would you have replied?

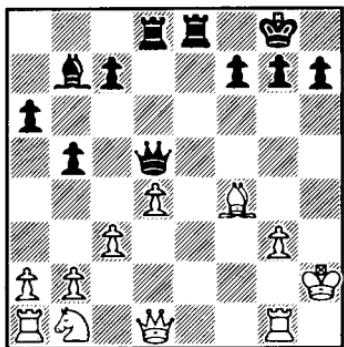
DIAGRAM 4



White to Move

4) To whose advantage is the continuation 1 $\mathbb{B}xg7$ $\mathbb{B}xg7$ 2 $\mathfrak{A}xf6?$

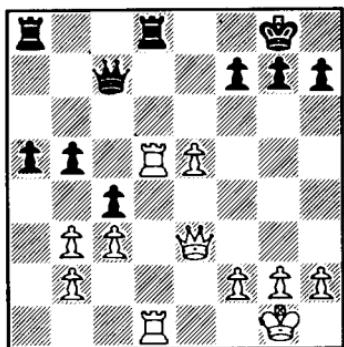
DIAGRAM 5



Black to Move

5) Black is a piece down, but the powerful position of the queen and the bishop, as well as the rook at e8, prompts the search for a combination. Find it.

DIAGRAM 6

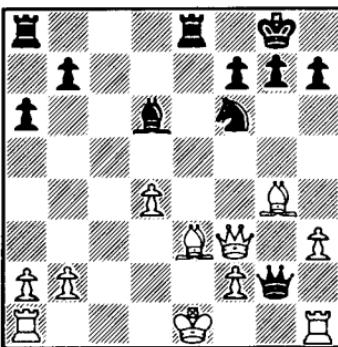


Black to Move

6) Black did not want to surrender the d-file (1 ... $\mathbb{B}xd5$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xd5$ cb

3 $\mathfrak{Q}d3$ with a positional advantage for White) and captured the pawn immediately – 1 ... cb. What is the reply?

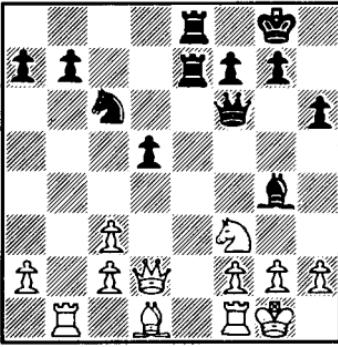
DIAGRAM 7



Black to Move

7) After Black had taken the g-pawn with the queen and established material equality, White, playing the queen to f3, offered an exchange. He was convinced that Black could not decline this offer of simplification (including after the check on b4). Is this the case?

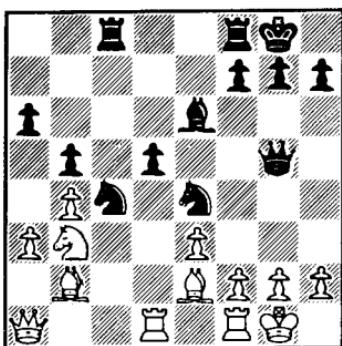
DIAGRAM 8



White to Move

8) White continued 1 $\mathbb{B}e1$, offering to exchange the rook and the bishop. How would you have replied?

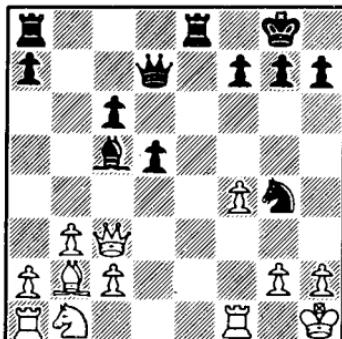
DIAGRAM 9



White to Move

9) White went on to play 1 $\mathbb{A}d4$, having decided that a direct attack on the king-side presented no danger: 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 2 $\mathbb{A}f3$ $\mathbb{B}c6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}h1$, and the bishop at h3 is forced to withdraw. Find where the miscalculation was made.

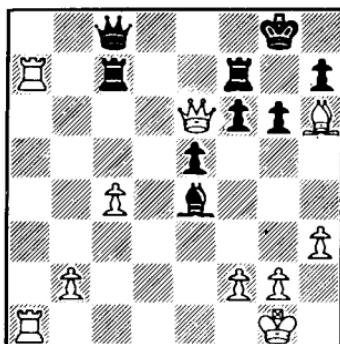
DIAGRAM 10



Black to Play

10) Having played the queen to c3, White now threatens mate. At the same time the bishop is en prise. Is it absolutely essential for the bishop to return to f8?

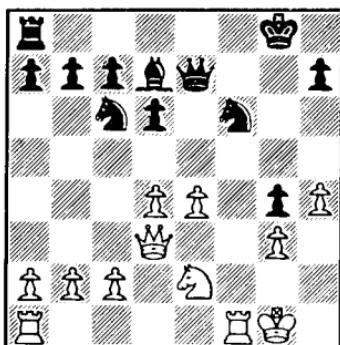
DIAGRAM 11



White to Move

11) What is the reply to the exchange of queens offered by Black?

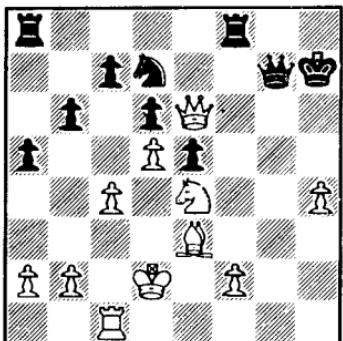
DIAGRAM 12



White to Move

12) White went on to play 1 $\mathbb{Q}f4$. Calculate the consequences of capturing the e4 pawn.

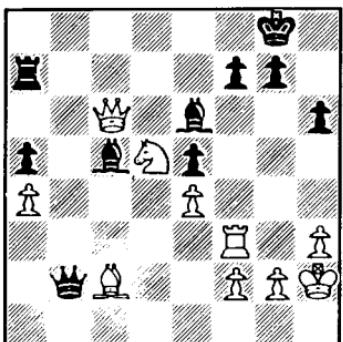
DIAGRAM 13



White to Move

- 13) As a result of sacrificing the exchange for a pawn, White has destroyed the enemy king's pawn guard. How should the attack be followed through?

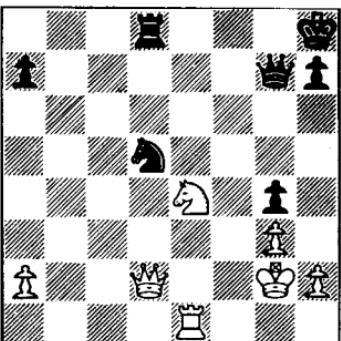
DIAGRAM 14



Black to Move

- 14) Can the bishop at c2 be captured?

DIAGRAM 15

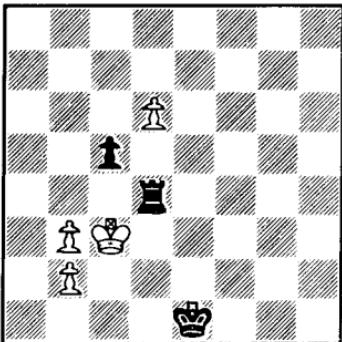


White to Move

15) The diagram shows a position taken from the game Poutiainen-Kärner (Tallinn, 1977). White continued 1 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ threatening $\mathbb{Q}e6$ which was followed by 1 ... $\mathbb{B}b7$ (positioning himself for an 'ambush'). Before parrying the discovered check, White decided to give check himself – 2 $\mathbb{Q}d4+?$ and ... after 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ lost his queen.

What would you have played instead of 1 $\mathbb{Q}g5$?

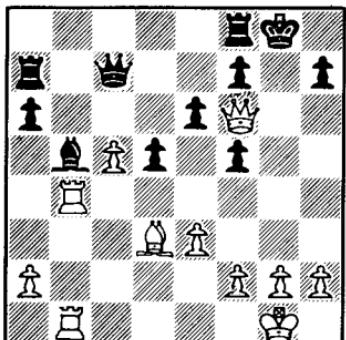
DIAGRAM 16



White to Move

16) Black has an extra rook and the d6 pawn is doomed. However, do not rush to resign, but think what could be done.

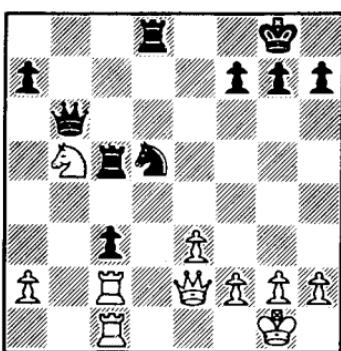
DIAGRAM 17



White to Move

17) Black has offered to exchange the bishops. How should White conduct the attack?

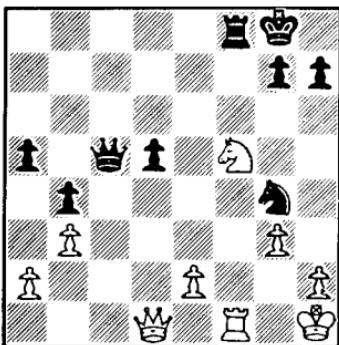
DIAGRAM 18



White to Move

18) Can White capture the pawn at c3?

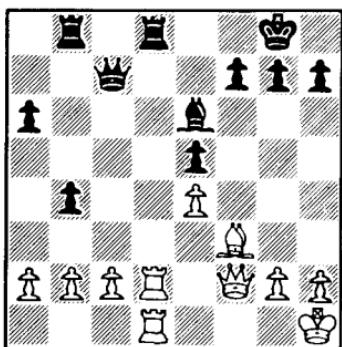
DIAGRAM 19



White to Move

19) Black's last move was $\mathbb{Q}f6-g4$. How would you reply to it?

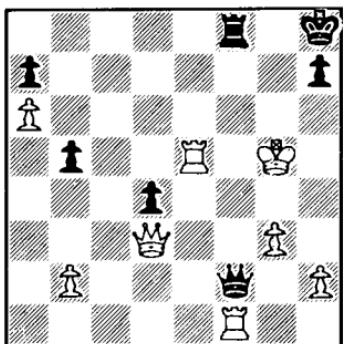
DIAGRAM 20



White to Move

20) Black has offered to exchange rooks. Your solution?

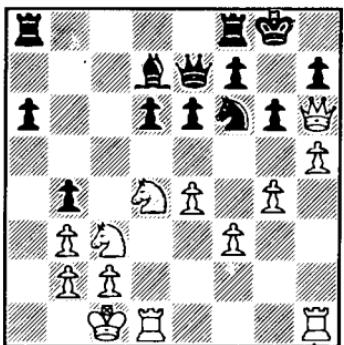
DIAGRAM 21



Black to Move

- 21) White's king is on the move, and you have to decide whether to chase it by means of 1 ... $\mathbb{R}g8+$ and 2 ... $\mathbb{B}h2+$, or just to be content with capturing the rook at f1 and, after exchanging the queens, playing a rook endgame.

DIAGRAM 22

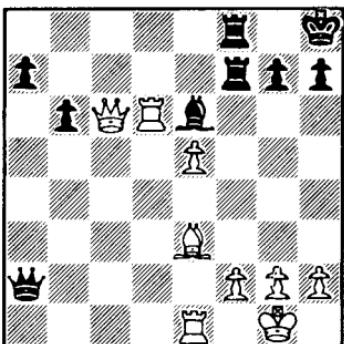


White to Move

- 22) With his last move Black put the knight en prise, but White went on to play — 1 g5, continuing the

offensive. What did he reply to 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xh5$?

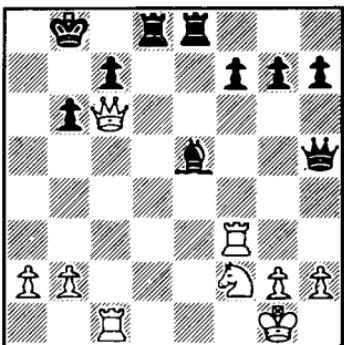
DIAGRAM 23



Black to Move

- 23) With his last move ($\mathbb{B}d1-d6$) White put the bishop en prise. How would you have replied?

DIAGRAM 24

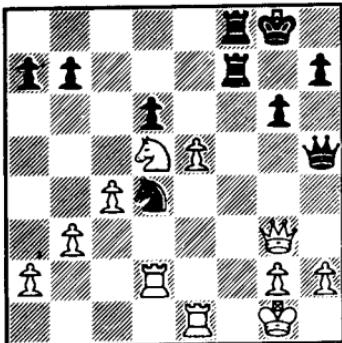


White to Move

- 24) White rejected the move 1 $\mathbb{R}a3$ with the threat of mate on a8 (first question: why?) and went on to play 1 $\mathbb{B}h3$, which was followed by 1 ... $\mathbb{B}g5$. Second question: how do you rate the move 2 $\mathbb{R}a3$, now that Black's queen has been divided?

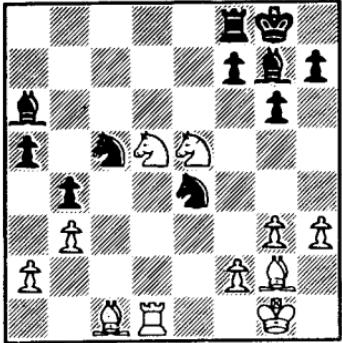
HOW WOULD YOU HAVE PLAYED?

DIAGRAM 25



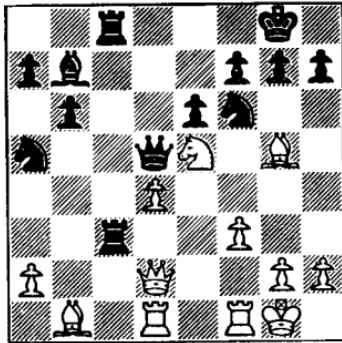
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 28



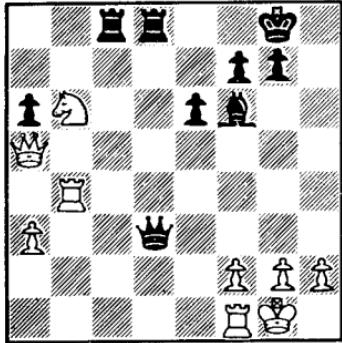
White to Move

DIAGRAM 26



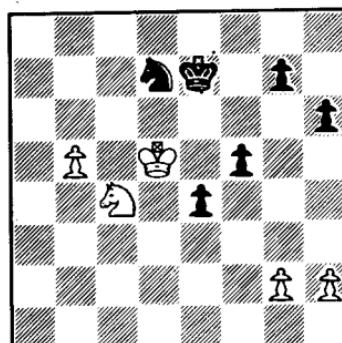
White to Move

DIAGRAM 29



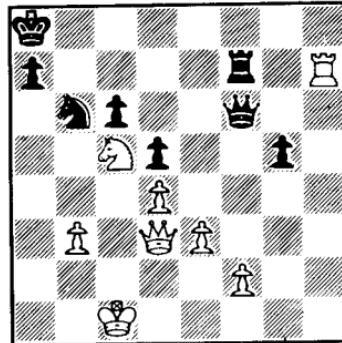
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 27



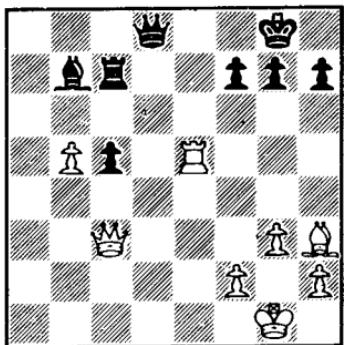
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 30



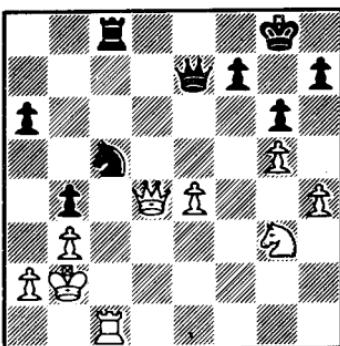
White to Move

DIAGRAM 31



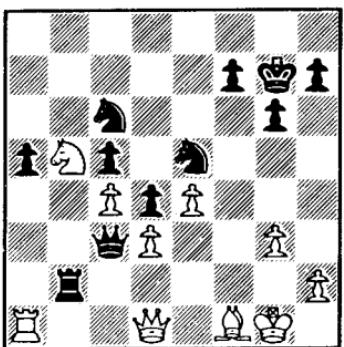
White to Move

DIAGRAM 34



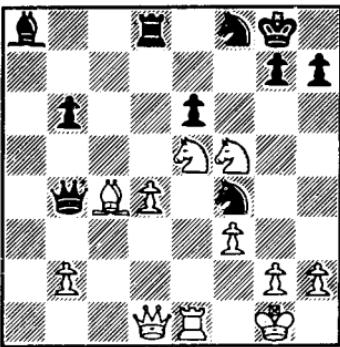
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 32



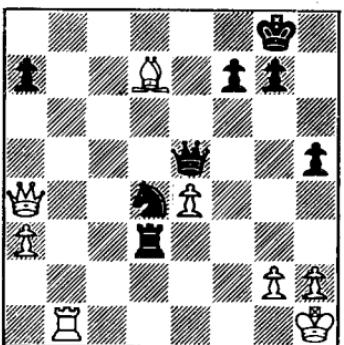
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 35



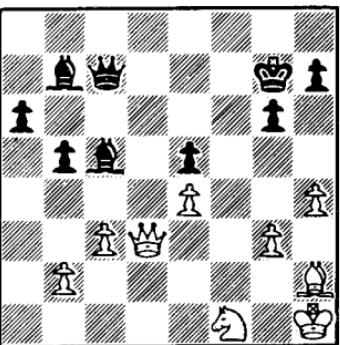
White to Move

DIAGRAM 33



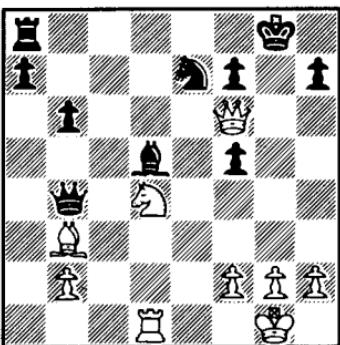
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 36



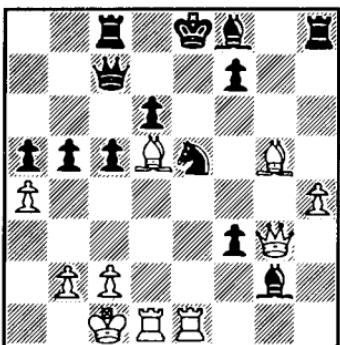
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 37



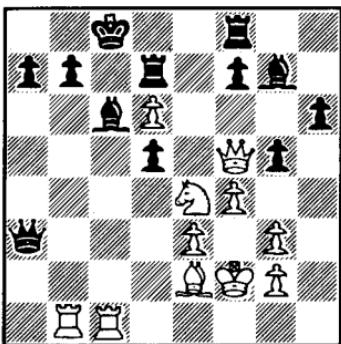
White to Move

DIAGRAM 40



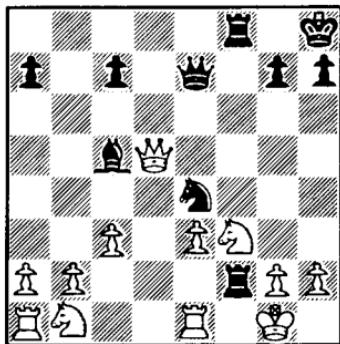
White to Move

DIAGRAM 38



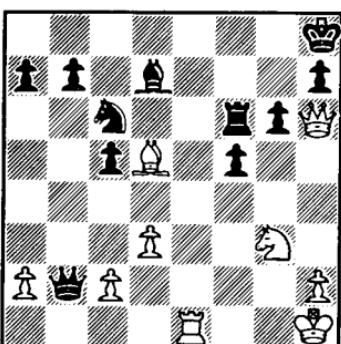
White to Move

DIAGRAM 41



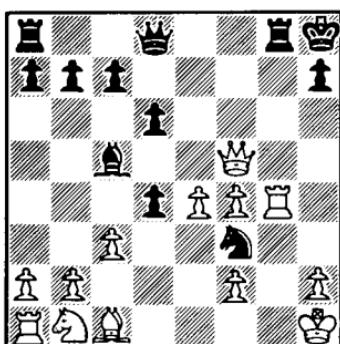
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 39



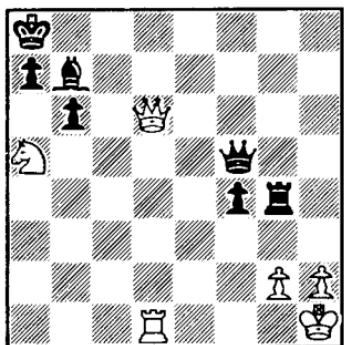
White to Move

DIAGRAM 42



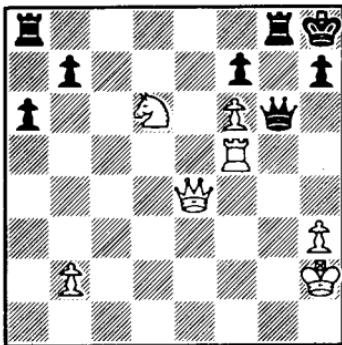
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 43



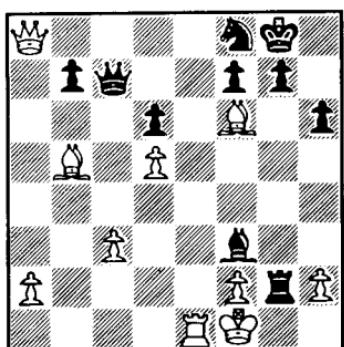
White to Move

DIAGRAM 46



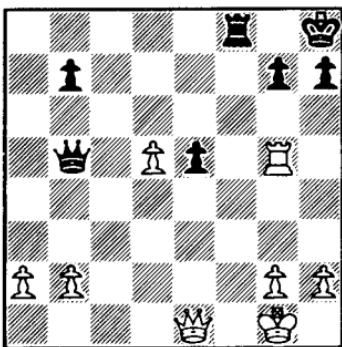
White to Move

DIAGRAM 44



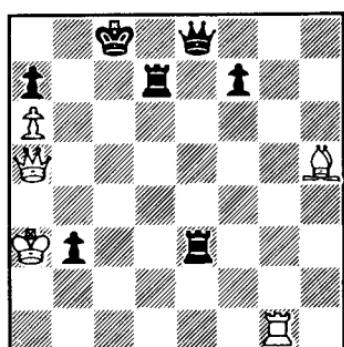
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 47



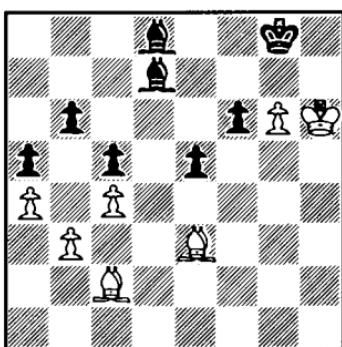
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 45



White to Move

DIAGRAM 48



White to Move

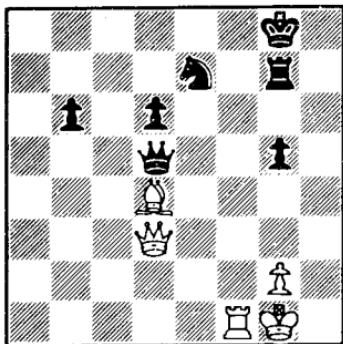
2 Attraction

With the aid of this tactical device a piece (or a pawn) is, as it were, pulled onto a particular square. Just as with the decoy, the motives behind the operation can vary.

First — an example of attraction opening up possibilities for a profitable discovered check.

Stanciu

Bucharest, 1969



Black to Move

With a move that was looking for trouble 1 . . . ♔c6? Black put the pinned bishop en prise. However, after 2 ♕f8+! he had to capitulate. The attraction of the king onto f8 allows the pinned bishop to deal a deadly blow (2 . . . ♕xf8 3

Drimer

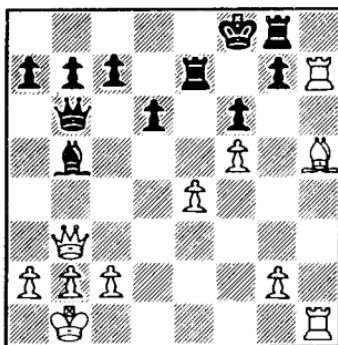
♕xg7+). A discovered check following an attractive sacrifice leads to a decisive material advantage.

In the next example a discovered check made it possible to weave a mating net.

Krilov

Tarasov

Leningrad, 1961



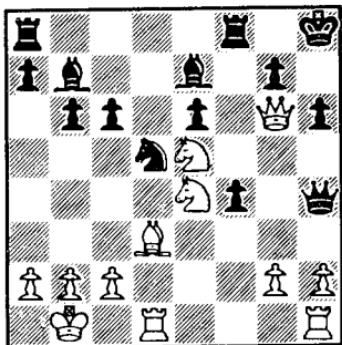
White to Move

By sacrificing the queen and then a rook, White attracts the enemy king on h8 into a fateful discovered check: 1 ♕xg8+! ♕xg8 2 ♘h8+! ♗xh8 3 ♖f7 mate.

A double check which forces the opponent to move the king is particularly effective.

Gass

Eslingen, 1968



White to Move

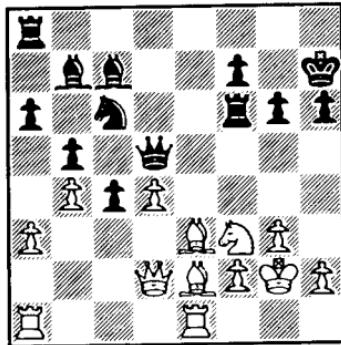
1 $\mathbb{Q}h7+$!

A simplified variation on the famous Ed. Lasker-Thomas game (London, 1911, No. 352).

1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}f6++$ (for a check like that you don't begrudge the queen!) 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ mate.

Popov

Moscow, 1925



Black to Move

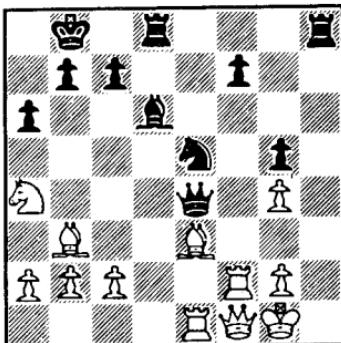
Taksis

1 ... $\mathbb{B}xf3$! 2 $\mathbb{A}xf3$. And in this example attracting the king into a double check decides the outcome of the game: 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf3+!$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4++$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{A}c8+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ mate.

Suni

Alivirta

Helsinki, 1957



Black to Move

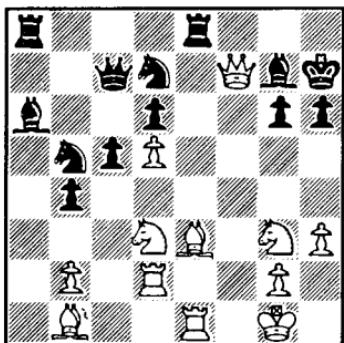
Riumin

The straightforward 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ gives White the possibility of counterplay after 2 $\mathbb{B}f3$. Two attractive sacrifices — of the rook and the queen — lead to a win: 1 ... $\mathbb{B}h1+!$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ $\mathbb{Q}f3++$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ (or 5 $\mathbb{Q}h3$). Now that control of g1 has been removed from the king — 5 ... $\mathbb{B}h8$ mate.

Malmgren

Kühne

Correspondence, 1966



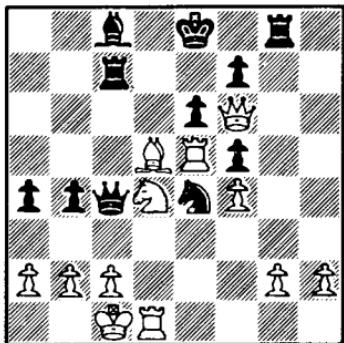
White to Move

1 $\mathbb{Q}xg6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ (1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}e5$; 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}f5$) 2 $\mathbb{Q}e5++$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ $ke7$ (3 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ mate) 4 $\mathbb{Q}c6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$. And still the king cannot escape. White does not capture the queen, but concludes the combination just the way he started it — with a discovered double check: 5 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ mate.

Katalimov

Mukhin

Aktiubinsk, 1976

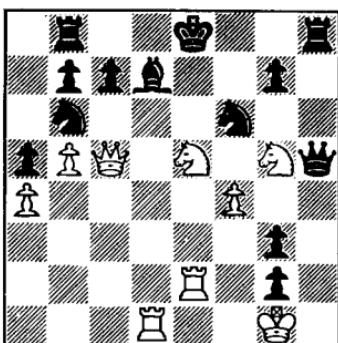


White to Move

In the centre there is a crowd of pieces and both queens are en prise. There followed 1 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ (by removing the threat to the queen, White simultaneously opens up the d-file) 1 . . . fe 2 $\mathbb{Q}d8+!!$ (attracting the king into a double discovered check) 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}c6++$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}d8$ mate.

A modification of 'Réti's theme' (Réti-Tartakower, Vienna, 1910): 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ de 4 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ e5 6 de $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 8 0-0-0! $\mathbb{Q}xe4?$ 9 $\mathbb{Q}d8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 10 $\mathbb{Q}g5++$, and mate next move. Instead of the bishop, the knight took part in the mating operation.

From P. Stamma's book,
1737



White to Move

The temptation, of course, is to give the discovered check, but the rook at e2 is en prise.

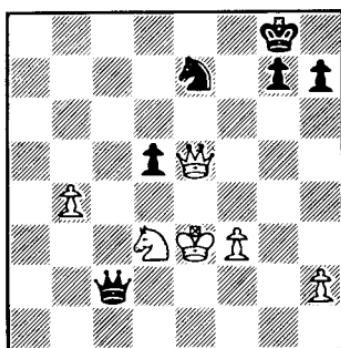
The winning move is a queen sacrifice attracting the king into a

double check: 1 $\mathbb{W}e7+!! \mathbb{Q}xe7$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}g6++ \mathbb{Q}d8$. Following this the knights give mate – 3 $\mathbb{Q}f7+ \mathbb{Q}c8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ mate.

Another section – (temporary) sacrifices with attraction into a fork.

Raitsa Kasper

Brandenburg, 1973

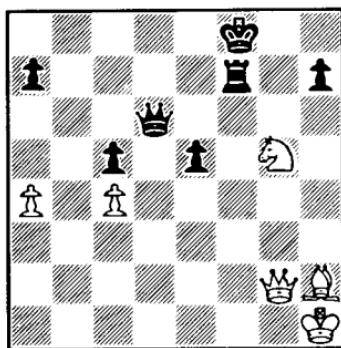


Black to Move

1 . . . d4+!! The attraction into the fork occurs irrespective of whether the pawn is captured or whether the king withdraws: 2 $\mathbb{W}xd4 \mathbb{Q}f5+$; 2 $\mathbb{Q}xd4 \mathbb{Q}c6+$; 2 $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{Q}g6+$; 2 $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{W}e2+$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{Q}g6+$ or 3 $\mathbb{Q}xd4 \mathbb{Q}c6+$. 0-1.

Petrosian Simagin

Moscow, 1956

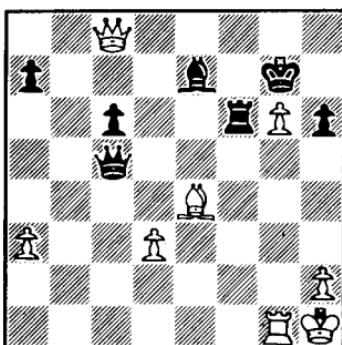


White to Move

1 $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ gives Black the possibility of perpetual check on d1, f3, h5. What leads to a win is 1 $\mathbb{W}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (1 . . . $\mathbb{W}e7$ 2 $\mathbb{W}b7+$ etc.) 2 $\mathbb{Q}xe5+!!$ (attraction, as a result of which White, with the help of a fork, gets an easily won endgame; 2 $\mathbb{W}h8+$ would not have reached the objective, as Black would have replied 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}g6$) 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 3 $\mathbb{W}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ and 5 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$.

Piotrowski

Tannenbaum

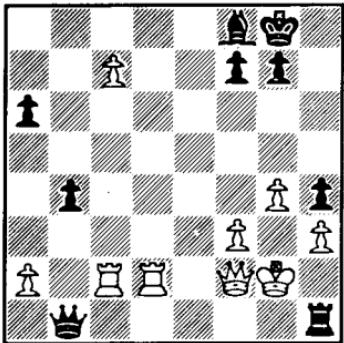


White to Move

By sacrificing themselves, the queen and the bishop open up the way for the promotion of the g-pawn. The first attracting sacrifice is 1 $\mathbb{W}h8+!!$ and in reply to 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ – 2 $g7+ \mathbb{Q}g8$. The second sacrifice is 3 $\mathbb{Q}h7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 4 $g8 =\mathbb{Q}$ mate.

Bouaziz

Interzonal, Riga, 1979



Black to Move

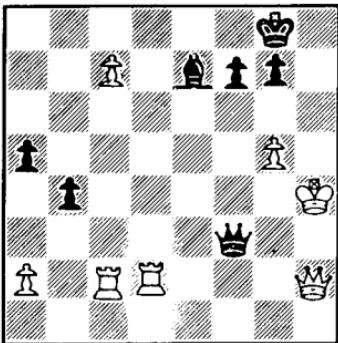
White is up on material, the 'c' pawn is a square away from promotion. All the approaches to the king, it seems, are safely guarded. There followed, however, 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xh3$.

White assessed his opponent's move as a sacrifice made in desperation, otherwise he would have declined the gift and played 2 $\mathbb{Q}f1$.

Miles

After 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf1+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ Black, at the most, has perpetual check. But why not take the rook after all?

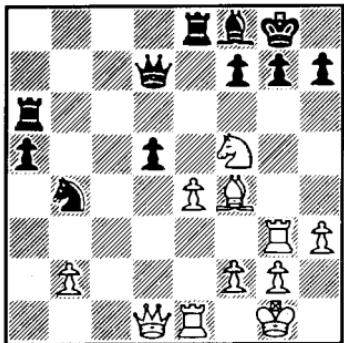
2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}h1+$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ 5 g5.



Faced with this situation, White abandoned his calculations. However, the unforeseen attracting sacrifice 5 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xg5+$ ended the game. With two extra rooks, White is mated after 6 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ f6+.

EXERCISES

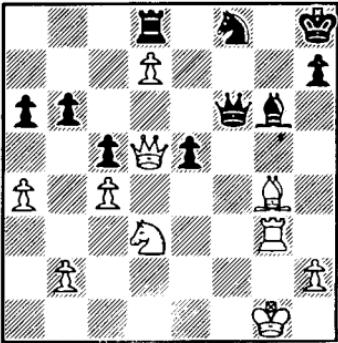
DIAGRAM 49



White to Move

- 49) The move $\mathbb{Q}a6-g6$ destroys White's initiative on the \mathbb{Q} -side. It is vital to create a strong threat.

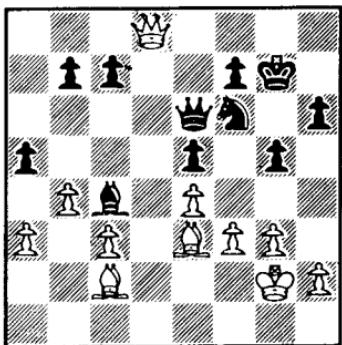
DIAGRAM 50



Black to Move

- 50) Black went on to play 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xd3$. How would you have replied?

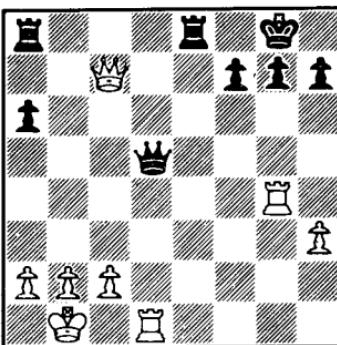
DIAGRAM 51



White to Move

- 51) On his last move White checked with the queen on d8, and Black withdrew the king to g7. Can the c7-pawn be captured now?

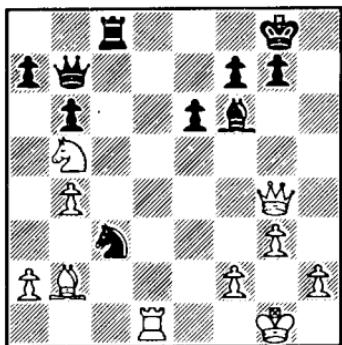
DIAGRAM 53



White to Move

- 53) On his last move Black put his queen en prise. What would you have done if you were playing White?

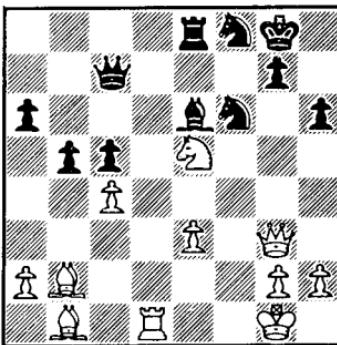
DIAGRAM 52



Black to Move

- 52) White has played for this position, counting on replying to 1 ... ♜xb5 or 1 ... ♜xd1 with 2 ♜xf6. What advice could you give Black?

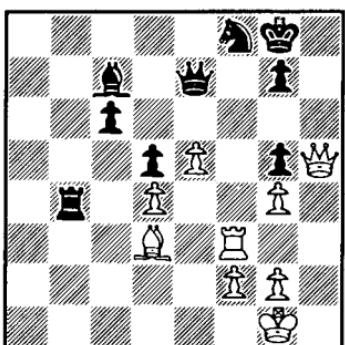
DIAGRAM 54



White to Move

- 54) White is exerting a lot of pressure on the ♜-side. After 1 ♜f1 Black withdrew the threatened knight 1 ... ♜d7. Continue the attack.

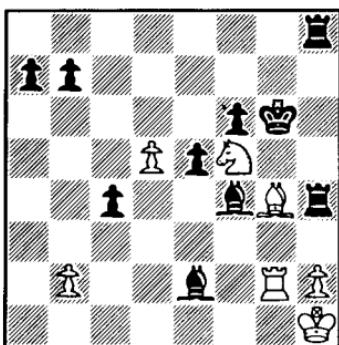
DIAGRAM 55



White to Move

55) White has sacrificed a piece and managed to achieve a threatening attacking position. How would you have concluded the offensive?

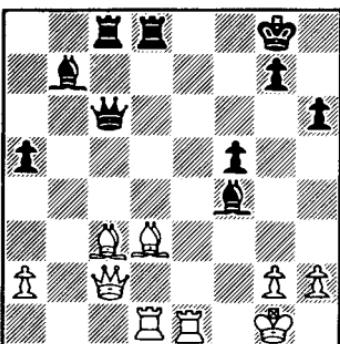
DIAGRAM 57



White to Move

57) Black has a huge material advantage; his king, however, is in an unfortunate position, and this gives White a chance to save himself.

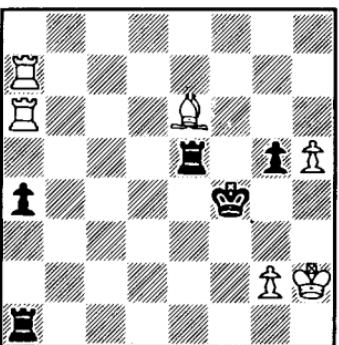
DIAGRAM 56



Black to Move

56) White has left the bishop at c3 en prise. Can it be captured?

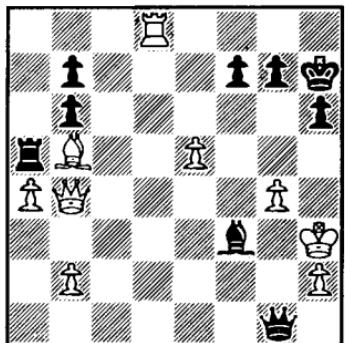
DIAGRAM 58



Black to Move

58) On his last move White played Bh7-a7 threatening to capture on a4 with check. He was expecting his opponent, who is a bishop down, to resign the game. Instead of this Black ...

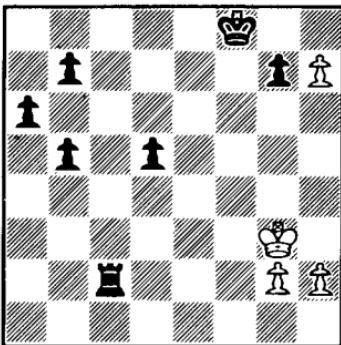
DIAGRAM 59



White to Move

59) White's king is in a desperate position. What can be done?

DIAGRAM 60

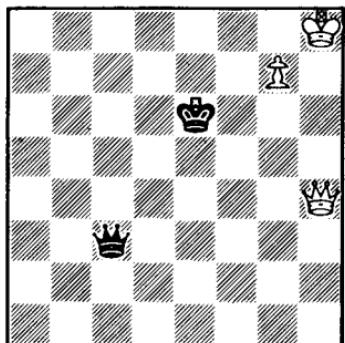


Black to Move

60) The h-pawn is a step away from promotion. Black went on to play 1 ... $\mathbb{B}c3+$. Where should the king move?

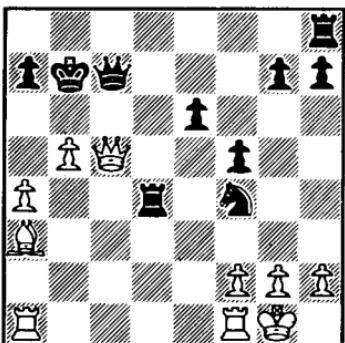
HOW WOULD YOU HAVE PLAYED?

DIAGRAM 61



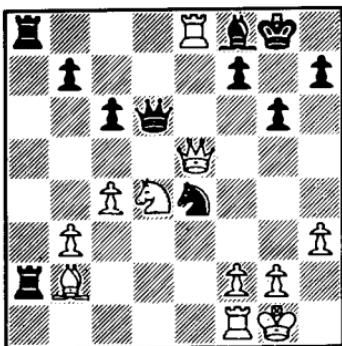
White to Move

DIAGRAM 62



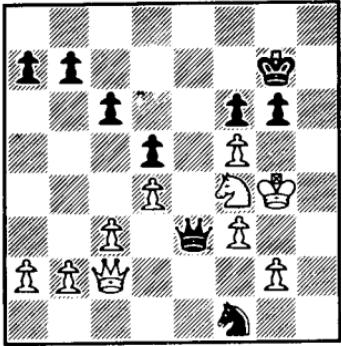
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 63



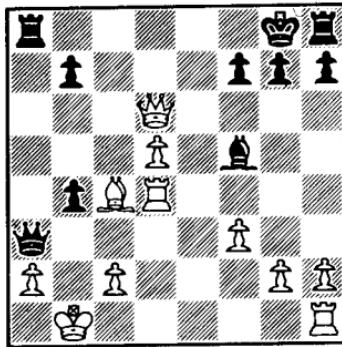
White to Move

DIAGRAM 66



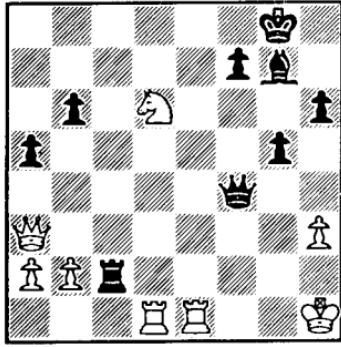
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 64



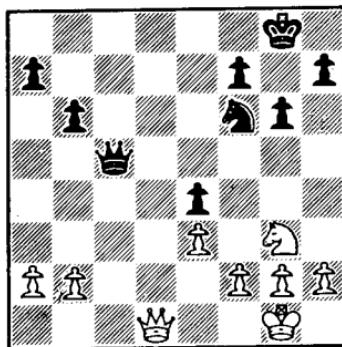
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 67



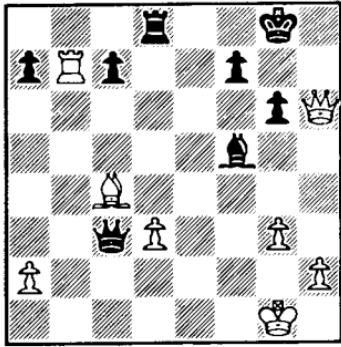
White to Move

DIAGRAM 65



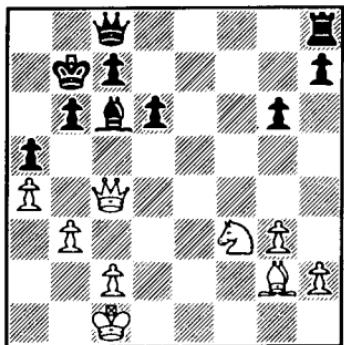
White to Move

DIAGRAM 68



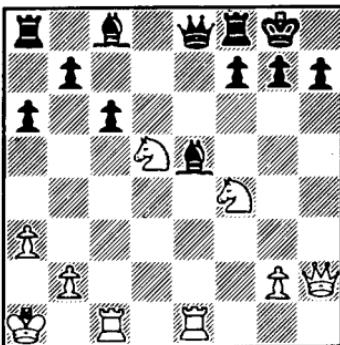
White to Move

DIAGRAM 69



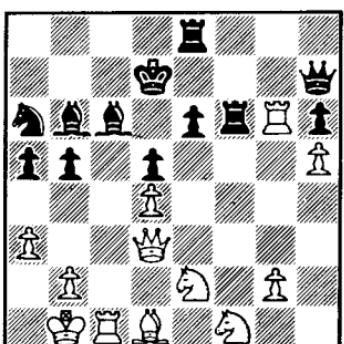
White to Move

DIAGRAM 71



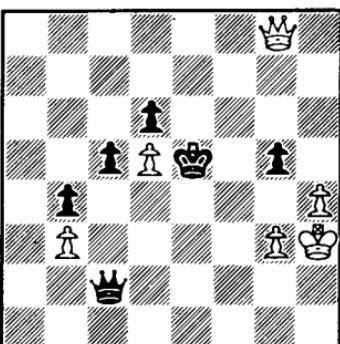
White to Move

DIAGRAM 70



White to Move

DIAGRAM 72



Black to Move

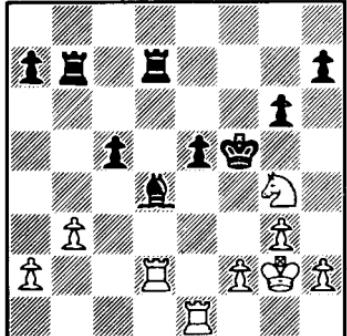
3 Destroying the Guard

As a tactical device the decoy is used with the aim of removing a guard. When the guard is destroyed this removal is accomplished directly — by the straightforward capture of the piece (or the pawn) fulfilling an important function.

From the aesthetic point of view, combinations involving the theme of destroying the guard are less striking, because they inevitably include a capture.

Petrosian

*USSR-Yugoslavia Match,
Belgrade, 1979*



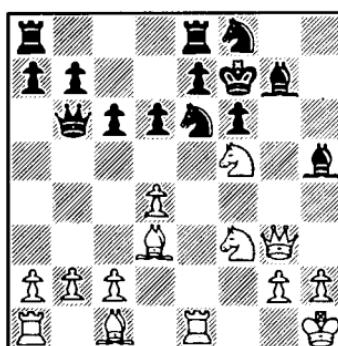
White to Move

There followed 1 $\mathbb{B}xd4!$ and Black resigned. Whatever he captures the rook with, mate follows in two moves.

Lechtnsky

Prague, 1968

Kubiček



White to Move

White's superiority is obvious, but he needs to finish off the attack. Destroying the defender of h6 wins — 1 $\mathbb{W}xg7+$ $\mathfrak{Q}xg7$ 2 $\mathfrak{Q}h6$ mate!

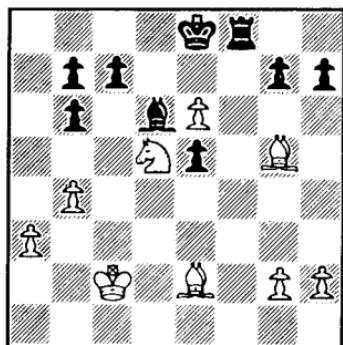
Kveinis

Vilnius, 1978

A. Mikenas

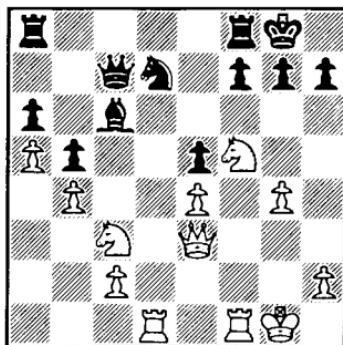
Nezhmetdinov

Romanov



White to Move

By destroying $c7$, White mates:
 $1 \blacksquare x c7+! \blacktriangle x c7 2 \blacksquare b5$ mate.

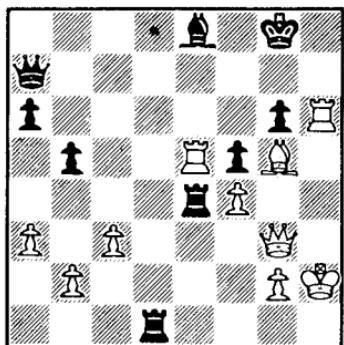


White to Move

$1 \blacksquare g5 g6 2 \blacksquare e7+ \blacksquare g7$ (if $2 \dots \blacksquare h8$, then $3 \blacksquare x d7 \blacksquare x d7 4 \blacksquare f6$ mate) $3 \blacksquare x d7!$ (destroying the defender of $f6$) $3 \dots \blacksquare x d7$ ($3 \dots \blacksquare x d7$ does not change anything either) $4 \blacksquare f6+ \blacksquare h6 5 \blacksquare f5!$ (threatening $6 \blacksquare h5$ mate) $5 \dots \blacksquare a7+ 6 \blacksquare f1$. 1-0.

EXERCISES

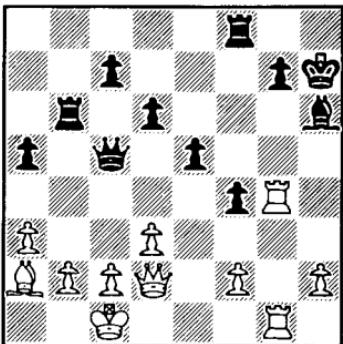
DIAGRAM 73



White to Move

however, White is the first to undertake decisive measures.

DIAGRAM 74

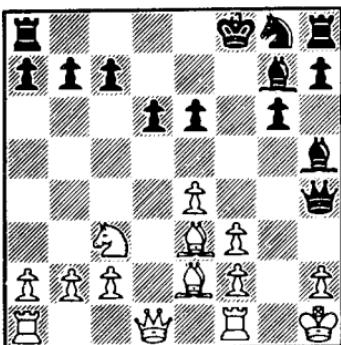


Black to Move

73) The threat is $1 \dots \blacksquare g1+ 2 \blacksquare h3 \blacksquare h1+ 3 \blacksquare h2 \blacksquare d3+ 4 g3 \blacksquare f3$;

74) Can Black play $1 \dots f3$?

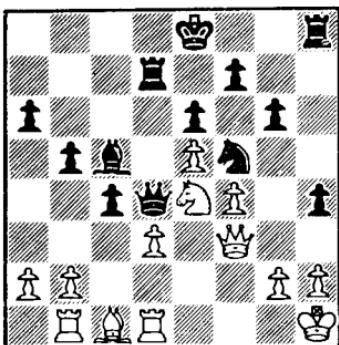
DIAGRAM 75



Black to Move

75) Exploit White's ♜-side weakness.

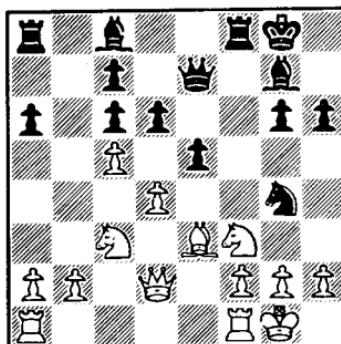
DIAGRAM 77



Black to Move

77) On his last move White played ♘f2-e4. How would you have replied?

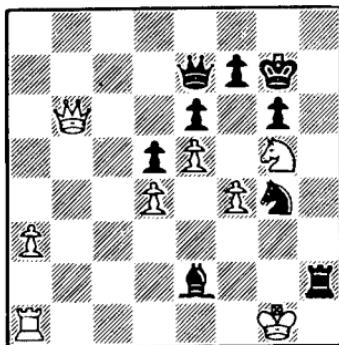
DIAGRAM 76



Black to Move

76) How would you launch the attack?

DIAGRAM 78



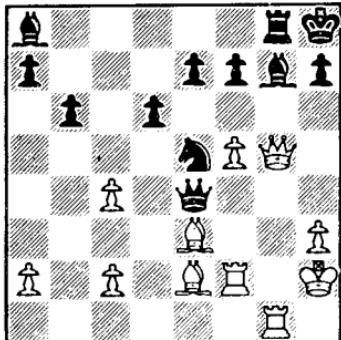
Black to Move

78) White is a piece down, and his last hope is the passed a-pawn. Having decided that there are no threats to the king, on his last move he played ♕a5-b6, clearing the way for the pawn and at the same time denying the queen access to b7. How would you retaliate to this?

4 Clearing a Square or a Line

It can happen that one's own piece (or pawn) prevents the realization of a profitable manoeuvre or a tactical blow. In such instances one should strive to vacate the square occupied by this piece (or the line which it is blocking) sometimes without baulking at sacrifices.

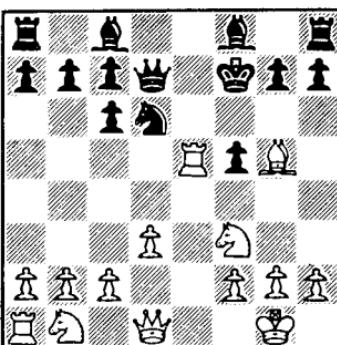
Ravinsky
Moscow, 1947



Black to Move

The knight is preventing the bishop from dealing a destructive blow, and so he is sacrificed — 1 ... ♘g4+! Whatever White captures the knight with, there follows 2 ... ♖e5+, with the loss of the queen.

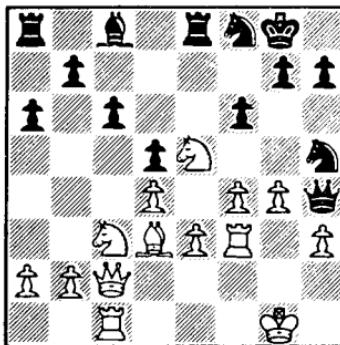
Pearsall
Correspondence, 1953



White to Move

1 ♕e7+! Freeing e5 for the knight, following which he wins the queen with the aid of a 'fork': 1 ... ♗xe7 2 ♘e5+.

Rossolimo
Paris, 1937



White to Move

Black's queen has no escape squares. The only thing left is to find a way of attacking it.

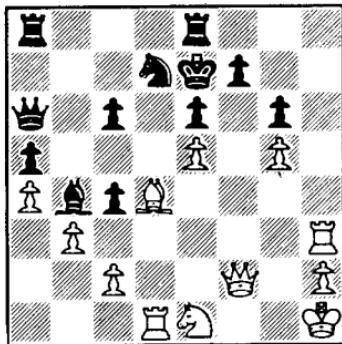
1 $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$! (the aim of the sacrifice being to get rid of the defenders of g6) 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ (1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ mate) 2 $\mathbb{Q}g6$. 1-0.

Those combinations dealt with the idea of clearing a square. Now let us have a look at the idea of clearing a line.

E. Vladimirov

Alma-Ata, 1977

Haritonov



White to Move

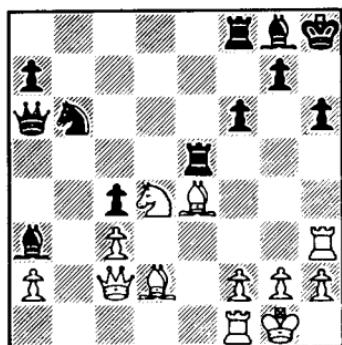
1 $\mathbb{W}f6+$! $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}c5+$! 1-0 (2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}h8$ mate).

Note that mate is also possible with another sequence of moves: 1 $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ (1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 2 $\mathbb{W}t6+$ and 3 $\mathbb{Q}h8$ mate; 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xd7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 3 $\mathbb{W}xf7+$ and 4 $\mathbb{Q}h7$) 2 $\mathbb{W}f6+$ etc.

Levenfish

Leningrad, 1925

Freymann



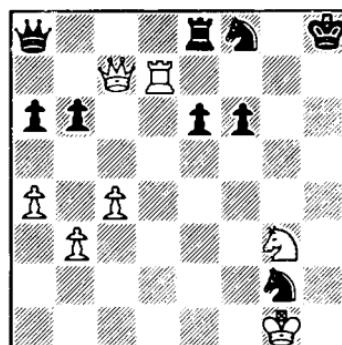
White to Move

The sacrifice on h6 is the obvious one: 1 $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ $\mathbb{Q}h$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xh6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$, but what next? Well, 3 $\mathbb{Q}b7$!! Attacking the queen, the bishop clears the diagonal with a gain of tempo. The threat is mate on g6 and the queen has to be given up: 3 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xa6$. Black has a lost game.

Karpov

Bad-Lauterberg, 1977

Csom



White to Move

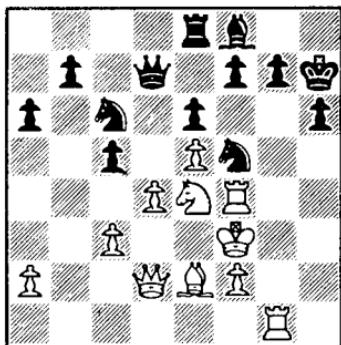
With the rook en prise and h7 defended, Black felt safe and was about to go a piece up. There followed, however, 1 $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ and he had to resign the game.

The knight has given the queen access to h2. If 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ then 2 $\mathbb{Q}h2+!$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ mate. If 1 ... ef, then also 2 $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ mate. If the deadly check on h6 is hindered by 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}b8$, this gives a different mate by freeing the seventh rank for the queen: 2 $\mathbb{Q}h7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ mate.

Rossolimo

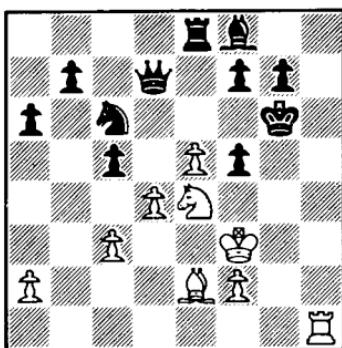
NN

1944



White to Move

1 $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$ (giving the queen access to h6) 1 ... ef 2 $\mathbb{Q}xh6+!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ (if 2 ... gh, then 3 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ and 4 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ mate) 3 $\mathbb{Q}h1+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$.



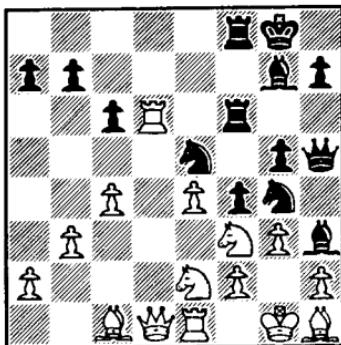
But where's the mate? After all, White is already a queen down ...

4 $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ (clearing the diagonal for the bishop; threatens 5 $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ and 6 $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ mate) 4 ... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}h8!$

The final touch. After 5 $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ comes 6 ... $\mathbb{Q}h6+$. There is now no defence to mate on h5. 1-0.

EXERCISES

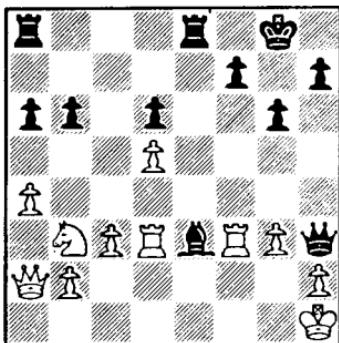
DIAGRAM 79



Black to Move

- 79) Having sacrificed a pawn, Black has massed all his pieces on the ♜-side (the only piece not involved in the attack is the bishop at g7). Continue the offensive.

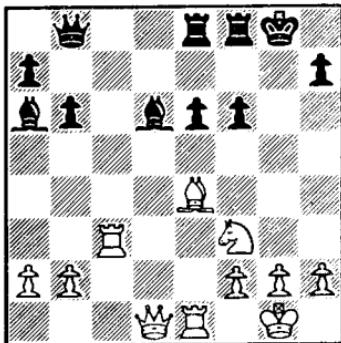
DIAGRAM 81



Black to Move

- 81) Black creates irrefutable threats.

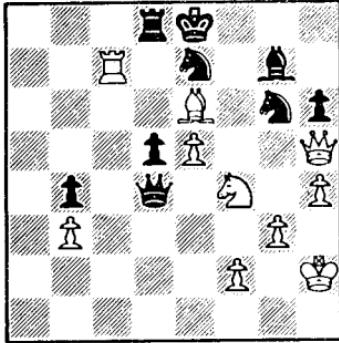
DIAGRAM 80



White to Move

- 80) How does the rook take part in the attack?

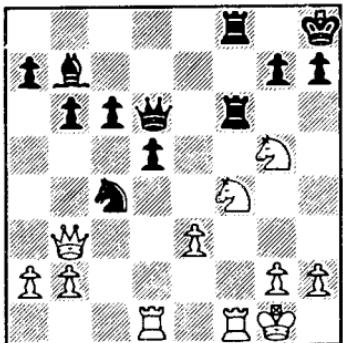
DIAGRAM 82



White to Move

- 82) The f-pawn is en prise. Is there any need to spend time defending it?

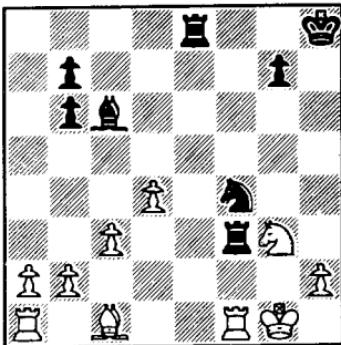
DIAGRAM 83



White to Move

83) Black's pieces are defending one another, and it may seem that their position is unassailable. However, this is not the case.

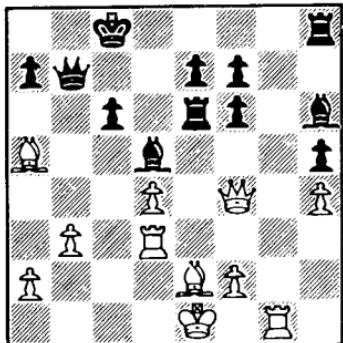
DIAGRAM 85



Black to Move

85) How can the threatening position of the bishop at c6 be exploited?

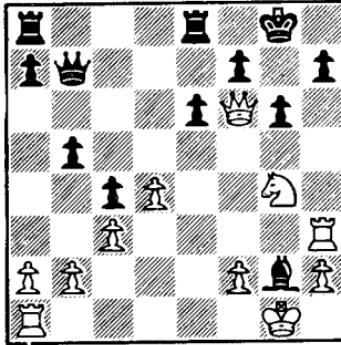
DIAGRAM 84



White to Move

84) The bishop is defended by the rook at h8. What about drawing it out and delivering mate? In other words, give your appraisal of the move 1 ♜xh6.

DIAGRAM 86

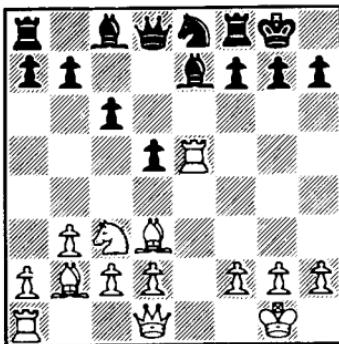


White to Move

86) Finish off the attack.

46 *Clearing a Square or a Line*

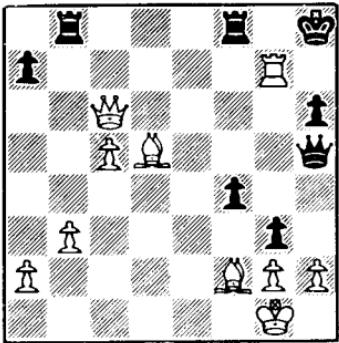
DIAGRAM 87



White to Move

- 87) Black's reply to 1 $\mathbb{W}h5$ was 1 ... g6. What next?

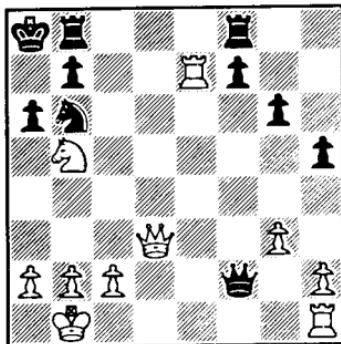
DIAGRAM 89



White to Move

- 89) On his last move Black did not capture the rook (in view of $\mathbb{Q}f2-d4+$) and instead played g4-g3. What should White play?

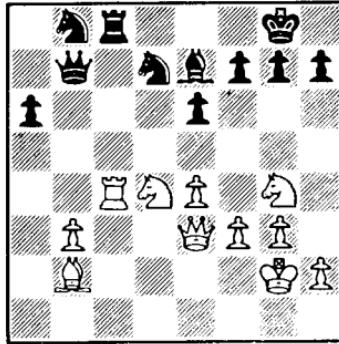
DIAGRAM 88



White to Move

- 88) White's rook has made it to the seventh rank; the knight and the queen have the king in their sights. How can the interaction of the attacking pieces be coordinated?

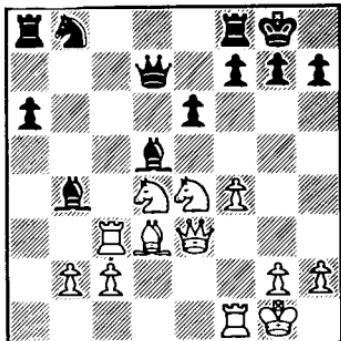
DIAGRAM 90



White to Move

- 90) How should the attack go?

DIAGRAM 91

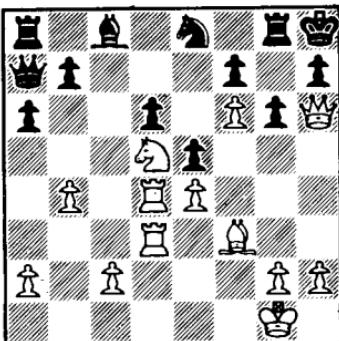


White to Move

91) White's rook is trapped and there are no weaknesses in Black's castled position. However, what is striking is the distance between the ♜-side and the pieces defending it

...

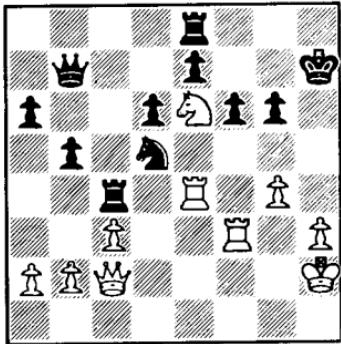
DIAGRAM 93



Black to Move

93) The last move was ♘d1-d3. What will now follow 1...ed?

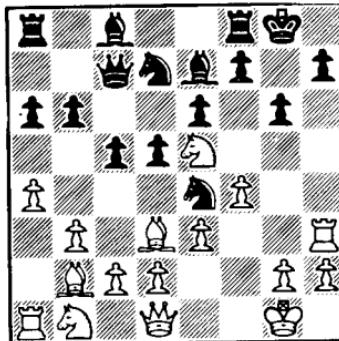
DIAGRAM 92



White to Move

92) Black's king is insufficiently covered, but how can he be disturbed?

DIAGRAM 94

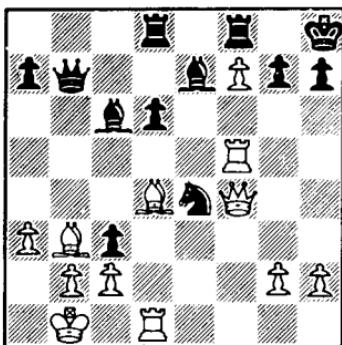


White to Move

94) In order to attack the castled position, White has moved the rook to h3. To protect himself from ♖d1-h5, Black has played g7-g6, thereby weakening the long diagonal and h6. Your solution?

48 Clearing a Square or a Line

DIAGRAM 95

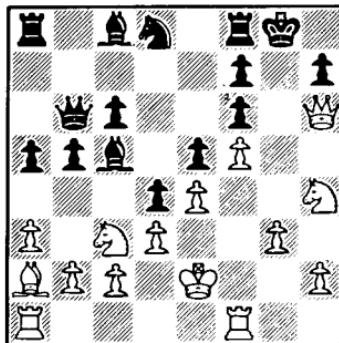


Black to Move

- 95) For the sake of an attack White has sacrificed a piece. His last move was $\mathbb{W}f1-f4$ with the idea of transferring the queen to h6. How would you have replied?

Analyze in whose favour the game should go.

DIAGRAM 96



White to Move

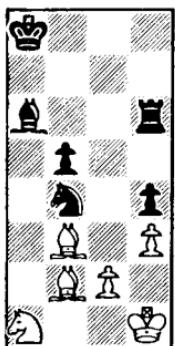
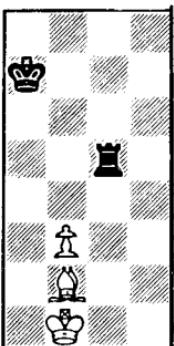
- 96) By his last move d5-d4 Black attacked the White knight. What would you advise White to do?

5 The Pin

The pin is nearly the most widespread tactical device.

What happens in a pin is that a piece (or a pawn) en prise from the queen, rook, or bishop is totally or partially deprived of movement, as it is shielding another more important or undefended piece positioned on the same line (diagonal, vertical, horizontal).

If the pinned piece is shielding the king, its mobility is limited to the utmost — the only movement possible is along the line of attack. The following example illustrates pins which bring about instant disaster.



On the left-hand side of the diagram White wins by pinning the rook — 1 $\mathbb{Q}d4$, and then by attacking it once more (1 ... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 2 $b4$)

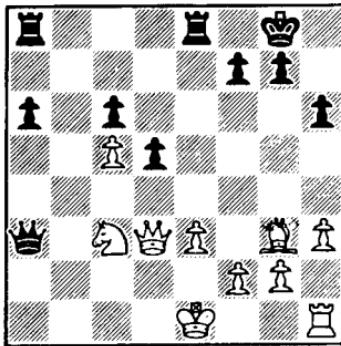
On the right-hand side after 1 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ Black loses the knight (its removal leaves the rook en prise).

But of course not every pin results in material gain. Thus if a knight is pinned by a bishop, the number of attacks on the pinned piece and the number of defences can balance out and then it is only a question of limiting the mobility of the pinned piece.

Pirc

4th Olympiad, Prague, 1931

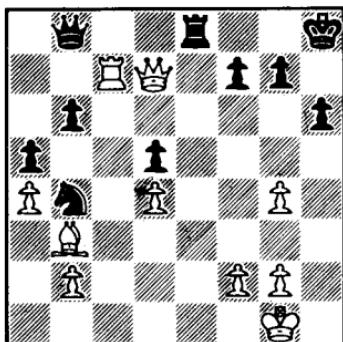
Stoltz



Black to Move

With 1...d4 Black won a piece. The knight is pinned and if 2 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ then 2... $\mathbb{Q}a1+$; neither can Black play 3 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ because of 3... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$.

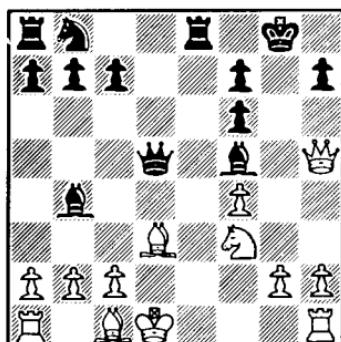
Polugayevsky **Hort**
Interzonal, Manila, 1976



Black to Move

There followed 1... $\mathbb{Q}e1+$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}c1!$ and White was a rook down.

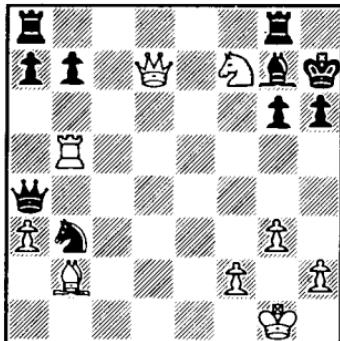
When a pinned piece is not shielding the king, but another piece, it is essential to take into consideration the possibility of a sacrifice. One profitable tactical possibility (and also a necessity, if it is a question of choosing the lesser of two evils) is the 'highest purpose', for the sake of which the pinned piece leaves its square, abandoning the more valuable piece to the mercy of fate.



Black to Move

Leaving the queen en prise Black plays 1... $\mathbb{Q}xd3!$ and follows 2 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ with 2... $\mathbb{Q}e2$ mate.

Parr **Whitecroft**
Holland, 1968



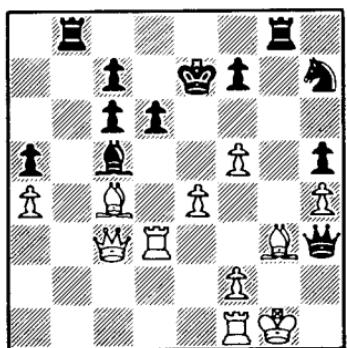
White to move

In order to attack h6 the pinned rook leaves the queen en prise — 1 $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$. And now another pin is used — 3 $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ mate.

Finally, some examples of pinning in two directions — the so-called double pin.

Hendel

1956



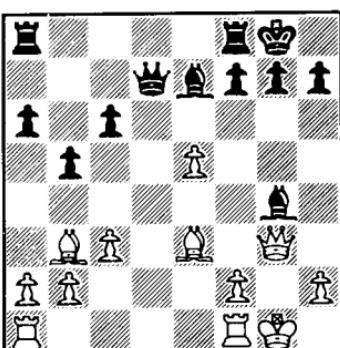
Black to Move

1 ... $\mathbb{R}xg3+$! 2 $\mathbb{R}xg3$ $\mathbb{B}g8!!$ The double pin (along the g-file and the third rank) forces resignation — White loses the queen.

Dahl

Berlin, 1956

Schulz

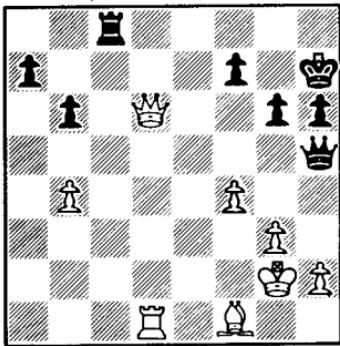


White to Move

1 $e6!$ $\mathbb{A}xe6$ 2 $\mathbb{A}d4$ $f6$. After the preliminary forced moves the double diagonal pin of the bishop at e6 wins — 3 $\mathbb{W}g4$, 3 ... $\mathbb{B}f7$ is followed by 4 $\mathbb{E}fe1$. 1-0.

EXERCISES

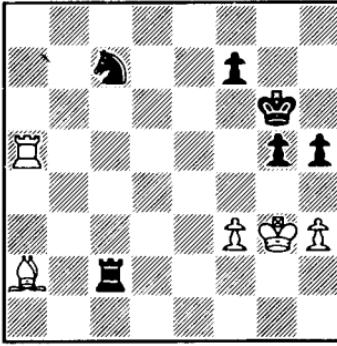
DIAGRAM 97



Black to Move

97) Is the rook check on c2 dangerous for White?

DIAGRAM 98

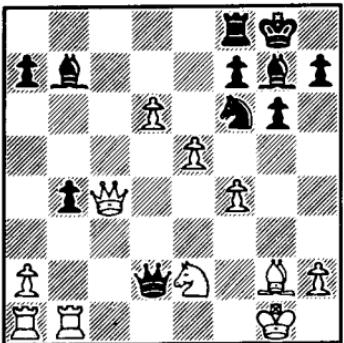


White to Move

98) With his last move $\mathbb{B}g7-g6$ Black created the threat of mate in two moves. How can it be averted?

52 The Pin

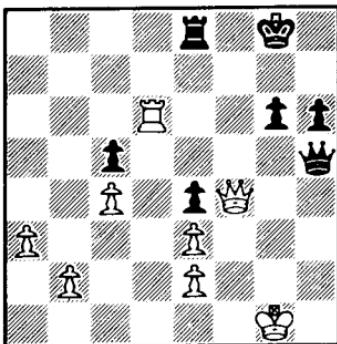
DIAGRAM 99



Black to Move

- 99) White's last move was e4-e5. Can it be refuted?

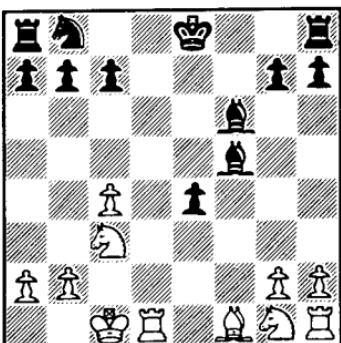
DIAGRAM 101



White to Move

- 101) White has an extra pawn and his major pieces are extremely well positioned. In reply to 1 $\mathbb{W}f6$ Black played 1 . . . $\mathbb{W}g4+$. Where should the king withdraw to — f2 or f1?

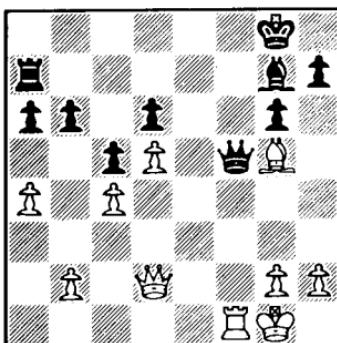
DIAGRAM 100



White to Move

- 100) Assess the move 1 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ with the idea of temporarily sacrificing a piece.

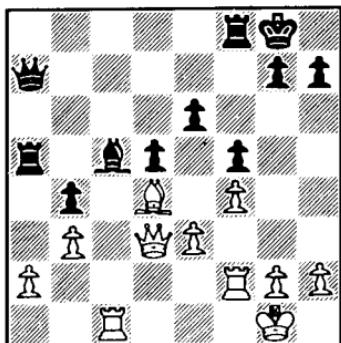
DIAGRAM 102



Black to Move

- 102) Can Black win?

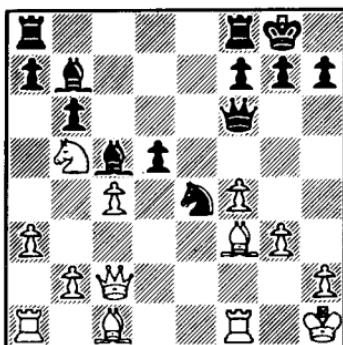
DIAGRAM 103



White to Move

103) Black has no objections to an exchange on c5. What should White do?

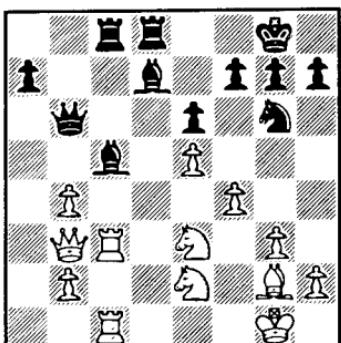
DIAGRAM 105



Black to Move

105) Black went on to play 1...dc, leaving the knight at e4 en prise. Can it be captured?

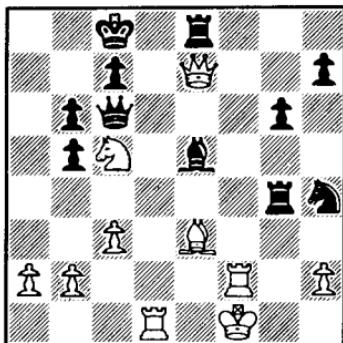
DIAGRAM 104



Black to Move

104) How can the pin on the diagonal be exploited?

DIAGRAM 106

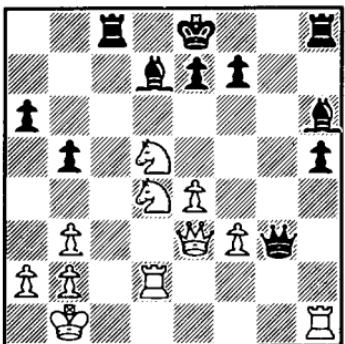


White to Move

106) White went on to play 1 Bf8. Appraise this move.

54 *The Pin*

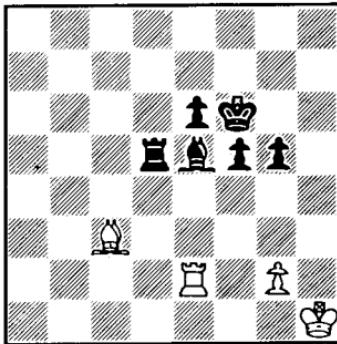
DIAGRAM 107



White to Move

- 107) Black has just played $\mathbb{Q}g7-h6$ and is about to win material. What steps can be taken?

DIAGRAM 108



White to Move

- 108) On his last move Black, who is two pawns up, offered an exchange. How should the game end?

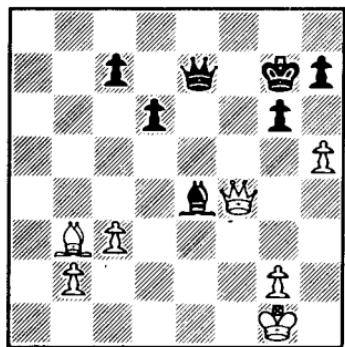
6 Line Closing

With this tactical device the connections between the opponent's pieces positioned on one line can be broken, or access to a key square can be denied.

3 $\mathbb{W}f8+$ $\mathbb{W}g8$ 4 $\mathbb{W}f6+$ and 5 $\mathbb{W}xg7$ mate. Meanwhile the bishop at e4 is en prise. If 2 . . . d5, then 3 $\mathbb{W}e5+$, and if the bishop moves, a different check wins – 3 $\mathbb{W}d4+$. 1-0.

Ivanović

Yugoslavia, 1973



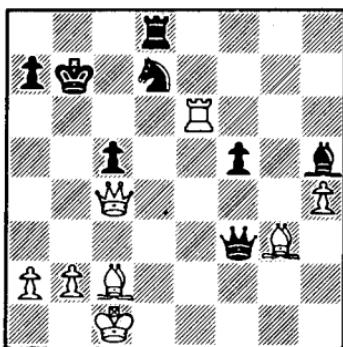
White to Move

Popović

Urzica

Honfi

Bucharest, 1975



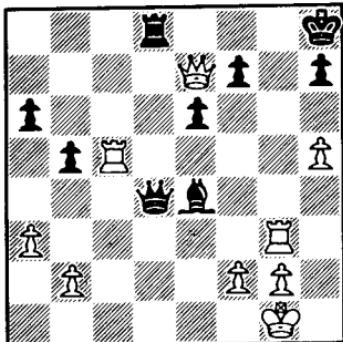
White to Move

1 $\mathbb{A}h6+$ $\mathbb{B}h8$ 2 $\mathbb{A}e6!$ By breaking the connection between the queen and the bishop, White wins.

Black cannot take on e6 because of mate in three moves: 2 . . . $\mathbb{W}xe6$

1 $\mathbb{A}e4+$! (by means of this White isolates the queen and descends on the enemy king with his superior forces) 1 . . . fe 2 $\mathbb{W}d5+$ $\mathbb{B}c8$ 3 $\mathbb{W}c6$ mate.

Eliskases

Austria, 1931

White to Move

After the stunning 1 $\mathbb{R}d5!!$ the game ended. The rook can be captured four different ways but they all lead to mate on the following move: 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ or 1 ... $ed - 2 \mathbb{W}xd8$ mate; 1 ... $\mathbb{B}xd5 - 2 \mathbb{W}f8$ mate; 1 ... $\mathbb{W}xd5 - 2 \mathbb{W}f6$ mate. An impressive demonstration of the idea of line-closing.

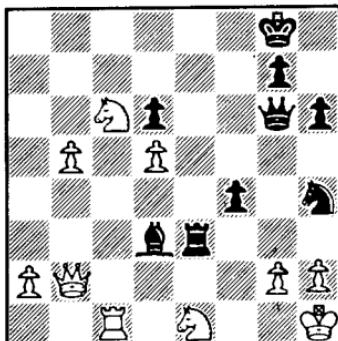
Hözl

White has sacrificed a knight and two pawns and now concludes the attack with 1 $\mathbb{B}e7!!$

The rook cannot be captured, either by the bishop (2 $\mathbb{W}xh7$ mate), or by the rook (2 $\mathbb{W}xf8$ mate). There remains 1 ... $\mathbb{W}b7+ 2 \mathbb{A}e4$ $\mathbb{W}xe4+$ 3 $\mathbb{B}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 4 $\mathbb{B}xe7$. 1-0.

Ilyin-Genevsky

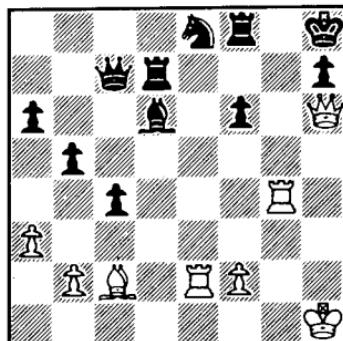
A. Kubbel

Leningrad, 1925

Black to Move

Neumann

Haase

Correspondence, 1968

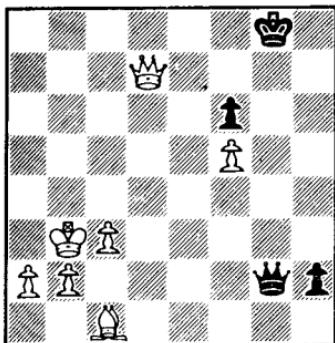
White to Move

There followed 1 ... $\mathbb{A}c2!$ and White stopped his clock. The bishop has closed the second rank, with the threats 2 ... $\mathbb{B}xe1+$ and 3 ... $\mathbb{W}xg2$ mate. White cannot capture on c2 with the knight (because of 2 ... $\mathbb{W}xg2$ mate), or with the rook (because of 2 ... $\mathbb{B}xe1$ mate), or with the queen (because of 2 ... $\mathbb{B}xe1+ 3 \mathbb{B}xe1 \mathbb{W}xc2$ — the rook is overworked with too many responsibilities).

Simagin

Moscow, 1947

Bronstein



White to Move

White has an extra bishop, but the black pawn is just a square

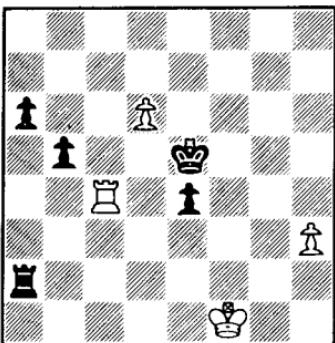
away from promoting to a queen. What can be done?

1 $\mathbb{Q}g5!!$ A move of rare beauty in a seemingly simple position. If 1 ... f_6 , then 2 f_6 and mate is unavoidable. In reply to 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ White captures the h-pawn and easily wins the queen endgame: 2 $\mathbb{Q}c8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xh2$.

There remains the continuation that occurred in the game — 1 ... $h1 = \mathbb{Q}$. Then 2 $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}e8+$, and Black resigned because of the unavoidable mate: 7 ... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (7 ... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ — 8 $\mathbb{Q}g6+$) 8 $f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 9 $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 10 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ mate.

EXERCISES

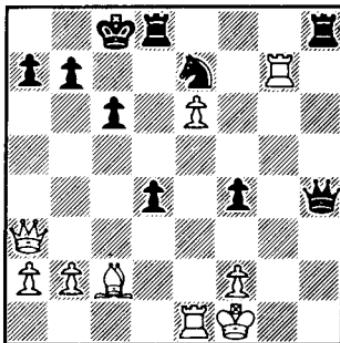
DIAGRAM 109



White to Move

109) Black has attacked the rook with the move b7-b5. How would you reply?

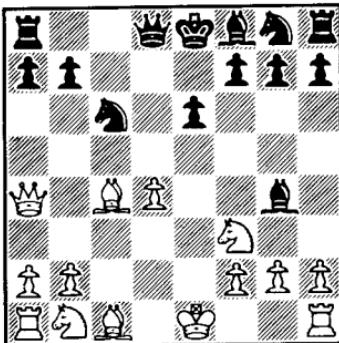
DIAGRAM 110



Black to Move

110) White's king is in dire straits. But how can he be mated?

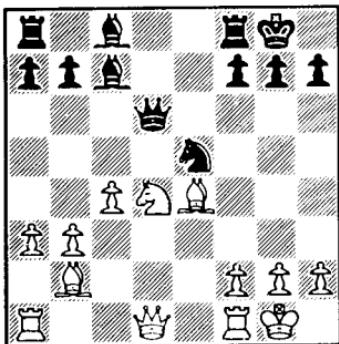
DIAGRAM 111



White to Move

111) White went on to play 1 $\mathbb{Q}e5$, which was followed by 1 ... $\mathbb{W}xd4$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{W}e4+$ 3 $\mathbb{A}e3$ bc 4 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{W}xg2$. Black has won two pawns but is behind on development. How should the attack be conducted?

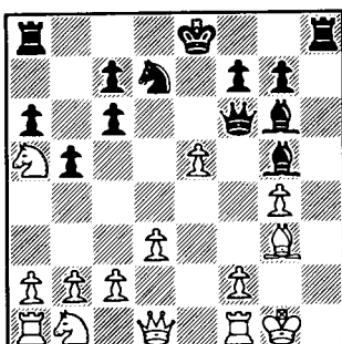
DIAGRAM 113



Black to Move

113) Black went on to play 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}d3$, threatening mate on h2 and at the same time attacking the bishop at b2. Consider the consequences of 2 $\mathbb{A}xh7+$.

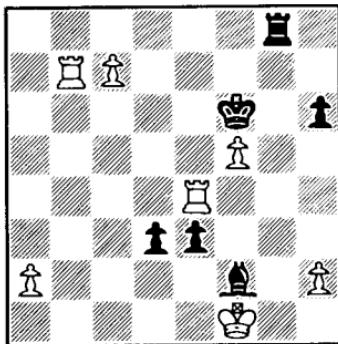
DIAGRAM 112



Black to Move

112) The last move was e4-e5. What about capturing the e-pawn? ...

DIAGRAM 114



White to Move

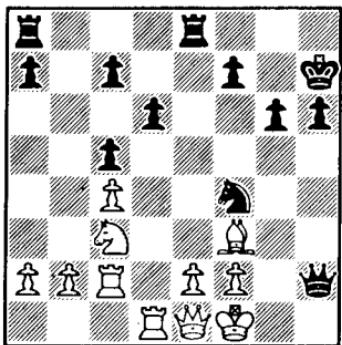
114) White is threatened with mate. What can he play next?

7 Blocking

The idea behind blocking is to force (or to prompt) an opponent's piece to occupy a vitally important square, essential for a more valuable piece (very often the king). This way the opponent's own forces create obstacles.

Friedman

Stockholm, 1973



Black to Move

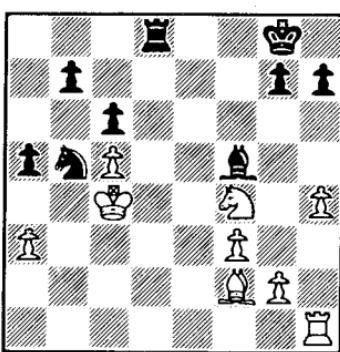
Black has sacrificed a piece for two pawns and exposed the enemy king. But the attack must be completed. To 1 ... ♖h3, White will

reply 2 e3, opening up a flight square for the king. The problematical move 1 ... ♖e3! helps seal it tightly. In reply to 2 fe, 2 ... ♖h3 wins.

Kopilov

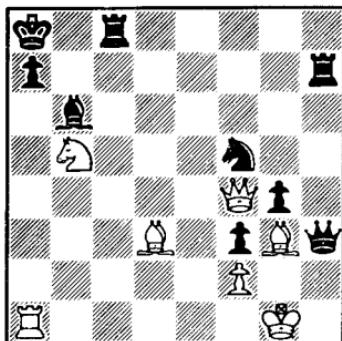
Carlson

Irkutsk, 1961



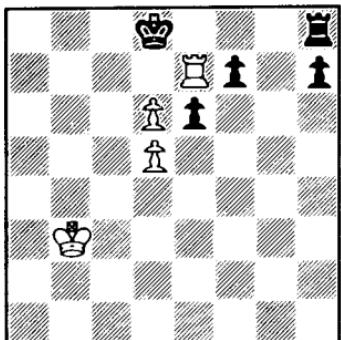
Black to Move

1 ... ♖d3!! Threatens mate in two different ways: 2 ... ♖xa3 mate and 2 ... ♖c3 mate. And in reply to 2 ♖xd3 comes mate from the other side — 2 ... ♖e6 mate.

From P. Stamma's Book, 1737

White to Move

White is threatened with mate on g2 or h1, but Black gets it 'just a little earlier': 1 ♕e4+ ♜b7 2 ♜b8+! ♜xb8 3 ♜xa7+! ♜xa7 4 ♜c7 mate.

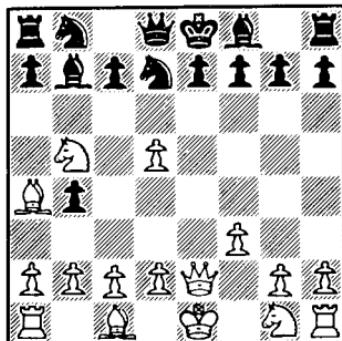


White to Move

In this instructive position, White wins in a way that is very reminiscent of a composed problem: 1 ♜a7 ♜e8 (otherwise 2 ♜a8+) 2 d7 ♜e7 3 d6 ♜xd7. Now that d7 is blocked comes mate — 4 ♜a8 mate.

EXERCISES

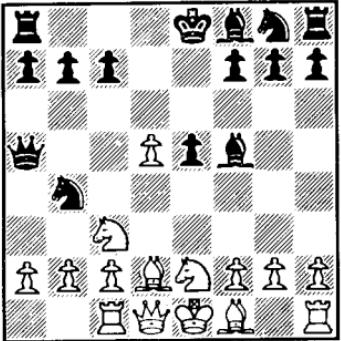
DIAGRAM 115



White to Move

115) Exploit the cramped position of Black's pieces.

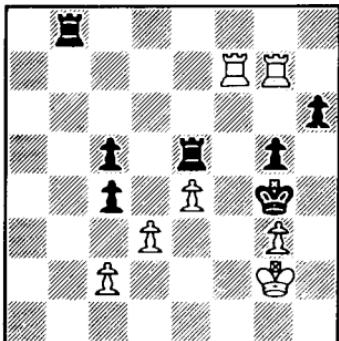
DIAGRAM 116



Black to Move

116) How can the concentration of White's pieces be exploited?

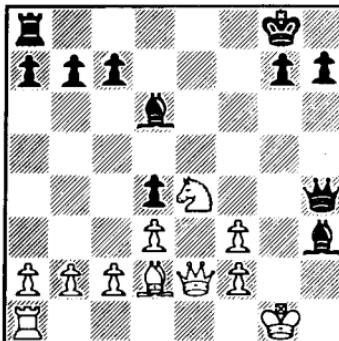
DIAGRAM 117



White to Move

- 117) Is Black's king in a dangerous position?

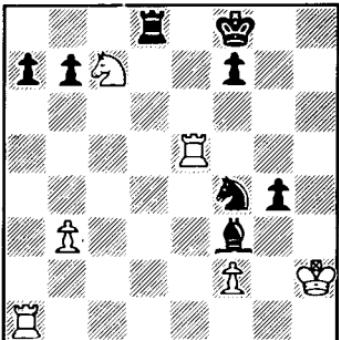
DIAGRAM 119



Black to Move

- 119) White's king is exposed, but how can Black complete the attack?

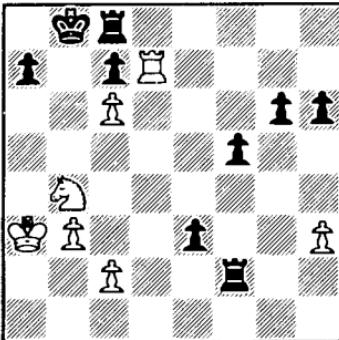
DIAGRAM 118



White to Move

- 118) White went on to attack the knight with 1 Rf5. How would you have replied?

DIAGRAM 120



White to Move

- 120) How should the game end?

8 Combining Tactical Devices

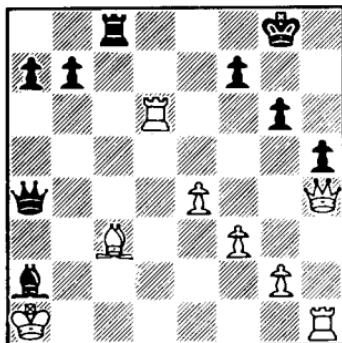
We have deliberately held the reader's attention on examples illustrating only one particular theme. Very often, however, a tactical operation is based not on one, but on two, or even several ideas. We have already seen that the device of blocking is usually combined with an attracting sacrifice, and in many cases in addition to this the idea of the pin is used. In this section we have some examples of combining two relatively common themes (or ideas).

Decoying and attraction

Makov

Vazhenin

Novosibirsk, 1976



White to Move

1 $\mathbb{Q}d8+$! (as we shall see, the check must come from the queen — the rook will come in handy on the sixth rank) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ (1 ... $\mathbb{R}xd8$ 2 $\mathbb{R}xd8+$ and 3 $\mathbb{R}h8$ mate) 2 $\mathbb{R}xh5+!$ (decoying the g-pawn) 2 ... $g8$ 3 $\mathbb{R}h6+$!

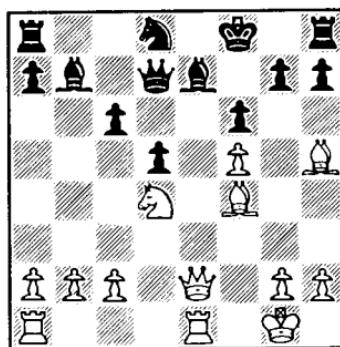
And finally the attraction of the king. After 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ White is mated on g7.

And now an example where we first have the idea of attraction and then the idea of decoying.

Gligorić

Rosenstein

Chicago, 1963



White to Move

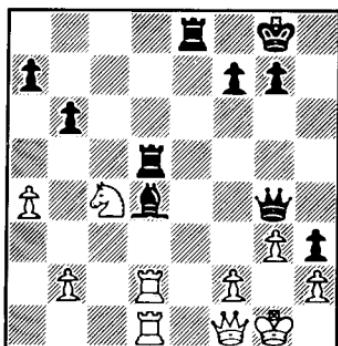
1 $\mathbb{Q}xe7+!$ (attraction) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ (decoy) 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}e8$

mate. And, finally, attraction and decoying in one single preliminary move.

Novotelnov

Averbakh

19th USSR Championship,
Moscow, 1951



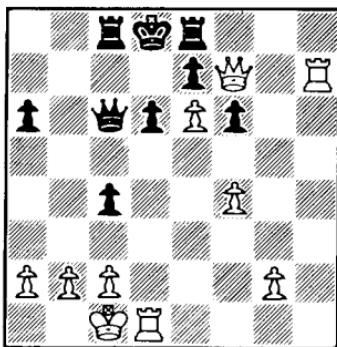
Black to Move

1 . . . ♜xf2+! (decoying the queen from guarding the rook at d1 in case of 2 ♜xf2 and attracting the king in case of 2 ♜xf2) 2 ♜xf2 (2 ♜xf2 ♜f5+) 2 . . . ♜xd1+! ('X-ray')! 0-1.

Päären

Yavorsky

Correspondence, 1974-1976



White to Move

1 ♜xd6+!

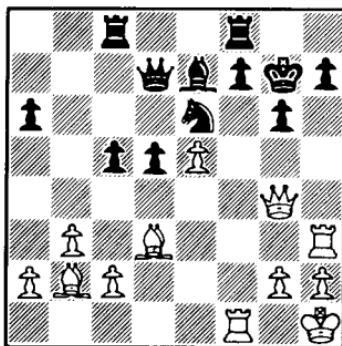
A decoy in case of 1 . . . ed (2 ♜d7+ ♜xd7 3 ♜xd7 mate) and attraction after 1 . . . ♜xd6 (2 ♜xe8+! ♜xe8 3 ♜h8 mate).

Decoying and destroying the guard

Boros

Szabo

Budapest, 1937



White to Move

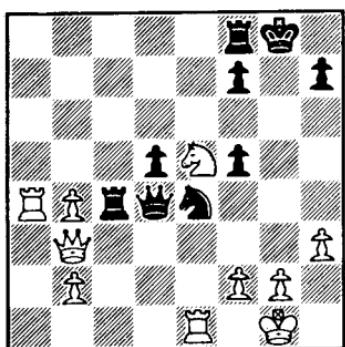
1 ♜xh7+ (decoying the king away from f7) 1 . . . ♜xh7 2 ♜xf7+! (destroying the guard of the g-pawn) 2 . . . ♜xf7 (2 . . . ♜h8 – 3 ♜h3+) 3 ♜xg6+ ♜h8 4 ♜xf7, and in reply to any move with the knight guarding h7 – 5 e6+. 1-0.

And here we have destroying the guard and attraction in the reverse order.

Liliedahl

Johannessen

Oslo, 1976



White to Move

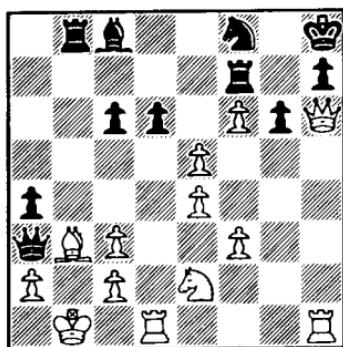
In order to check with the queen on g3 White destroys the enemy knight: 1 $\mathbb{B}xe4!$ $\mathbb{W}xe4$ 3 $\mathbb{W}g3+$ $\mathbb{W}h8$. And now the decoy of the rook away from the back rank wins — 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf7+!$ 1-0.

In the next example we have the decoy and destruction of the guard by means of one preliminary move.

Skuya

Rosenberg

Riga, 1962



White to Move

The bishop at b3 is lost; what is needed here is decisive action. There followed 1 $\mathbb{W}xf8+!$

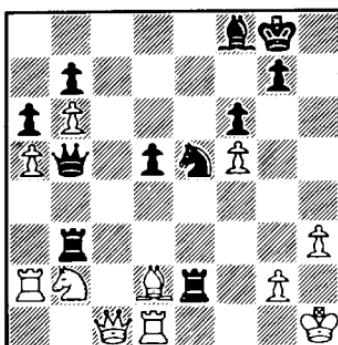
Decoy (of the rook at f7) and, simultaneously, destruction of the guard of h7.

1 . . . $\mathbb{B}xf8$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xh7+!$ $\mathbb{W}xh7$ 3 $\mathbb{B}h1$ mate. g8 is under attack from the doomed bishop at b3!

Decoying and clearing a square or a line

Stolberg

Botvinnik

12th USSR Championship,
Moscow, 1940

Black to Move

1 . . . $\mathbb{B}xh3+!$ (decoy of the g-pawn) 2 gh $d4!$ clearing d5. There is no defence in sight to the threat 3 . . . $\mathbb{W}d5$ (with check or without) 0-1.

Kristanov

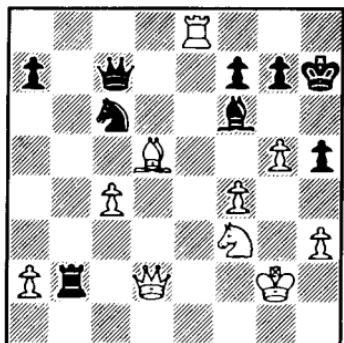
Bulgarian Championship, 1979

Nikolov

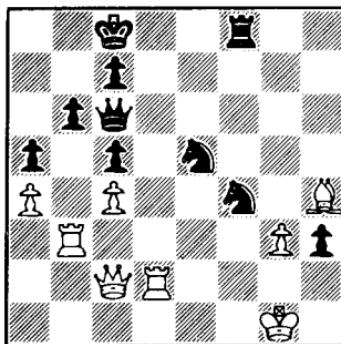
Bogoljubow

Monticelli

San-Remo, 1930



White to Move



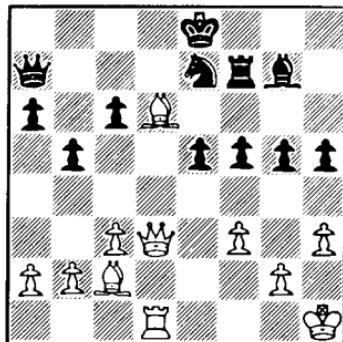
Black to Move

1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}e2+$! (liberating the f-file) 2 $\mathbb{B}xe2$ $\mathbb{B}f1+$! (decoying the king from h1) 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ $\mathbb{W}h1+$, and White resigned without waiting for mate (4 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ mate).

Makogonov

Flohr

Tbilisi, 1942



White to Move

In reply to g4-g5 Black pinned the queen reckoning he would win it in exchange for the rook and a minor piece. There followed, however, 1 g6+ (clearing g6 for the knight) 1 . . . fg.

If 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xg6$, then 2 $\mathbb{A}e4+$ and 3 $\mathbb{B}h8$ mate, and in case of 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}h6$, then mate in reverse order: 2 $\mathbb{B}h8+$ and 3 $\mathbb{A}e4$ mate.

2 $\mathbb{W}xb2!$ The decoy. The queen cannot be captured — 3 $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 4 $\mathbb{B}h8$ mate.

This means that White has a decisive material advantage. After 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 3 $\mathbb{W}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ the game quickly came to a close.

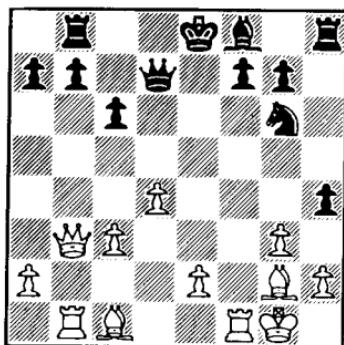
There followed 1 $\mathbb{A}b8!$ (decoying the queen and simultaneously clearing the d-file) and Black resigned: 1 ... $\mathbb{W}xb8$ 2 $\mathbb{W}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3 $\mathbb{W}d8+$ mating.

The decoy and the pin

Krstić

Yugoslavia, 1957

Pete



White to Move

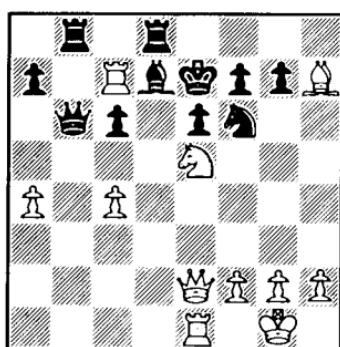
1 $\mathbb{B}xf7!$ White wins by decoying the queen from guarding c6. The capture of the rook is followed by 2 $\mathbb{A}xc6+$ (exploiting the pin) 2 ... bc (2 ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3 $\mathbb{A}a3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4 $\mathbb{B}f1+$) 3 $\mathbb{W}xb8+$, then 4 $\mathbb{B}b7+$ and $\mathbb{B}xf7$ with a huge material advantage.

In case of 1 ... $\mathbb{W}d6$, the game is brought to a swift end by 2 $\mathbb{A}a3!$ $\mathbb{W}xa3$ 3 $\mathbb{W}e6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (or 3 ... $\mathbb{A}e7$) 4 $\mathbb{A}xc6+$, and mate on the next move. If 1 ... $\mathbb{W}c8$, then simply 2 $\mathbb{B}xb7$. Therefore after 1 $\mathbb{B}xf7$ Black resigned.

Horvath

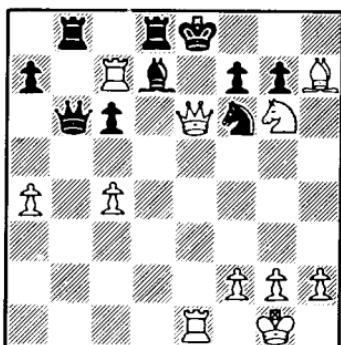
Zagreb, 1948

Uđović



White to Move

1 $\mathbb{Q}g6+!$ (decoying the f-pawn) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ (after 1 ... fg White delivers mate exploiting the pinned bishop at d7 — 2 $\mathbb{W}xe6+$ and 3 $\mathbb{W}e7$ mate) 2 $\mathbb{W}xe6+!$ (now decoying the bishop — on the move or after another sacrifice on e6).

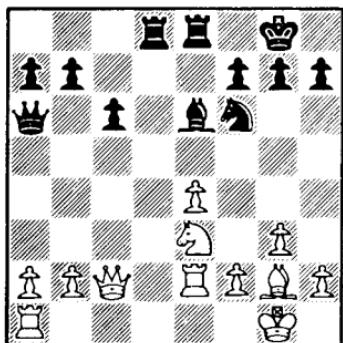


If 2 ... $\mathbb{A}xe6$, then 3 $\mathbb{B}e7$ mate, and in reply to 2 ... fe 3 $\mathbb{B}xe6+!$ $\mathbb{A}xe6$ (or 3 ... $\mathbb{W}f7$ 4 $\mathbb{B}e7$ mate) 4 $\mathbb{B}e7$ mate.

Rubinetti

Najdorf

Buenos-Aires, 1972



Black to Move

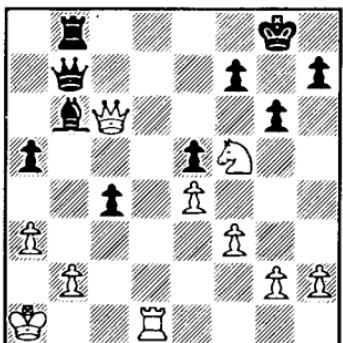
1 . . . ♘b3! A tactical stroke built on the ideas of the decoy and the pin which leads to a gain in material — 2 ♗xb3 ♗xe2. There followed 3 ♖f1 ♗h5 4 ♗xb7 ♖xe4 5 ♗xc6 ♗f3 6 ♖d1 g6 7 ♗b5 ♖xg3! 8 hg ♘e1 9 ♗b3 ♗e2. 0-1.

Line-closing and decoying

V. Zhuravlev

Semeniuk

Novosibirsk, 1976



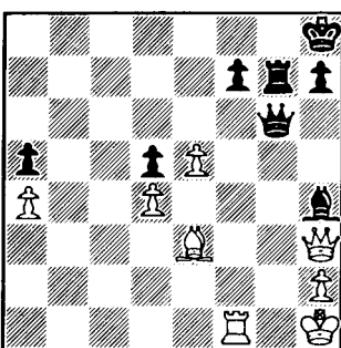
White to Move

1 ♘d8+! The ideas of the decoy (of the rook from guarding the queen in case of 1 . . . ♘xd8) and line-closing (to the rook guarding the back rank; in case of 1 . . . ♘xd8 2 ♗xe8 mate). It could have happened this way, but it didn't. Instead of 1 ♘d8+! the move 1 ♗xb7 was played.

Galbauer

Mandel

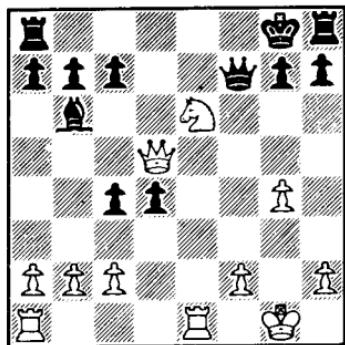
Berlin, 1952



Black to Move

1 . . . ♘f2!! The ideas of the decoy (2 ♘xf2 ♗g1 mate) and line-closing (2 ♘xf2 ♗e4+). The only way out for White is to play 2 ♗c8+ ♘g8 3 ♗xg8+ ♗xg8 4 ♘xf2 but then 4 . . . ♗e4+ 5 ♘g2+ ♗f8 6 ♘g1 ♗f3 7 ♘f2 ♗a3. Black captured the a-pawn and won easily.

Richards

Correspondence, 1975

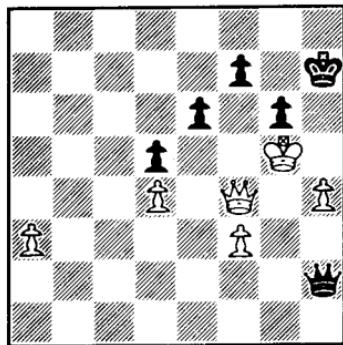
White to Move

1 ♕d8! Closing the line (to the rook at a8) and at the same time decoying the queen from f7. Black's queen is en prise and one of the following captures is forced: 1 ... ♘xd8 (1 ... ♖xd5 2 ♘e8 mate) 2 ♖xd8+ ♗f8 3 ♖d5+ (or 3 ♘e8) 3 ... ♗f7. Finally — mate by exploiting the pin: 4 ♘e8 mate.

Decoying and the blockade

Matokhin

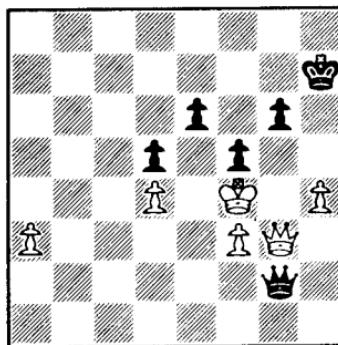
1970



Black to Move

Locock

White has a remote passed pawn, and on his last move he offered to exchange the queens. In reply Black ... forced a win! 1 ... f6+! (decoy) 2 ♖g4 (in reply to 2 ♖xf6 comes 2 ... ♗g3 mate) 2 ... ♖g2+ 3 ♖g3 f5+ (decoy) 4 ♖f4.



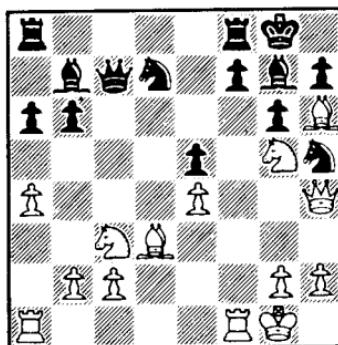
4 ... e5+! (in order to block e5)
5 de ♖d2 mate.

Attraction and destroying the guard

Kupper

Zürich, 1959

Olafsson

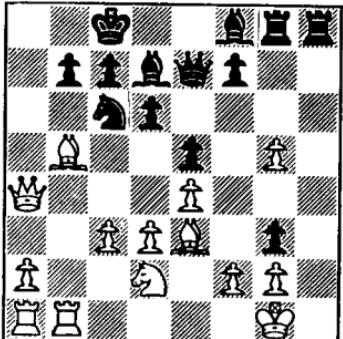


White to Move

1 ♘xg7 (exchange/attraction) 1 ... ♖xg7 2 ♖xf7+! (destroying the

guard of e6) 2 ... ♕g8 (2 ... ♘xf7 – 3 ♔e6+ with a fork) 3 ♘g7+ (attraction into a fork) 3 ... ♖h8 4 ♘xh7+ ♕g8 5 ♘g7+ (5 ... ♖h8 6 ♘xg6) 1–0.

Balogh Gromer
4th Olympiad, Prague 1931

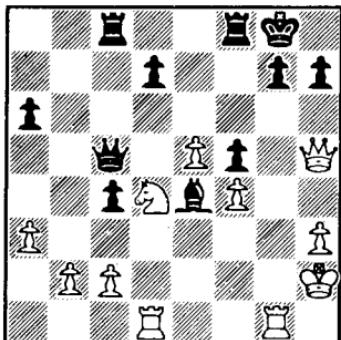


White to Move

1 ♕a8+ ♔b8 2 ♕xb7+ (attraction into discovered check) 2 ... ♕xb7 3 ♘xd7+ ♕a8 4 ♘xb8+! (destroying the guard of c6) 4 ... ♕xb8 5 ♘b1+ ♕a8 6 ♘c6 mate.

Decoying and Line Clearing

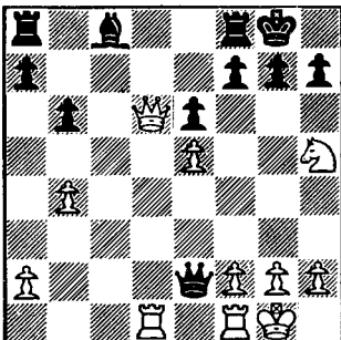
Kislov Biribesov
Voronezh, 1971



White to Move

1 ♘xg7+! (attracting the king to the seventh rank) 1 ... ♕xg7 2 ... ♔e6+! Giving the rook access to the seventh rank. 2 ... de is followed by 3 ♘d7+ mating. 1–0.

Levenfish Ryumin
Moscow, 1936



White to Move

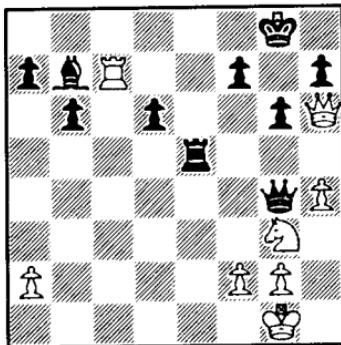
Had he played 1 ♘f6+! gf 2 ef White would have created two threats: 3 ♘g3+ mating and 3 ♘xf8+ ♕xf8 4 ♘d8 mate. Having failed to notice the winning possibility, Levenfish withdrew the knight to g3.

Attraction and the pin

Mädler

Uhlmann

Aschersleben, 1963



Black to Move

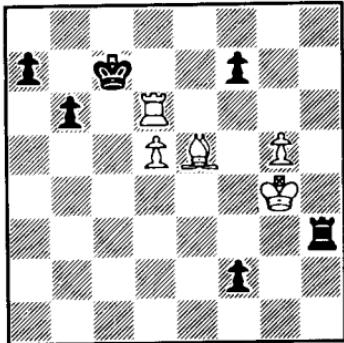
1 ... ♜e1+ 2 ♜h2 ♜h1+! 0-1
 (3 ♜xh1 ♜h3+! and 4 ... ♜xg2 mate; ♜xh1 ♜xg2 mate)

Attraction and line-closing

Koblenc

Moiseyev

Riga, 1955



Black to Move

Promoting the pawn to a queen is unsuitable because of the discovered check ♜d6-f6+ and a king move is also followed by ♜d6-f6, holding the pawn back and staying a piece up. What did Black do?

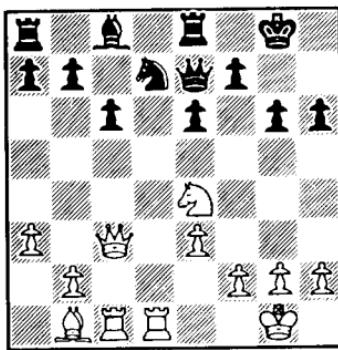
With the move 1 ... f5!! he invited White's king to the f-file (2 ♜xf5 f1 = ♜+). If 2 gf, then after 2 ... f1 = ♜ White no longer has an advantageous discovered check — the line is closed. Nor is there deliverance in 2 ♜xh3 — 2 ... f1 = ♜+ 3 ♜h4 ♜e1+ 4 ♜g3 ♜h1+, so White resigned.

Destroying the guard and freeing a line

Rubinstein

Hirschbein

Lodz, 1927

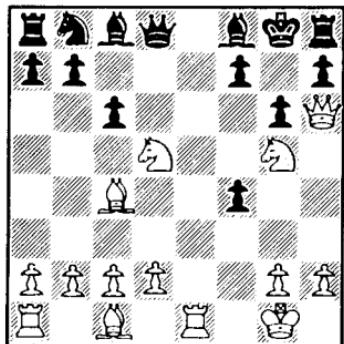


White to Move

1 ♜xd7 (destroying the defender of f6) 1 ... ♜xd7 2 ♜f6+ ♜f8 3 ♜d5! clearing the long diagonal and attacking the queen. 1-0.

EXERCISES*

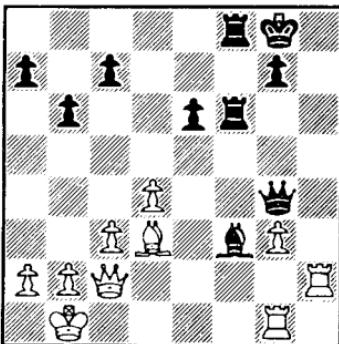
DIAGRAM 121



White to Move

121) Having attacked the queen ($\mathbb{Q}d6-f8$) Black plans to win back the sacrificed piece with $c6xd5$ after the queen has withdrawn. Has White got another possibility?

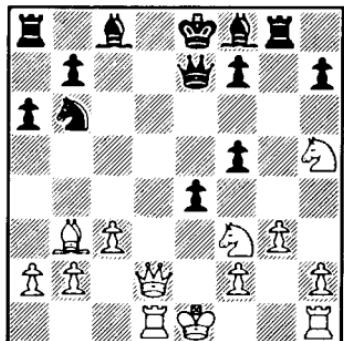
DIAGRAM 123



Black to Move

123) In reply to 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ White played 2 $\mathbb{W}d1$. How would you have replied?

DIAGRAM 122

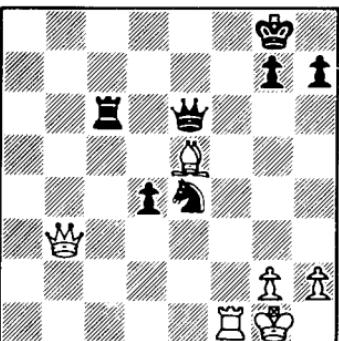


White to Move

122) The knight is en prise, nevertheless White continued 1 0-0. What will follow 1 ... ef?

* In order to reduce the amount of introductory information the examples

DIAGRAM 124

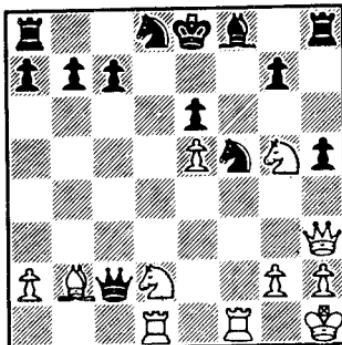


White to Move

124) On his last move Black parried the check with the queen. Your solution?

with two tactical devices have been arranged randomly.

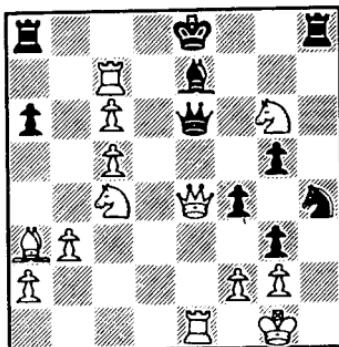
DIAGRAM 125



White to Move

125) For the sake of rapid development White sacrificed two pawns. Now, leaving the bishop en prise he went on to play 1 $\mathbb{Q}d4$. Is this sacrifice correct?

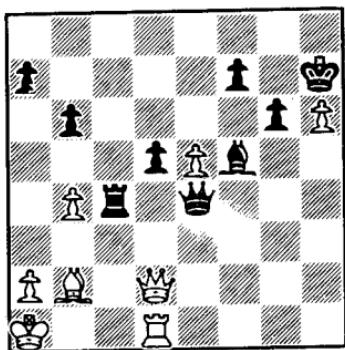
DIAGRAM 127



Black to Move

127) Black's position looks desperate: e7 is under attack from several pieces, and he is a knight and two pawns down. What would you have done?

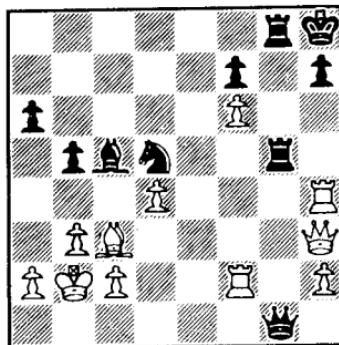
DIAGRAM 126



Black to Move

126) Black played 1 ... $\mathbb{B}c2$. Can White capture the d-pawn?

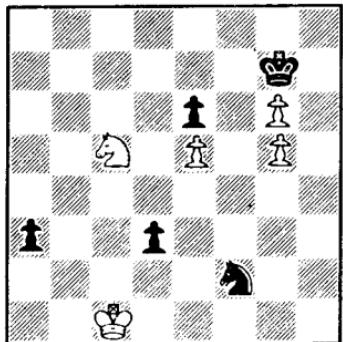
DIAGRAM 128



Black to Move

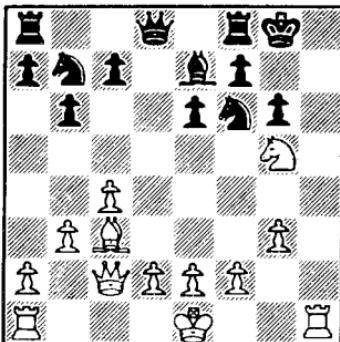
128) h7 is under attack but it is Black's turn to move, and win.

DIAGRAM 129



Black to Move

DIAGRAM 131

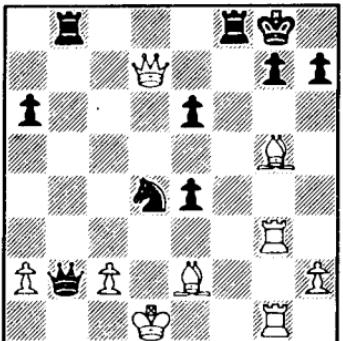


White to Move

129) Black has two passed pawns, but one of them is being restrained by the king, the other by the knight. What can he do?

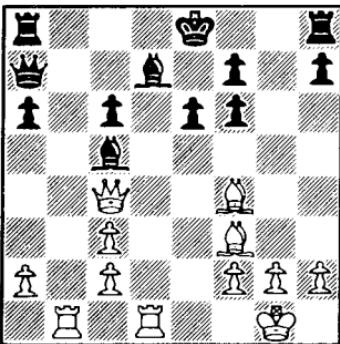
131) White has sacrificed a knight, opened up the h-file, and aimed his pieces at the ♜-side. With the move 1 ♜e4, he threatens to transfer the queen onto the h-file. It cannot be captured because of mate on h8. How can Black defend himself?

DIAGRAM 130



White to Move

DIAGRAM 132

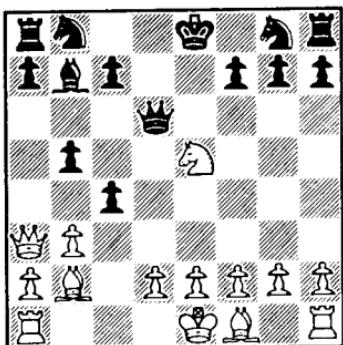


White to Move

130) Black sacrificed a piece in order to obtain this position. c2 is under attack. What advice can you give White?

132) White has a threatening attacking position. Find the winning continuation.

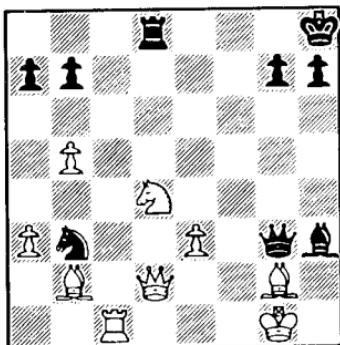
DIAGRAM 133



Black to Move

- 133) Black chased the knight away with 1 ... f6. What would you have done?

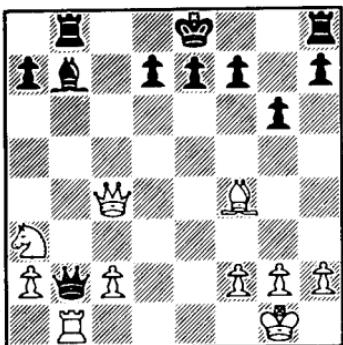
DIAGRAM 135



White to Move

- 135) On his last move Black played $\mathbb{Q}a5-b3$, counting on obtaining a draw after 1 $\mathbb{W}f2$ $\mathbb{W}xf2+$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ $\mathbb{A}xg2$. Is this calculation correct?

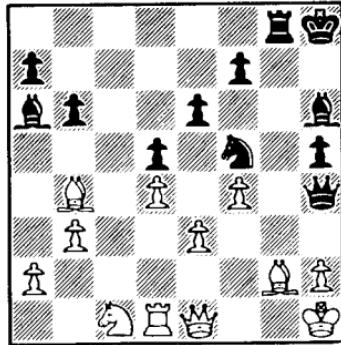
DIAGRAM 134



Black to Move

- 134) White has attacked the queen. How would you have replied?

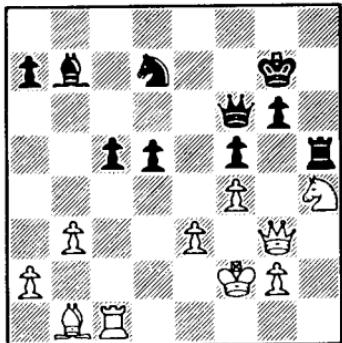
DIAGRAM 136



Black to Move

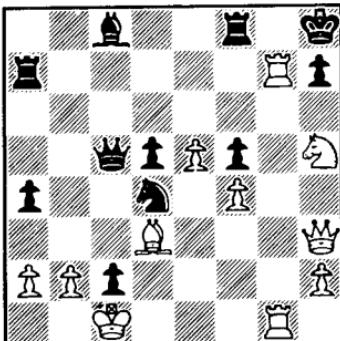
- 136) How should Black reply to the offer of exchanging the queens?

DIAGRAM 137



White to Move

DIAGRAM 138



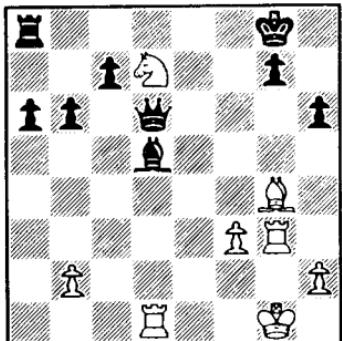
Black to Move

137) Is Black's ♜-side soundly protected?

138) Black sacrificed the knight — 1 . . . ♘b3+ 2 ab ab and threaten 3 . . . ♗a1+. What should White do?

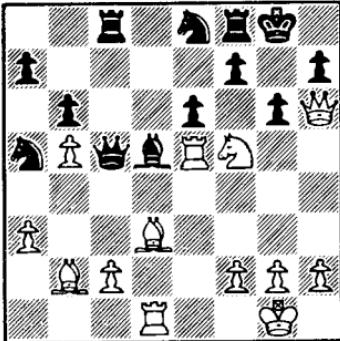
HOW WOULD YOU HAVE PLAYED?

DIAGRAM 139



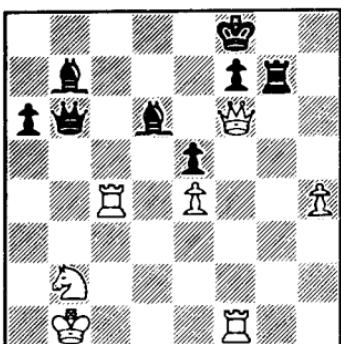
White to Move

DIAGRAM 140



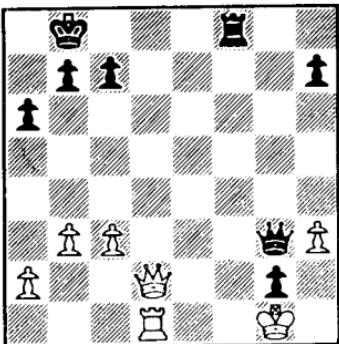
White to Move

DIAGRAM 141



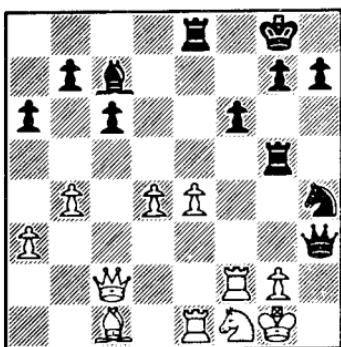
White to Move

DIAGRAM 144



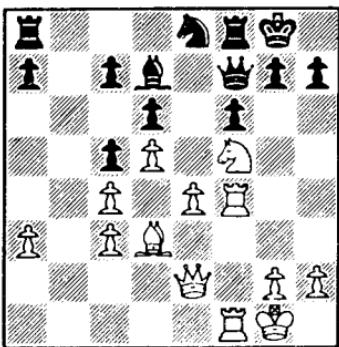
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 142



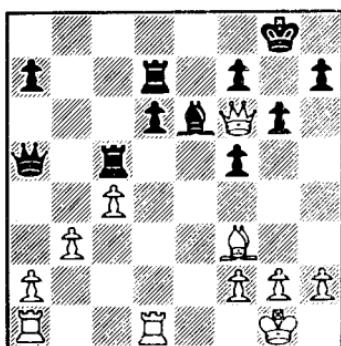
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 145



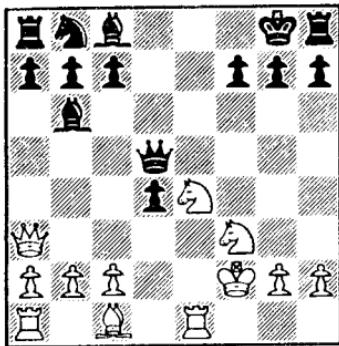
White to Move

DIAGRAM 143



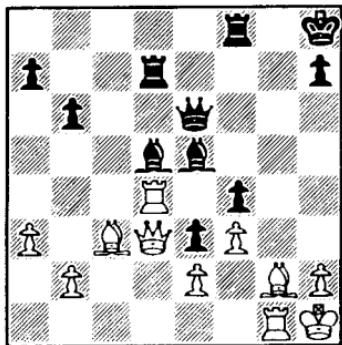
White to Move

DIAGRAM 146



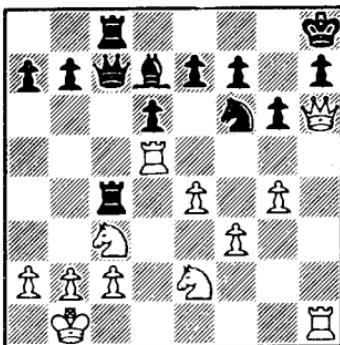
White to Move

DIAGRAM 147



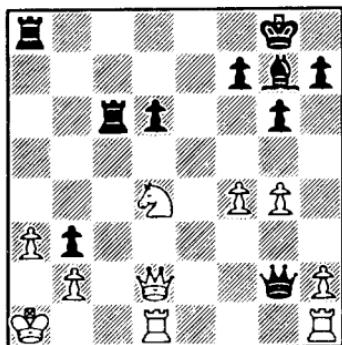
White to Move

DIAGRAM 149



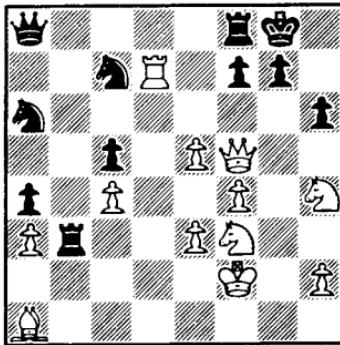
White to Move

DIAGRAM 148



Black to Move

DIAGRAM 150



White to Move

9 Promoting a Pawn

So far we have talked about methods by means of which we can realize tactical operations. In this section, and in the next one, we will look at examples which have another feature in common: a similar end result.

I believe Napoleon is the author of the following pithy saying: 'Every soldier carries in his pack the staff of a marshall'.* Nevertheless, in no battle, whether in Napoleon's time or later, have soldiers become marshals. But a private in the chess army who has crossed the battlefield unharmed is welcomed with a fabulous promotion in rank.

Usually the pawn reaches the last rank (for Black — the first) and promotes to the most powerful piece — the queen (or any other piece the player may wish to choose) in the final stage of the game — the endgame, when there are few fighting forces left on the board. But it can happen that it

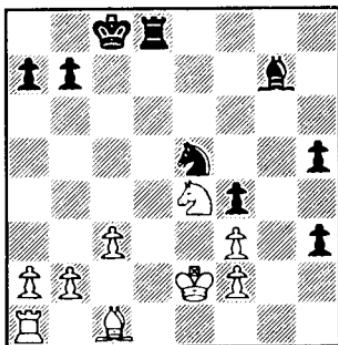
* Translator's note: Louis XVIII is the author

steps onto the triumphal square in the heat of the battle.

Katayev

Markov

Bor, 1977



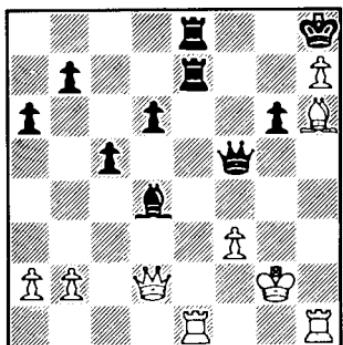
Black to Move

White is threatening to capture the f-pawn, and if Black defends it, to play $\mathbb{Q}c1-d2$ (and then $\mathbb{B}a1-h1$), securing himself from the passed pawn. How can Black make sure that it promotes?

It only took one move 1...
 $\mathbb{B}d1!$, and White resigned (2 $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ h2).

Patience

England, 1964

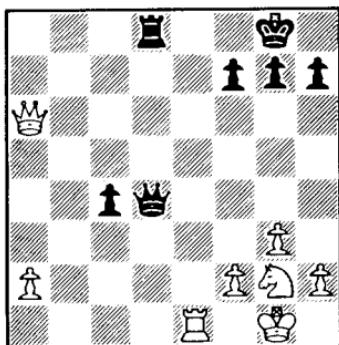


White to Move

There followed 1 $\mathbb{W}xd4+$! (the theme being the destruction of the guard . . . of g7!) 1 . . . ed 2 $\mathbb{A}g7+$! $\mathbb{W}xg7$ (2 . . . $\mathbb{B}xg7$ 3 $\mathbb{B}xe8+$) 3 $\mathbb{B}xe7+$ $\mathbb{B}xe7$. In case of 3 . . . $\mathbb{B}f6$ 4 $\mathbb{B}e8$ $\mathbb{W}c2+$ 5 $\mathbb{B}g3$ or 4 . . . $\mathbb{B}g5+$ 5 $\mathbb{B}f2$ $\mathbb{W}d2+$ 6 $\mathbb{B}e2$ the checks end.
 4 h8 = $\mathbb{W}+$ 5 $\mathbb{B}h7+$ 6 $\mathbb{B}e6$ 6 $\mathbb{W}c8+$ $\mathbb{B}f6$ (6 . . . $\mathbb{B}d5$ 7 $\mathbb{W}xf5+$ and 8 $\mathbb{B}xe7$) 7 $\mathbb{W}f8+$ 1-0.

Chistiakov

Moscow, 1938

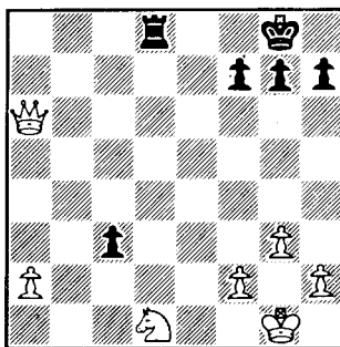


White to Move

Tilson

White has an extra knight. Black's hopes rest on the passed pawn. Having played 1 $\mathbb{Q}e3$, White intended to continue 2 $\mathbb{B}d1$ in reply to 1 . . . c3, and in case of 2 . . . $\mathbb{W}f6$, to exchange the rooks. 'If 2 . . . $\mathbb{W}xd1+$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $\mathbb{B}xd1+$ 4 $\mathbb{B}g2'$, he reasoned, 'the pawn will be brought to a standstill (4 . . . c2? 5 $\mathbb{W}c8+$), and Black will lose'.

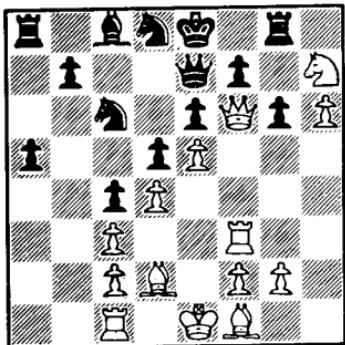
This calculation, however, turned out to be mistaken. After 1 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ c3 2 $\mathbb{B}d1?$ $\mathbb{W}xd1+$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ Black was presented with an excellent tactical possibility.



3 . . . c2 (instead of 3 . . . $\mathbb{B}xd1+?$) 4 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ c1 = $\mathbb{W}+$ 5 $\mathbb{B}g2$ $\mathbb{W}c8$. The odds are in Black's favour — he is left with extra material (White having had to give away a rook because of the pawn).

Neishtadt

Evpatoria, 1946

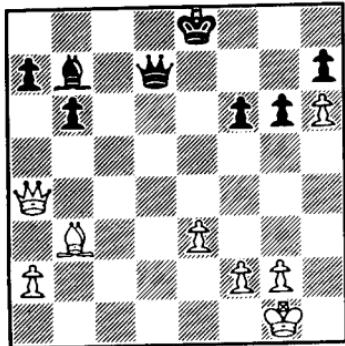


White to Move

There followed 1 $\mathbb{W}g7!$ and Black resigned (1 ... $\mathbb{B}xg7 - 2 \mathbb{R}h5$; 1 ... $\mathbb{B}f8 - 2 \mathbb{Q}f6+).$

Soultanbeieff

Ramsgate, 1929



White to Move

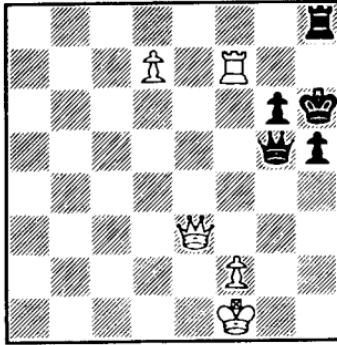
1 $\mathbb{Q}f7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 2 $\mathbb{W}xd7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xg6!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xh7.$ The passed h-pawn can be stopped, but there is no point in playing an endgame two pawns down. 1-0.

Gorbulin

Vitolinsht

Sideif-Zade

Beltzy, 1979



White to Move

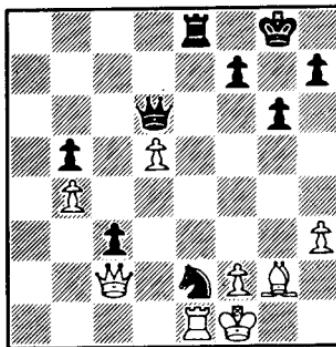
On his last move Black covered the check with the queen, correctly thinking that the rook endgame would end in a draw.

But after 1 $\mathbb{B}h7+!$ there was no rook endgame. 1-0.

Veltmander

Polugayevsky

RSFSR Championship, 1958



Black to Move

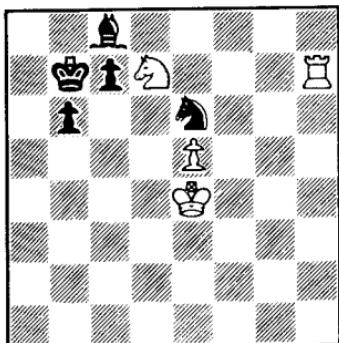
1 ... $\mathbb{Q}g3+.$

A sacrifice with the aim of ... exchanging the major pieces.

2 fg $\mathbb{W}f6+$ 3 $\mathbb{W}f2$ (otherwise the $\mathbb{W}xf2+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ c2, and the game rook is lost) 3 . . . $\mathbb{B}xe1+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ ended.

EXERCISES

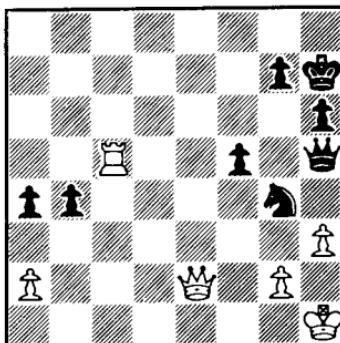
DIAGRAM 151



White to Move

151) White played 1 $\mathbb{R}e7$ (the threat was $\mathbb{Q}e6-g5+$). Did he not overlook something?

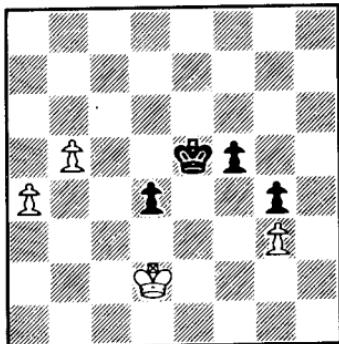
DIAGRAM 153



White to Move

153) How can White obtain a material advantage?

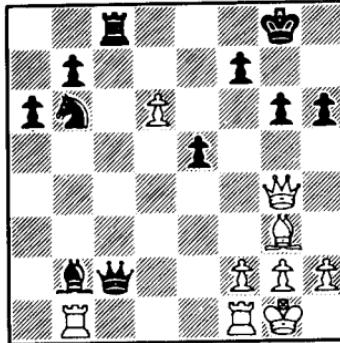
DIAGRAM 152



Black to Move

152) White has connected passed pawns, but Black is about to create a second passed pawn. How should the game finish?

DIAGRAM 154

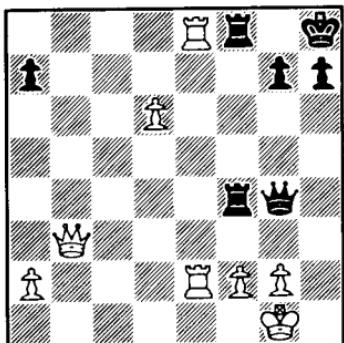


White to Move

154) The d-pawn, White's hope must get going. But When?

82 Promoting a Pawn

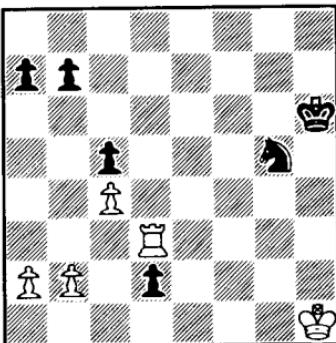
DIAGRAM 155



White to Move

155) Again the d-pawn wins the game. How?

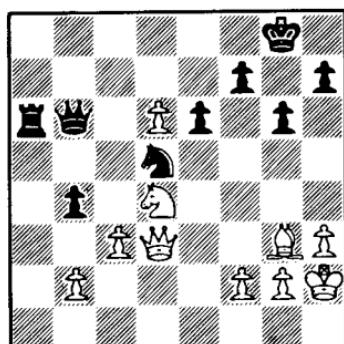
DIAGRAM 157



Black to Move

157) The d-pawn is en prise but the promotion square is controlled by the rook. How should the game end?

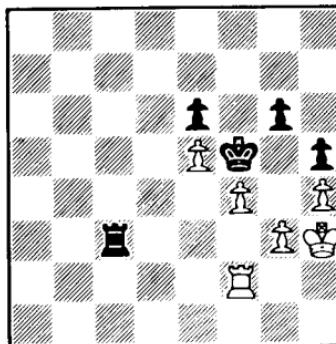
DIAGRAM 156



White to Move

156) And again. White uses the d-pawn decisively. What does he play?

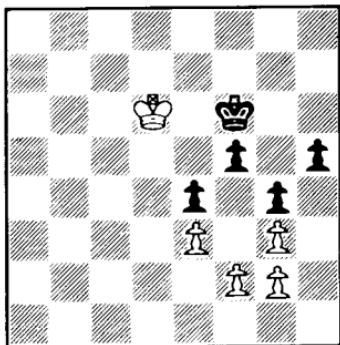
DIAGRAM 158



White to Move

158) White went on to play 1 ♘h2. Is this move right or wrong? Analyze the possibilities on both sides.

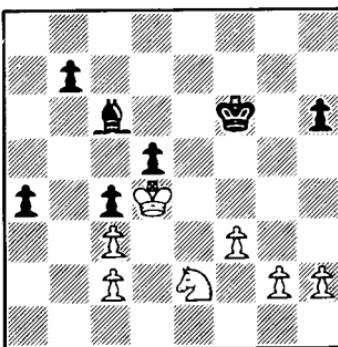
DIAGRAM 159



Black to Move

159) In whose favour is this end-game?

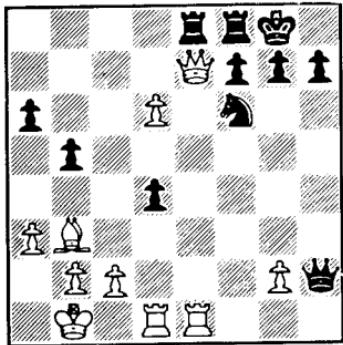
DIAGRAM 161



Black to Move

161) All Black's hopes rest on the passed a-pawn, but on his next move $\mathfrak{Q}e2-c1$ White gains control of a2. How can the advance be supported?

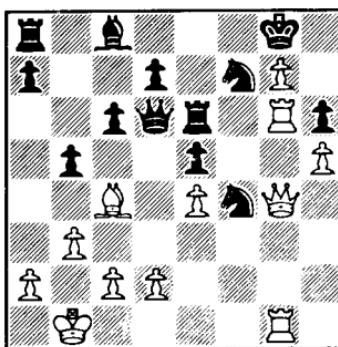
DIAGRAM 160



White to Move

160) With his last move Black tried to drive the queen away. Your solution?

DIAGRAM 162



White to Move

162) Black has an enormous material advantage, and with his last move (b6-b5) he proposes to seize even more. Your reply?

10 A Miraculous Escape

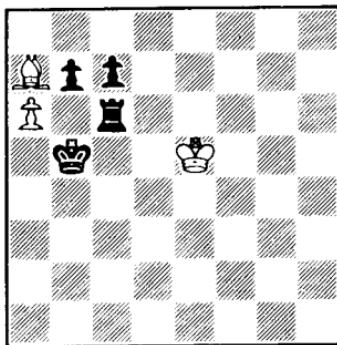
Let's imagine we're in the cinema watching an absorbing adventure film. The hero is surrounded on all sides by enemies. His situation appears to be desperate, and a tragic ending seems to be inevitable. But at the very last moment, when there seems to be no hope left at all, our hero manages a daring escape, or gets out of danger by some other miraculous means. In the script-writer's scheme salvation comes quite unexpectedly, to the great delight of the audience, who likes the hero and does not want to believe in a sad ending.

Such are the laws of the optimistic genre: courage and virtue must be rewarded. 'Just like in a novel' or 'just as in a film', says the reader or the film-goer. 'Just like in a study', say chess players.

In an endgame study brute force is never victorious. On the contrary, it ends up in disgrace.

A. Troitzky

1895

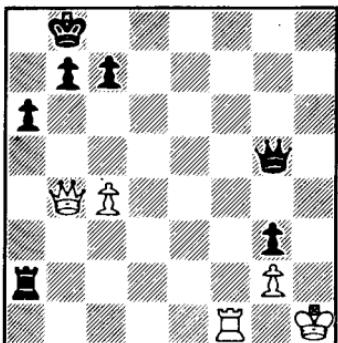


White to Move

White played 1 ab, after which it is hard to see how the appearance of the queen can be prevented. Note that Black's king is not hindered in his movements, and there doesn't appear to be a stalemate in sight. But there is an escape!

1 . . . ♜e6+! 2 ♕xe6 ♜c6!! Now 3 b8=♛(后) leads to a stalemate, and 3 b8=♜(象) is followed by 3 . . . ♜b7 and a draw!

G. Lolli
1763



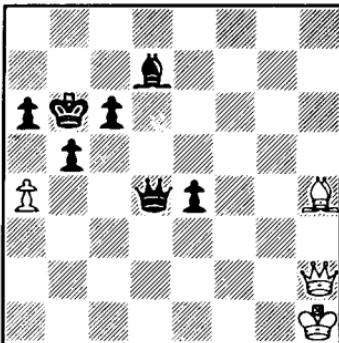
White to Move

If we remove White's queen and rook from the board, as well as the pawn at c4, and then cut off g1 from the king, we'll get a stalemate. But how can it be done?

1 $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}a8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}c5+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ stalemate. There wasn't any need to get rid of the c-pawn — it was blocked by Black's queen.

A contemporary of Lolli, the Italian master Domenico Lorenzo Ponziani cites the following position in his book.

D. Ponziani
1782



White to Move

Black has three extra pawns. But by sacrificing all his pieces one after the other, White forces stalemate.

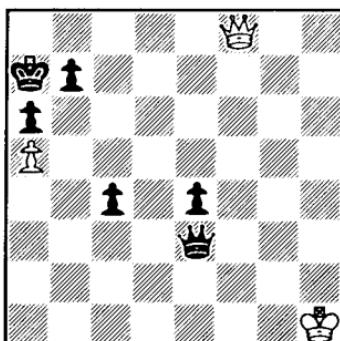
1 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $e3$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xe3!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ (no other option, since in reply to 3... $\mathbb{Q}c5?$ comes the diversionary blow 4 $a5+$) 4 $a5+$, and whatever the reply, White is stalemated.

A century and a half later this theme invented by Ponziani occurred in the U.S.A. Championship.

Pilnick

Reshevsky

1942



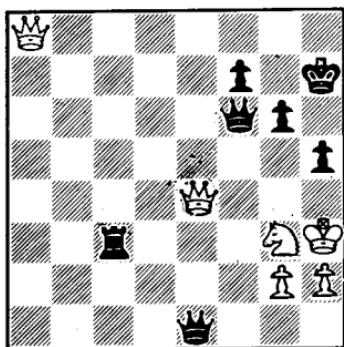
White to Move

The grandmaster was stunned when his opponent played 1 $\mathbb{W}f2!$

This little trick is only a fragment of Ponziani's idea. But, as the reader will have seen more than once, a combination in a real game can be just as engrossing as an invented one.

Rovner

Leningrad, 1939



White to Move

In this half-unreal position with four queens, which did occur in a game, White is the exchange and a pawn down.

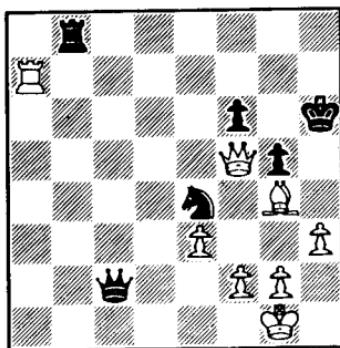
The queen at e1 cannot be captured because of 1 ... $\mathbb{W}f5+$ and 2 ... $\mathbb{W}g4$ mate. However, apart from the queens, none of White's pieces has any moves. This prompts the idea of parting with the queens, and doing it violently: 1 $\mathbb{W}g8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg8$ (1 ... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 2 $\mathbb{W}f8+$, and the king has to go back to h7, since g5 is out of

bounds because of 3 $\mathbb{W}h4$ mate) 2 $\mathbb{W}e8+$ (now the other queen is sent to the slaughter) 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3 $\mathbb{W}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ (the capture leads to stalemate) 4 $\mathbb{W}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 5 $\mathbb{W}h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ stalemate.

Ormos

Betoczy

Budapest, 1951



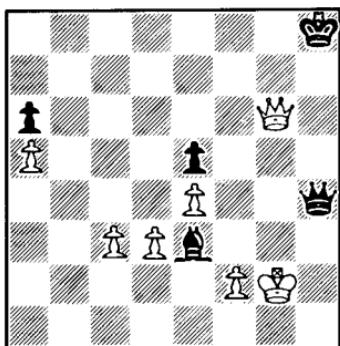
Black to Move

Black is threatened with mate and in addition he is two pawns down. There followed, however, 1 ... $\mathbb{B}b1+$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ and by sacrificing three pieces Black managed to get a stalemate: 2 ... $\mathbb{B}h1+!$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3+!$ (it is easy to note that the pieces should be given away precisely in this order) 4 fg $\mathbb{W}xg2+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ stalemate.

In the last two examples the weaker side used a ready-made stalemate construction, 'discarding' the 'extra' pieces by means of checks.

Browne

Weijk-an-Zee, 1974



White to Move

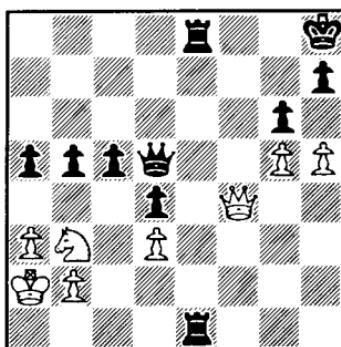
Finding himself in bad time trouble, Browne captured the bishop — 1 fe? (the right sequence was 1 $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 2 $\mathbb{W}d7+$ and only then 3 fe). White had three extra pawns but the ‘mad’ enemy queen forced him to agree to a draw: 1 ... $\mathbb{W}h2+!$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{W}e2+$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{W}g2+$.

Planinc

1 ... $\mathbb{B}b8!$ $\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

Bartolich

St Petersburg, 1902

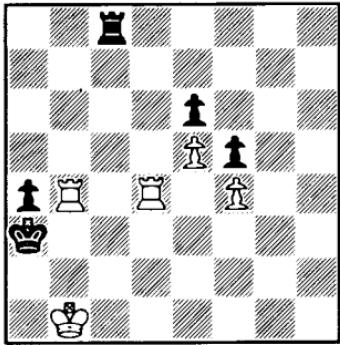


Black to Move

Black had long since lost patience: his opponent refused to resign, although all he could hope for was a miracle. Having played 1 ... a4, Black at last sighed with relief: the game would end on the next move — mate was unavoidable

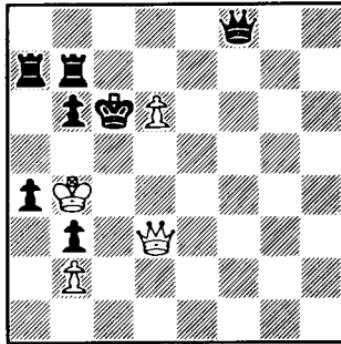
...

There followed, however, 2 $\mathbb{W}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3 $\mathbb{W}g7+!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 4 $h6+$, and the miracle was accomplished — stalemate!



Black to Move

In this instructive example Black is a rook down. But, by making use of the idea of stalemate, he saves the game.

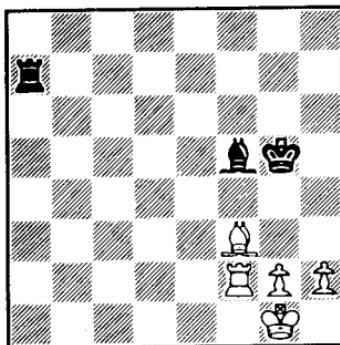


White to Move

After 1 $\mathbb{W}b5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ 2 $\mathbb{W}c5+!!$ $\mathbb{B}c++$ the king, having modestly withdrawn to a3, hides in a 'drawing fortress'. Any move the opponent makes stalemates White.

In all the examples the 'miraculous escape' was achieved by means of moves that led to stalemate.

*From Greco's Manuscript
(early 17th c.)*



Black to Move

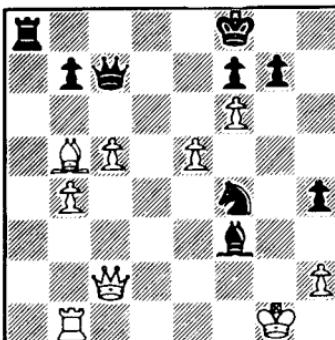
Naturally, there is no stalemate here. Yet there is a draw — 1 ... $\mathbb{B}a1+$ 2 $\mathbb{B}f1$ $\mathbb{B}xf1+$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ $\mathbb{A}h3!!$

After 4 gh (if White doesn't capture the bishop, Black sacrifices it on the next move for the g-pawn) there arises a theoretical ending in which the king, the bishop and the pawn do not win against the lone king if the bishop (in this case the \mathbb{B} -side bishop) cannot attack the promotion square (h8).

Budovich

Kosikov

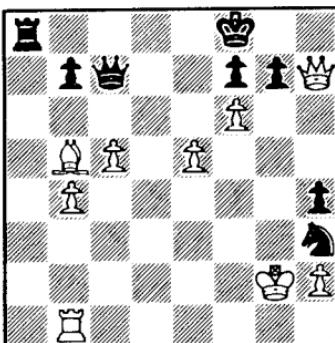
Beltzy, 1979



White to Move

Having played 1 $\mathbb{W}h7$ White was convinced that his opponent had no defence to mate on h8 or g7. But there was an escape: 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}h3+$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{A}g2+!$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xg2$.

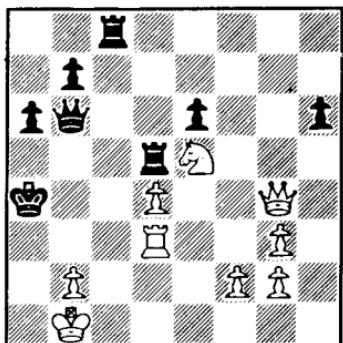
He has to take the bishop: if the king withdraws onto the e-file comes 3 ... $\mathbb{W}xe5+$.



3 ... $\mathbb{B}a2+!$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}h1$.

The knight is inviolate — 4 $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ $\mathbb{W}c8+!$, and 4 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ is no good because of 4 ... $\mathbb{Q}g5+$.

4 . . . ♕f2+ 5 ♔g1 (or 5 ♔g2) 5 . . . ♘h3+ and a draw in view of the fact that he cannot move to f1 because of 6 . . . ♘f2+ 7 ♔e1 ♘xe5+.



Black to Move

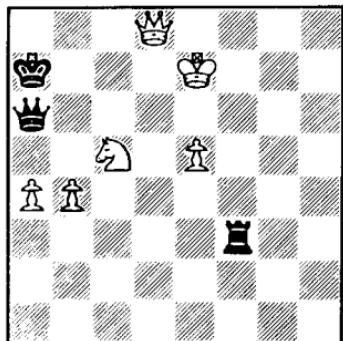
This exotic position with the king in front of his army occurred in a game played in Bombay in 1959.

What can be done against the deadly check with the queen on d1? . . .

1 . . . ♘xb2+!! Black's brave king will personally take part in the operation. After 2 ♘xb2 ♘b5+ 3 ♘a2 ♘c2+ 4 ♘a1 ♘c1+ White had to agree to a draw.

EXERCISES

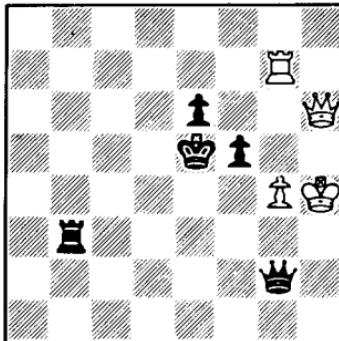
DIAGRAM 163



Black to Move

163) White has three pawns for the exchange and an ideal position. Black's queen is en prise; what should he do?

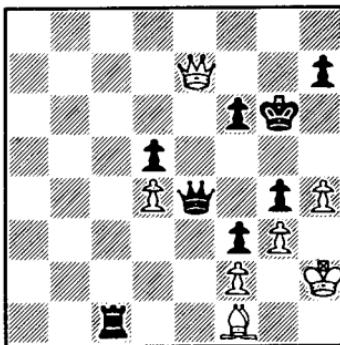
DIAGRAM 164



White to Move

164) The threat is 1 . . . ♘h3+, as well as 1 . . . ♘h3+ mating. Can White escape?

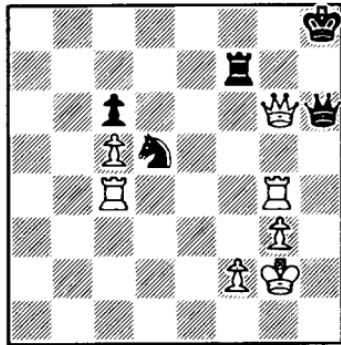
DIAGRAM 165



White to Move

165) White lacks a pawn as well as material. Your solution?

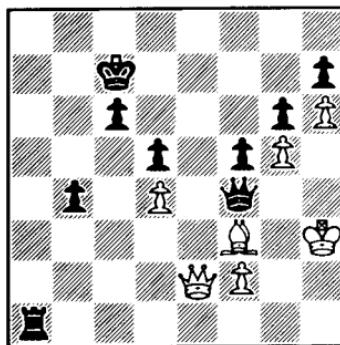
DIAGRAM 167



Black to Move

167) To exchange the queens would be tantamount to resignation for Black. Meanwhile there are also the threats of 1 ♕g8 mate and 1 ♘h4. What can he do?

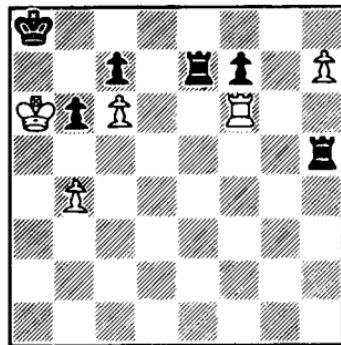
DIAGRAM 166



Black to Move

166) Black has an overwhelming material advantage. Is it worth his while creating a pawn endgame by temporarily (1 . . . ♜xf3+ 2 ♜xf3 ♖a3) sacrificing the queen?

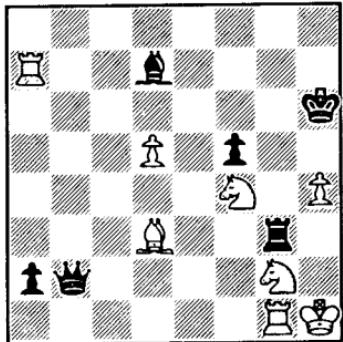
DIAGRAM 168



White to Move

168) The h-pawn is lost and White is a rook down. Is it time to resign?

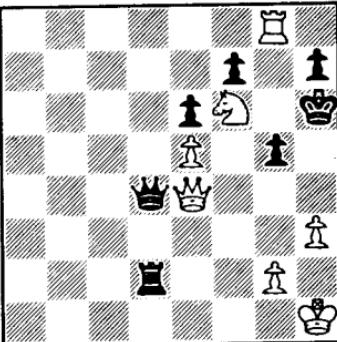
DIAGRAM 169



White to Move

169) Without paying any attention to the a-pawn White has created the threats of mate: 1 $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ $a1=\mathbb{Q}$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$. What is the defence to 3 $\mathbb{Q}h7$ mate (bearing in mind that in reply to 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ will come 4 $\mathbb{Q}d6+$)?

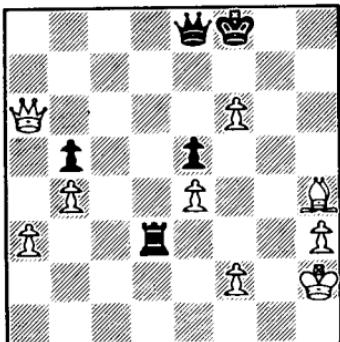
DIAGRAM 171



Black to Move

171) On his last move White (a knight up) offered to exchange the queens and at the same time attacked h7. The variation 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}d1+$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ suited them down to the ground. Is this calculation correct?

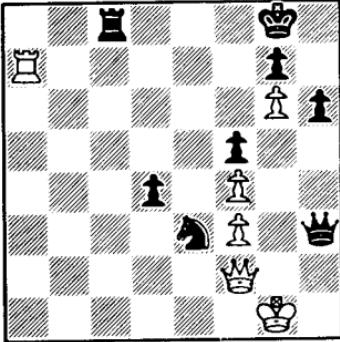
DIAGRAM 170



Black to Move

170) White has four pawns up for material. The pawn at f6 is particularly unpleasant. But there is a way out ...

DIAGRAM 172

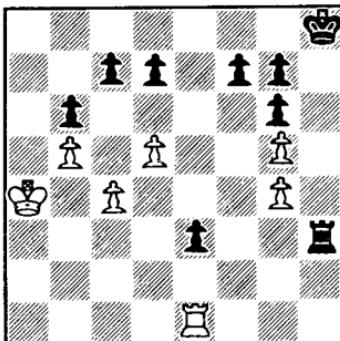


White to Move

172) The game was played by correspondence, and Black was waiting for news of his opponent's resignation to arrive any day. At last the

postcard arrived. What do you think was the move on it?

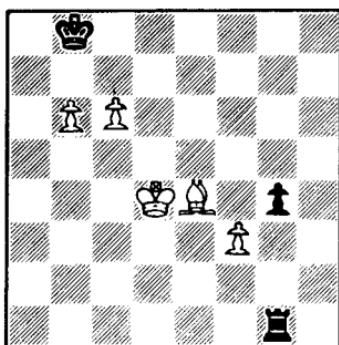
DIAGRAM 173



White to Move

173) White is two pawns down, the passed e-pawn is tied to the spot by the rook, and the g-pawns are in danger. What would you have suggested?

DIAGRAM 174



Black to Move

174) You're playing White and you're threatening the immediate win: c6-c7+ and then Qe4-f5+. Your opponent plays 1...Bd1+. Where will you move the king to?

11 A Tactics Exam

'But almost all of this book is a tactics exam', might remark the reader who has just glanced at the heading. 'Why is only this section called an exam?'

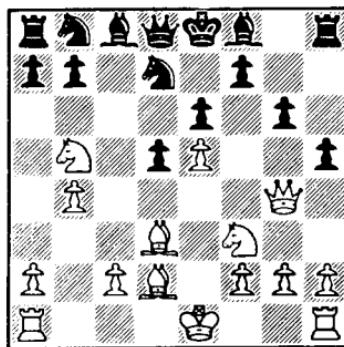
Before, when you were going about your task, you knew that the solution just had to be an extraordinary one, and programmed yourself to look for unobvious continuations. There was, however, another very vital hint contained in the section's subject-matter itself. The method by which you had to accomplish the task was known in advance (in the last two sections the nature of the final position was 'hinted at'). In a word, you were told not only what to do, but also how to do it. The exercises in the previous sections could perhaps be compared to a test on a given subject — the point being that they were tests, but not exams.

In the exam there will be no 'second hint'. This will require greater self-reliance on your part; you will be solving the problems in conditions that are very close to those you might have in a real game. This refers in particular to examples 241-324.

As before, the assignments with a short explanatory note and the examples 'How would you have played?' have in each section been arranged in order of increasing difficulty.

That's it for the 'pre-exam' meeting. We now give the reader the opportunity to see for himself how well he has done in the trials. You have before you 150 exam questions.

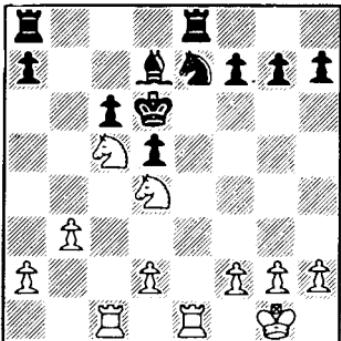
DIAGRAM 175



White to Move

175) Black has attacked the queen. What are your suggestions for White?

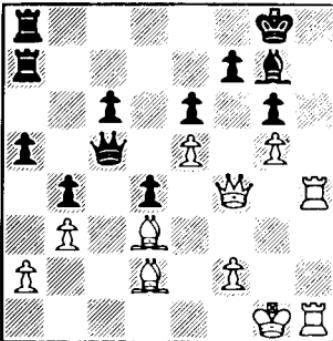
DIAGRAM 176



Black to Move

176) With 1 . . . ♔f5 Black has offered his opponent the exchange of rooks, but White? . .

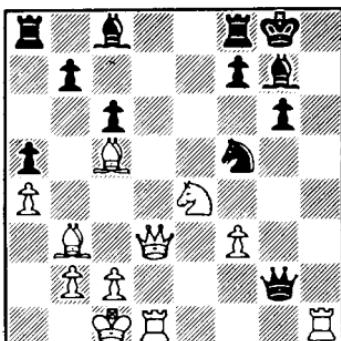
DIAGRAM 178



White to Move

178) Conclude the attack.

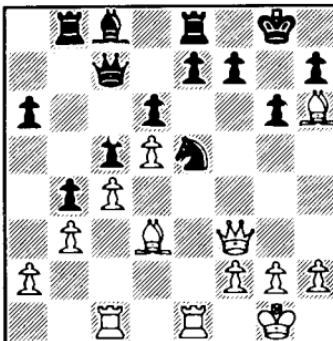
DIAGRAM 177



Black to Move

177) Black made a blunder with the move 1 . . . ♔g3? How can it be exploited?

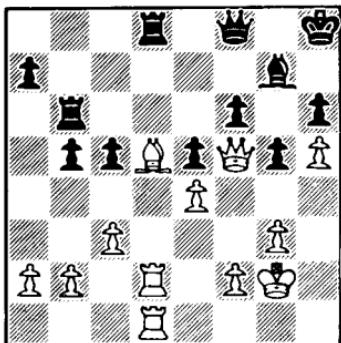
DIAGRAM 179



White to Move

179) White played 1 ♕f4. What will happen if the bishop is captured?

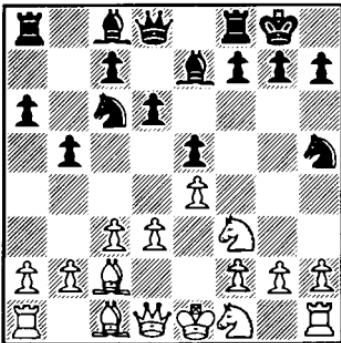
DIAGRAM 180



White to Move

- 180) Black's last move was $\mathbb{B}b8-b6$. How would you have replied?

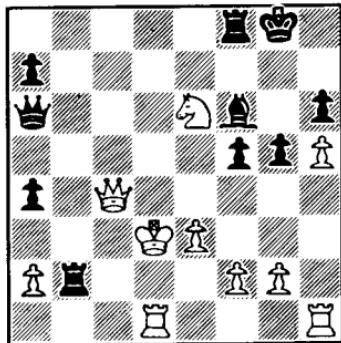
DIAGRAM 182



White to Move

- 182) Calculate the consequences of the following variation connected with winning a pawn — 1 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ and 2 $\mathbb{W}xh5$, and give an assessment of it.

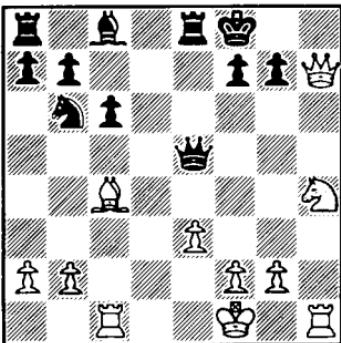
DIAGRAM 181



Black to Move

- 181) White parried the check with the queen, offering to exchange queens. How would you exploit the king's open position?

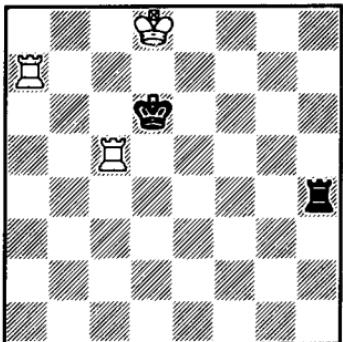
DIAGRAM 183



White to Move

- 183) Continue the attack.

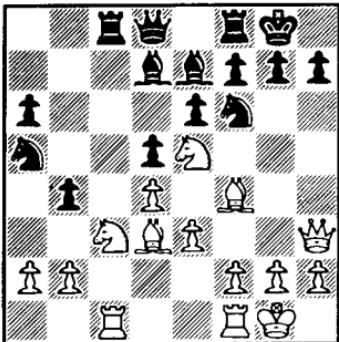
DIAGRAM 184



White to Move

184) White is a rook up. But it is en prise. Besides that, there is the threat of mate on h8. Your solution?

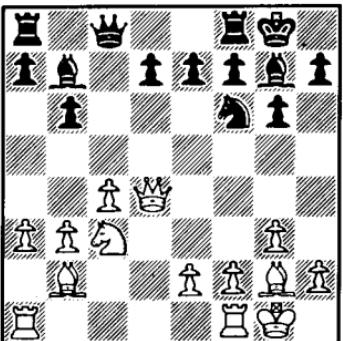
DIAGRAM 186



White to Move

186) On his last move (b5-b4) Black attacked the knight. What should White do?

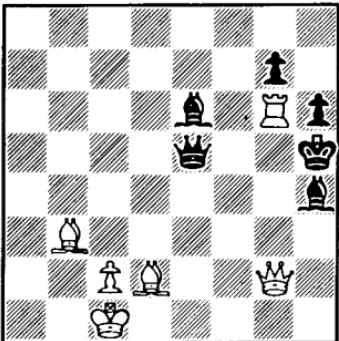
DIAGRAM 185



Black to Move

185) Calculate the consequences of 1...Qe4.

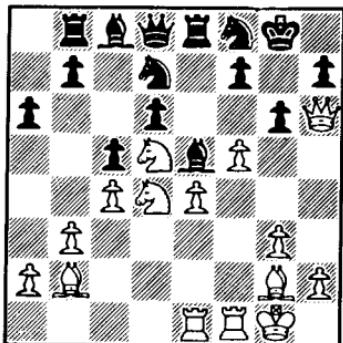
DIAGRAM 187



White to Move

187) How can the open position of Black's king be exploited?

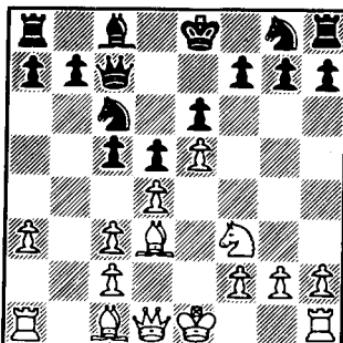
DIAGRAM 188



White to Move

- 188) Black's last move (c7-c5) attempts to chase the knight away. Your solution?

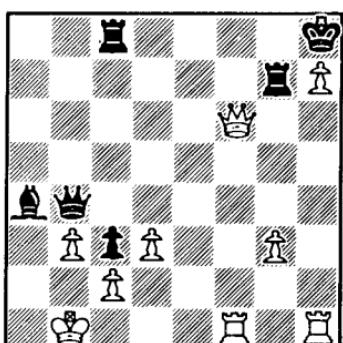
DIAGRAM 190



Black to Move

- 190) Calculate the consequences of the tactical operation — 1 . . . cd 2 cd ♜xd4 and ♕c7-c3+.

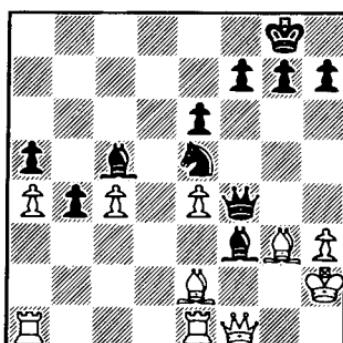
DIAGRAM 189



White to Move

- 189) Black threatens to play ♕b4-a3. What should White do?

DIAGRAM 191

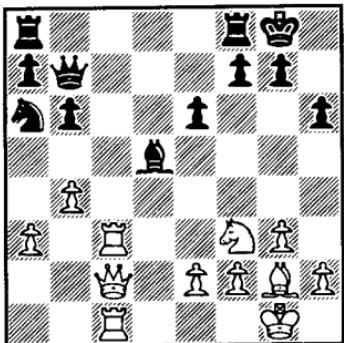


Black to Move

- 191) White has parried the check with the bishop. Your reply?

98 A Tactics Exam

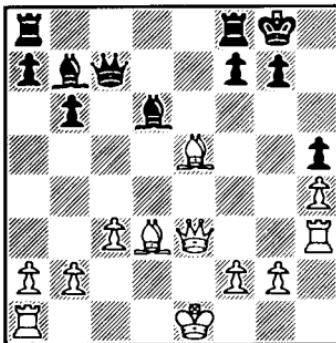
DIAGRAM 192



Black to Move

- 192) Black played 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}e4$. Assess this move.

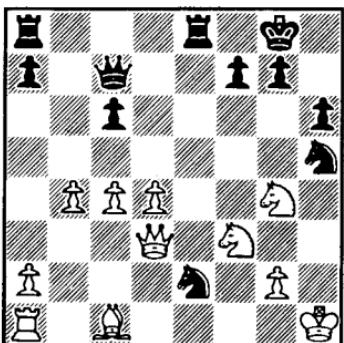
DIAGRAM 194



White to Move

- 194) White's pieces are directed at the ♜-side, but he must hurry: Black is about to exchange the active bishop, and there are the threats on the e-file to reckon with.

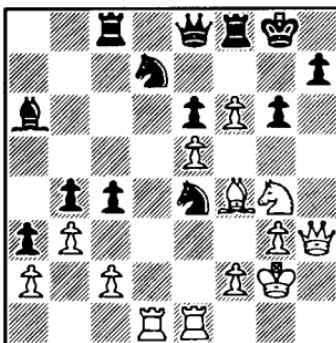
DIAGRAM 193



Black to Move

- 193) Conclude the attack.

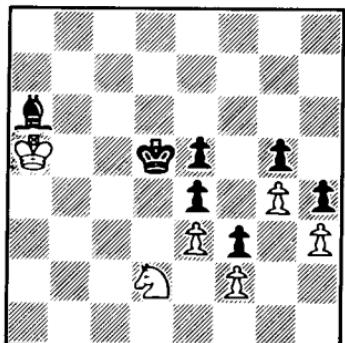
DIAGRAM 195



White to Move

- 195) Continue the attack.

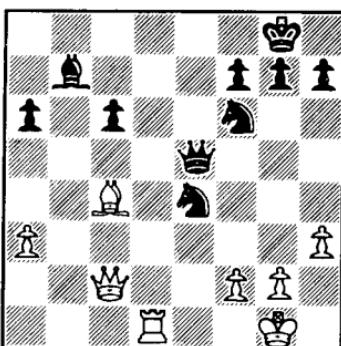
DIAGRAM 196



Black to Move

196) The bishop is en prise. Where is the best place for him to go? Evaluate the position that will arise.

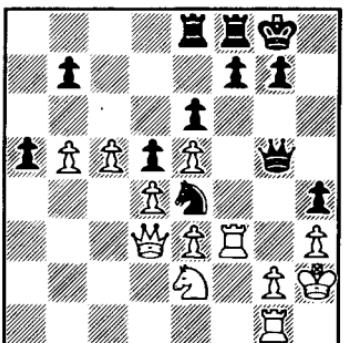
DIAGRAM 198



White to Move

198) 1 $\text{Bd}8+$ suggests itself, but what would you do after 1... $\text{Qe}8?$

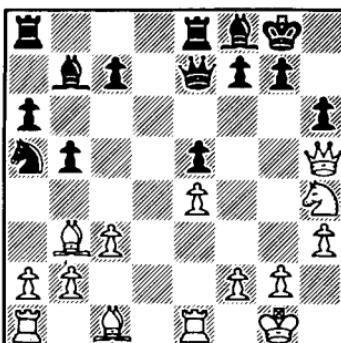
DIAGRAM 197



White to Move

197) Weigh up the consequences of the two continuations – 1 $\text{g}3$ and 1 $\text{Qc}3$. Which one would you have chosen?

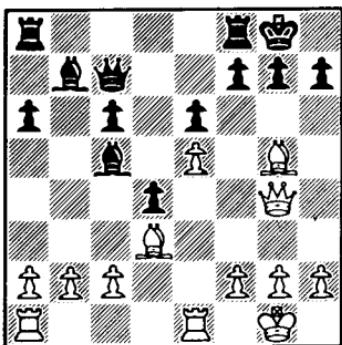
DIAGRAM 199



White to Move

199) How would you conduct the attack?

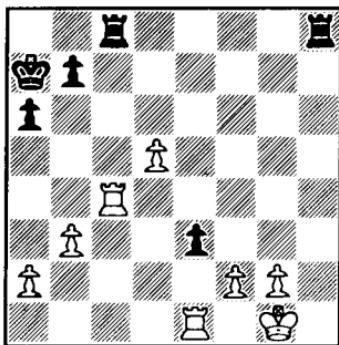
DIAGRAM 200



White to Move

200) Again how would you conduct the attack?

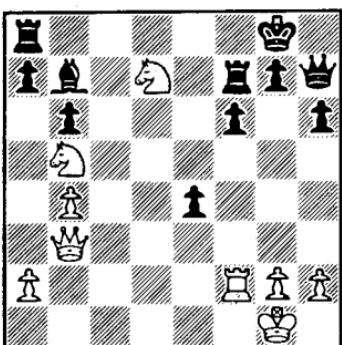
DIAGRAM 202



Black to Move

202) Black is two pawns down. What can you suggest for him?

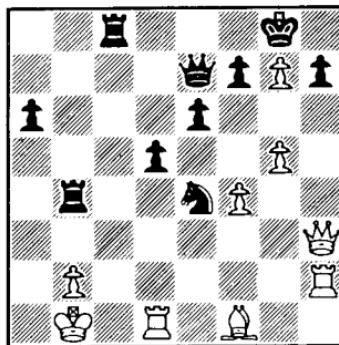
DIAGRAM 201



Black to Move

201) Black attacked the rook — 1 ... e3, to which White replied with the previously prepared 2 ♘xf6, intending, after 2 ... gf 3 ♗xf6+, to capture the queen and establish relative material equality. Is this calculation correct?

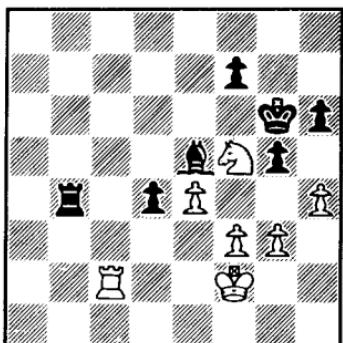
DIAGRAM 203



Black to Move

203) The threat is mate on h7. What is to be done?

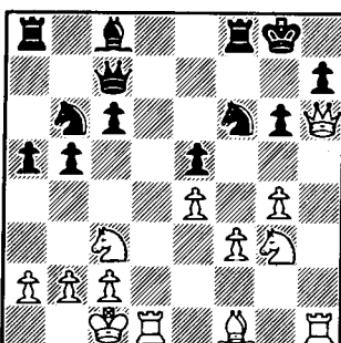
DIAGRAM 204



White to Move

- 204) White gave a check – 1 $\mathbb{Q}e7+$. Where should the king go?

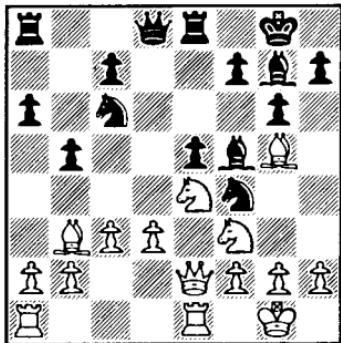
DIAGRAM 206



Black to Move

- 206) Black chased the knight away with 1 ... b4. Your solution?

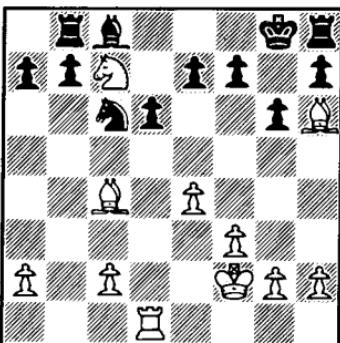
DIAGRAM 205



White to Move

- 205) Each player had calculated the variation 1 $\mathbb{W}e3$ $\mathbb{W}xd3$ 2 $\mathbb{W}c5$ to be in his favour. Who's right?

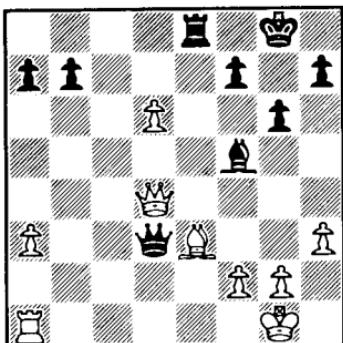
DIAGRAM 207



White to Move

- 207) How would you exploit the cramped position of Black's king, who has 'walled in' his own rook?

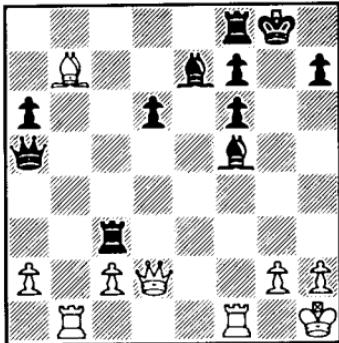
DIAGRAM 208



White to Move

208) Black has offered to exchange the queens – with bishops of opposite colours it is impossible to promote the d-pawn. What suggestions have you got for White?

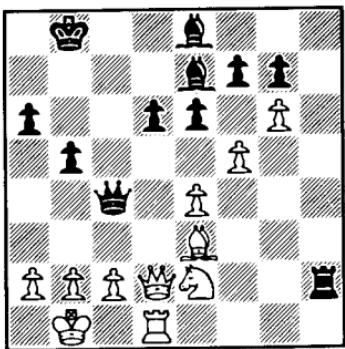
DIAGRAM 210



White to Move

210) Can White capture the bishop at f5, exploiting the overworked queen, and this way win back a piece?

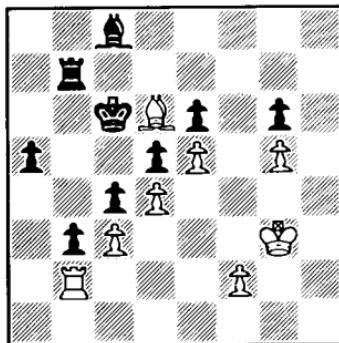
DIAGRAM 209



White to Move

209) The knight is en prise. Should it be defended?

DIAGRAM 211

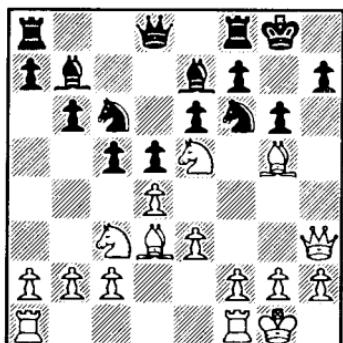


Black to Move

211) Black is a pawn up; but the bishops on the board are of opposite colours. It is easy to note that the bishop at c8 is unable to pierce through the enemy camp. All that White has to do is play $\text{Ad}6\text{-a}3$ and the passed pawns on the W -side will be blockaded dead. But

while the bishop is still at d6, what would you do?

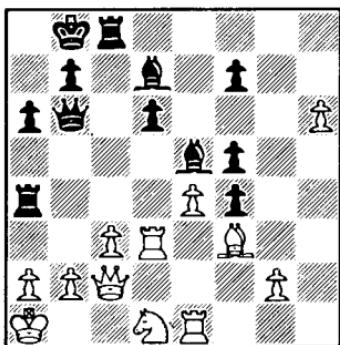
DIAGRAM 212



White to Move

212) Black's ♜-side has been weakened by the move g7-g6. How can it be exploited?

DIAGRAM 213

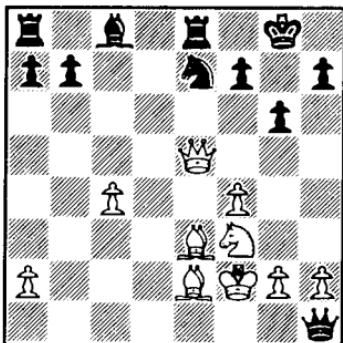


Black to Move

213) After 1 . . . fe 2 ♖xe4 Black temporarily sacrificed material — 2 . . . ♕xe4 3 ♕xe4 ♖f5 and in reply to ♖e2 played 4 . . . ♖h8. Evaluate the consequences of the continu-

ation chosen by White: 5 ♕xe5 ♔xd3 6 ♖h5.

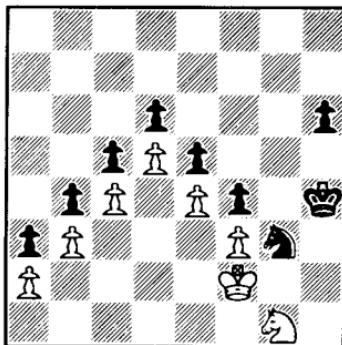
DIAGRAM 214



Black to Move

214) Black has a huge material advantage, but his queen is stuck on the enemy camp and his knight is pinned and immobilised. There is also the threat of ♖e3-d4. What suggestions have you got for Black?

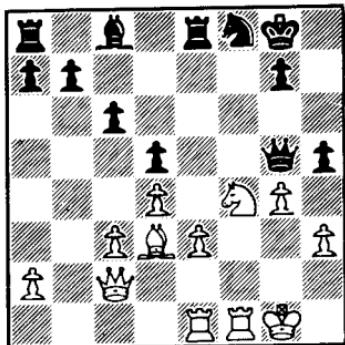
DIAGRAM 215



Black to Move

215) Black has an extra passed pawn, but can he win?

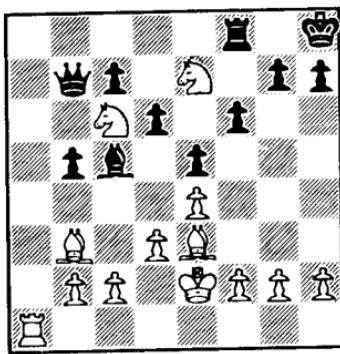
DIAGRAM 216



White to Move

216) On his last move Black played h7-h5, having worked out the following variation: 1 ♔g6 (1 ♔xh5? ♕xg4) 1 ... hg 2 ♔xf8 gh+ 3 ♕h1 ♕g2+ 4 ♕xg2 hg+ 5 ♕xg2 ♕xf8 6 ♕h7x ♕xh7 7 ♕xf8 ♕h3+ 8 ♕xh3 ♕xf8 with an extra pawn in the rook endgame. Check to see how correct this calculation is.

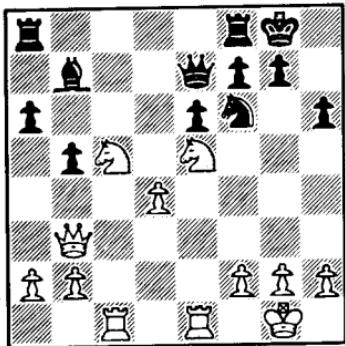
DIAGRAM 218



Black to Move

218) White has three minor pieces for the queen. In most cases it is advantageous for the side that has the queen to exchange the rooks. Black was presented with the opportunity of offering such an exchange with the move 1 ... ♕a8, but he rejected it. Why?

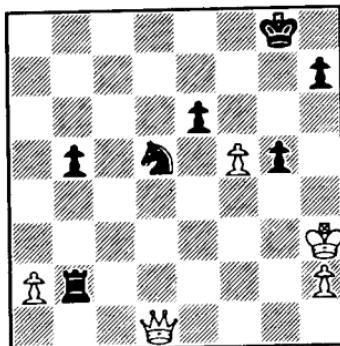
DIAGRAM 217



White to Move

217) Can White bring off a tactical blow?

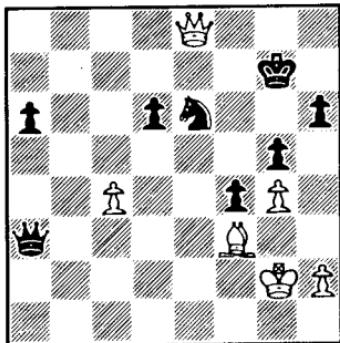
DIAGRAM 219



Black to Move

219) Black has only a rook and a knight for the queen. What would you advise him to do?

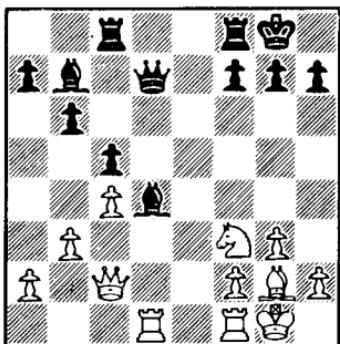
DIAGRAM 220



Black to Move

220) In order to obtain a material advantage Black has decided to exchange the c- and d-pawns and deprive the enemy bishop of the strong point d5. He went on to play 1 . . . ♜a2+, reckoning on the variation 2 ♜h3 ♜xc4 3 ♜e7+ ♜g6 4 ♜xd6 ♜f6 with a technically won position. Check the correctness of this calculation.

DIAGRAM 221

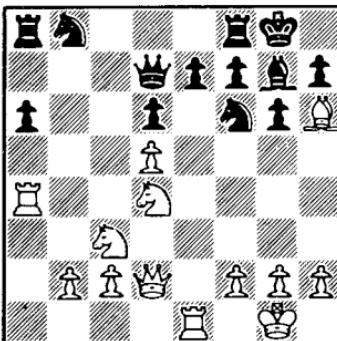


White to Move

221) White played 1 ♜xd4. Not wanting to part with the pawn (1

. . . cd 2 ♜xb7 ♜xb7 3 ♜xd4), Black went for the sharp variation 1 . . . ♜g2 2 ♜f5 ♜b7 3 ♜d6 ♜f3 4 ♜d3 ♜a8 5 ♜xc8 ♜xf1 6 ♜e7+ ♜h8. Assess the resulting position.

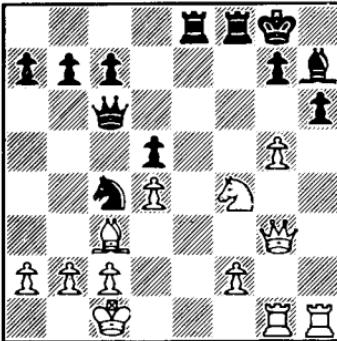
DIAGRAM 222



Black to Move

222) The knight at c3 is tied to defending the rook. Can Black exploit this? In whose favour will the game go in case of 1 . . . ♜xd5?

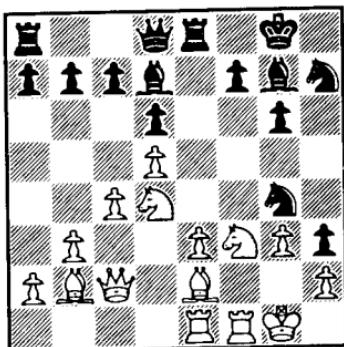
DIAGRAM 223



Black to Move

223) White's last move was g4-g5, threatening to open up the lines. What advice would you give Black?

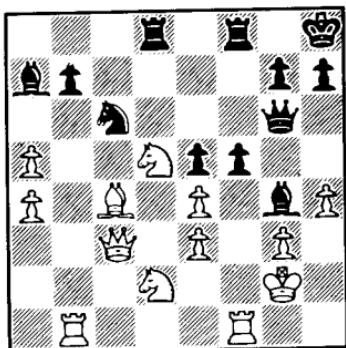
DIAGRAM 224



White to Move

224) White had counted on obtaining this position. Leaving the e-pawn en prise, he worked out the following attractive variation: 1 $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 2 $\mathbb{R}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ (if 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf7$, then 3 $\mathbb{W}xg6+$ with an easy win) 3 $\mathbb{R}xg7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}df5++$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ mate. Without moving the pieces, check if this calculation is correct.

DIAGRAM 225

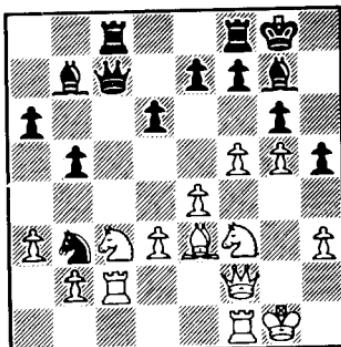


Black to Move

225) Black played 1 ... f4 in an attempt to open up the position of

the enemy king. Weigh up the consequences of the combination 2 ef ef 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{R}xd2$ 4 $\mathbb{W}xd2$ $\mathbb{W}xe4+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{W}xc4$.

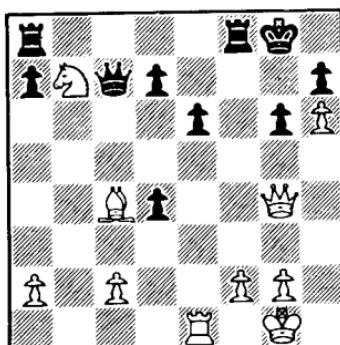
DIAGRAM 226



Black to Move

226) Without any fears about weakening his \mathbb{Q} -side, Black played 1 ... gf and in reply to 2 $\mathbb{Q}h4$ – 2 ... fe, destroying the pawn centre. There followed 3 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{W}d7$ (3 ... $\mathbb{W}xc2?$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$ and 5 $\mathbb{W}xh5$ mate). How should White continue the attack?

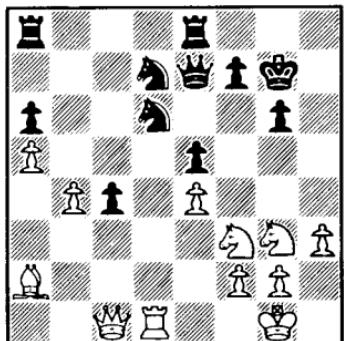
DIAGRAM 227



White to Move

227) Both White's minor pieces are en prise. What can he do?

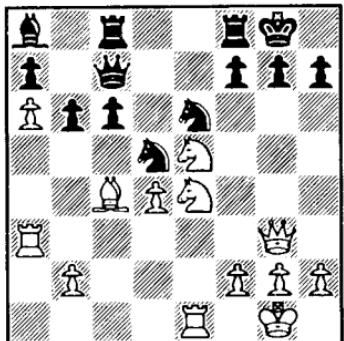
DIAGRAM 228



White to Move

228) How can the pressure of the rook on the d-file be exploited?

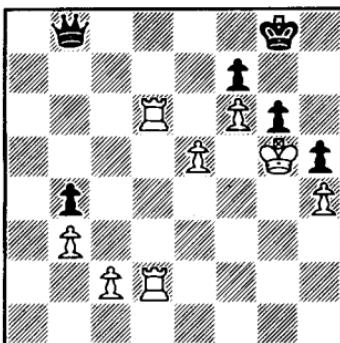
DIAGRAM 229



White to Move

229) White obviously has the advantage on the ♜-side. Your solution?

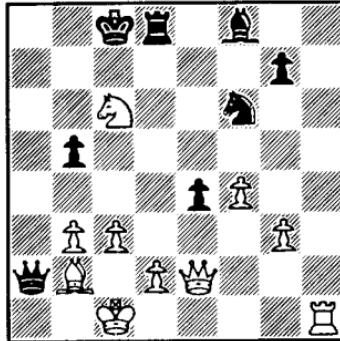
DIAGRAM 230



Black to Move

230) White is threatening ♘d6-d8+, as well as ♗g5-h6. What's your advice for Black?

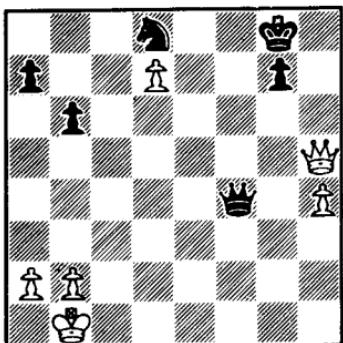
DIAGRAM 231



Black to Move

231) Black is two pawns down, the rook and the b-pawn are en prise. What is to be done?

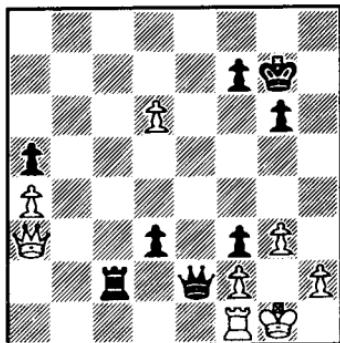
DIAGRAM 232



White to Move

232) Black is a knight up, and the whole question is whether the passed d-pawn is dangerous. How should the game end?

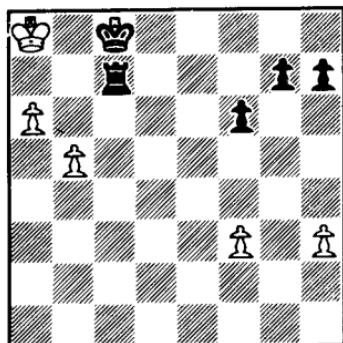
DIAGRAM 234



White to Move

234) White played 1 d7. Assess the variation 1 ... $\mathbb{W}xf1+$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xf1$ d2.

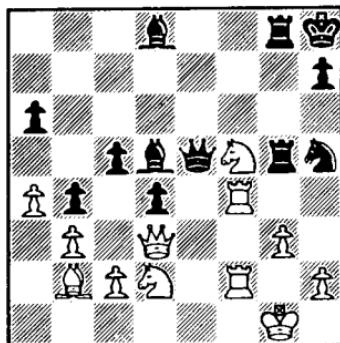
DIAGRAM 233



Black to Move

233) White is threatening to promote the b-pawn to a queen. How can this threat be countered?

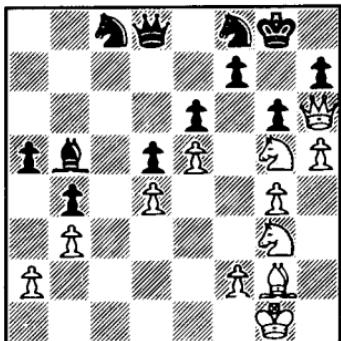
DIAGRAM 235



White to Move

235) Evaluate the consequences of 1 $\mathbb{R}xd4$.

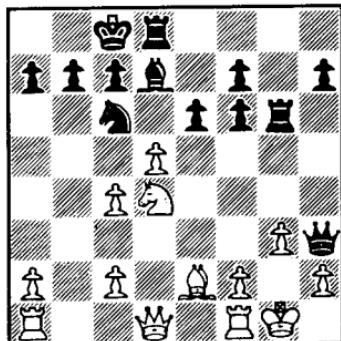
DIAGRAM 236



White to Move

236) White is attacking on the ♜-side, but so far he has not created any direct threats. Try to destroy Black's pawn stronghold.

DIAGRAM 237

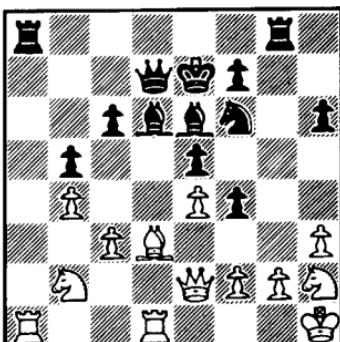


White to Move

237) On his last move Black left the knight en prise, having played

♝g8-g6. Examine the possibility of accepting the sacrifice, when you've weighed up two of Black's replies (after 1 dc): 1 . . . ♘h6 and 1 . . . ♖xc6.

DIAGRAM 238



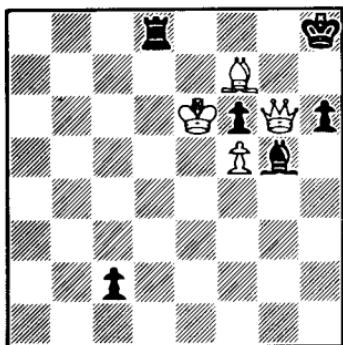
Black to Move

238) Black wrecked the pawn guard of his opponent's king by means of 1 . . . ♕xh3 2 gh ♖xh3 and in reply to 3 ♖f3 played 3 . . . ♔g4. Naturally, White could not capture the queen because of mate. The game went on 4 ♖g2 f3 5 ♖g3.

How can Black continue the offensive? The knight sacrifice leaps to mind — 5 . . . ♔xf2+ 6 ♖xf2 ♘g2, threatening mate and at the same time attacking the queen.

Analyze the consequences of White's only reply to 7 ♘a7+. How should the game finish?

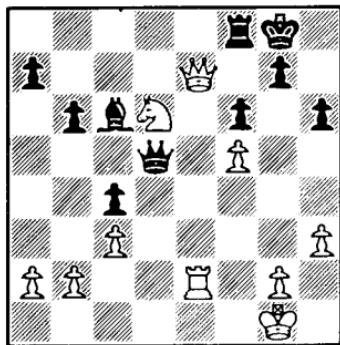
DIAGRAM 239



White to Move

- 239) The c-pawn is a step away from promotion. What should White do?

DIAGRAM 240

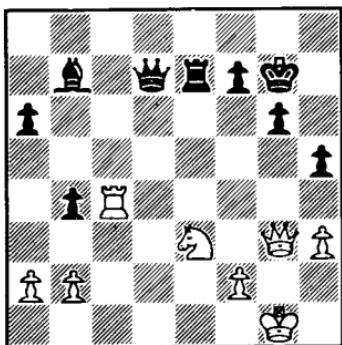


White to Move

- 240) What plan would you have chosen?

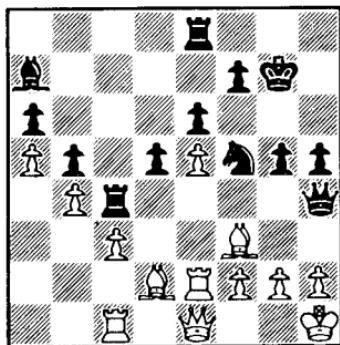
HOW WOULD YOU HAVE PLAYED?

DIAGRAM 241



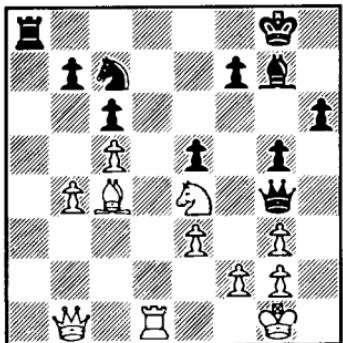
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 242



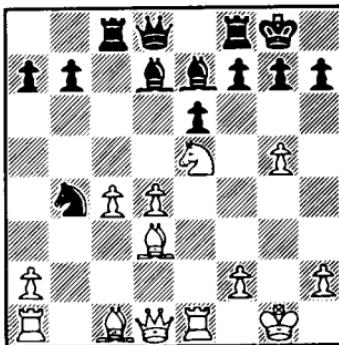
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 243



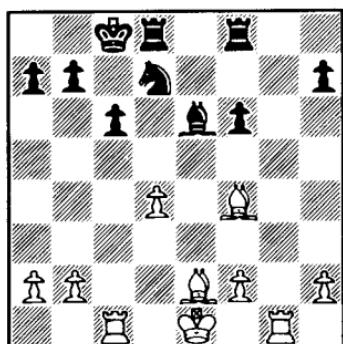
White to Move

DIAGRAM 246



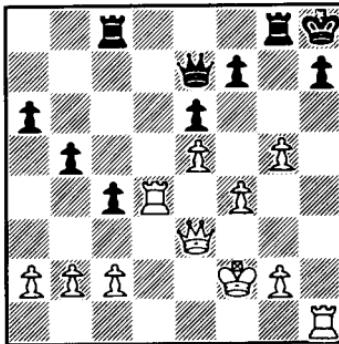
White to Move

DIAGRAM 244



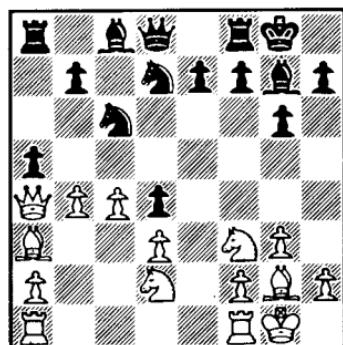
White to Move

DIAGRAM 247



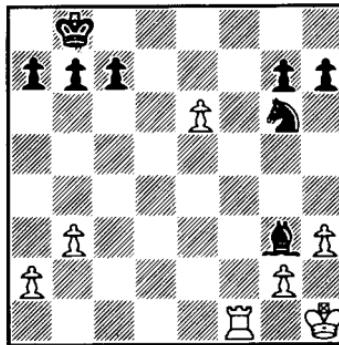
White to Move

DIAGRAM 245



Black to Move

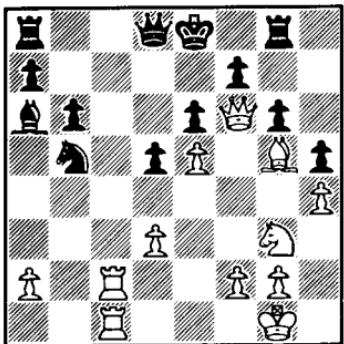
DIAGRAM 248



White to Move

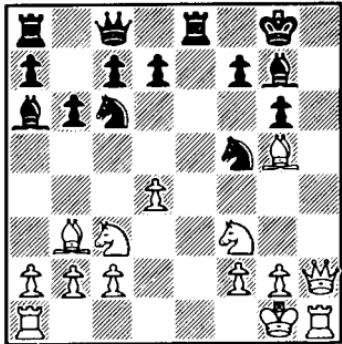
112 A Tactics Exam

DIAGRAM 249



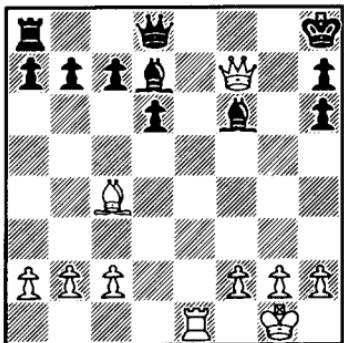
White to Move

DIAGRAM 252



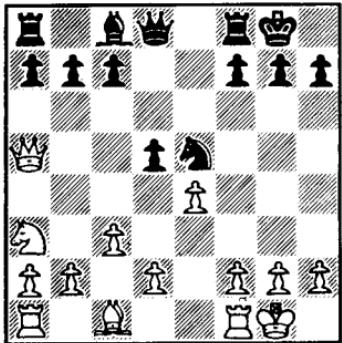
White to Move

DIAGRAM 250



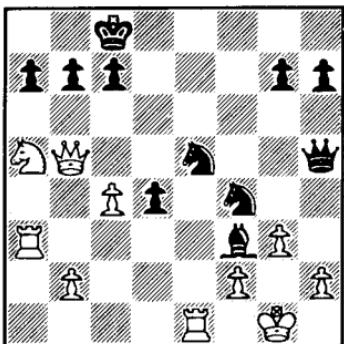
White to Move

DIAGRAM 253



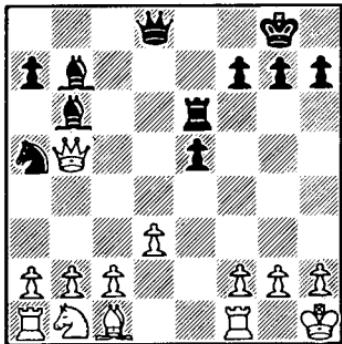
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 251



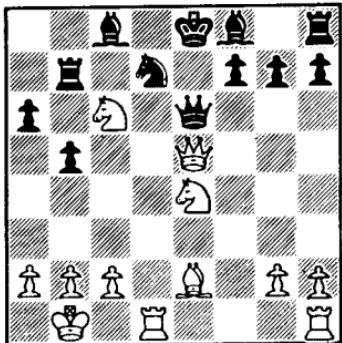
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 254



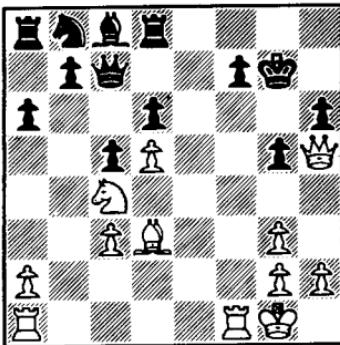
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 255



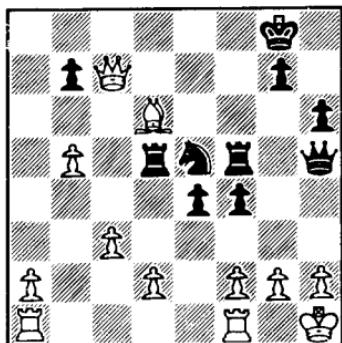
White to Move

DIAGRAM 258



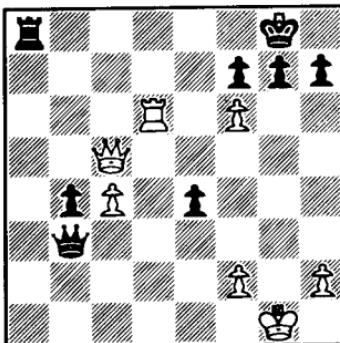
White to Move

DIAGRAM 256



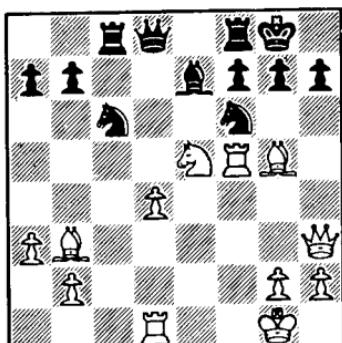
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 259



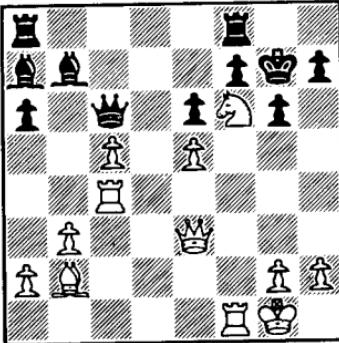
White to Move

DIAGRAM 257



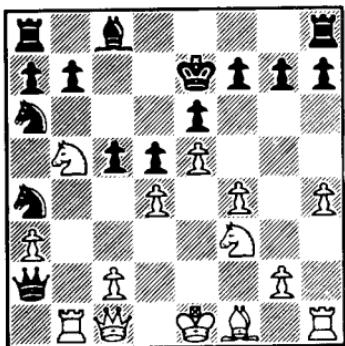
White to Move

DIAGRAM 260



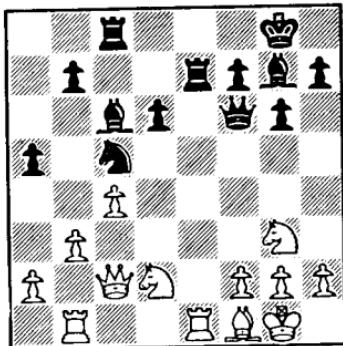
White to Move

DIAGRAM 261



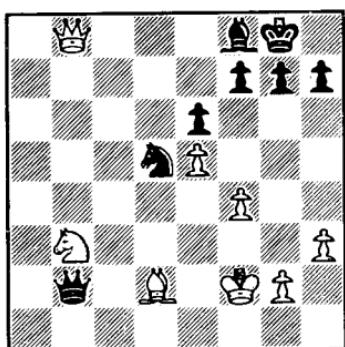
White to Move

DIAGRAM 264



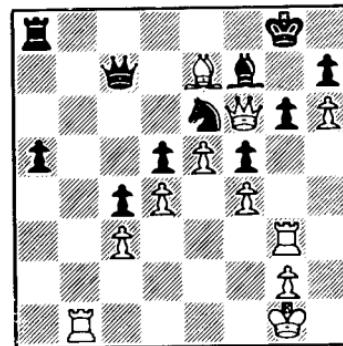
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 262



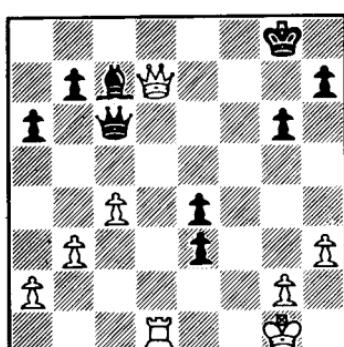
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 265



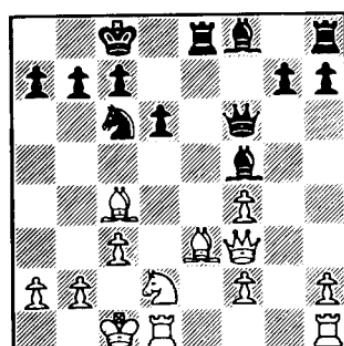
White to Move

DIAGRAM 263



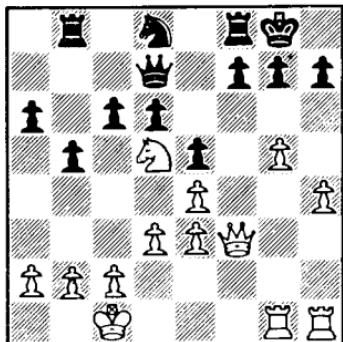
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 266



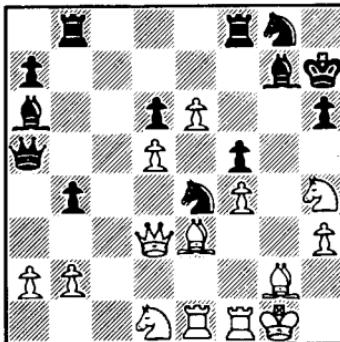
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 267



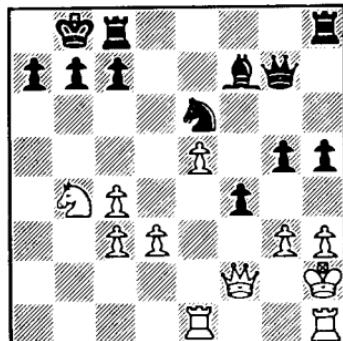
White to Move

DIAGRAM 270



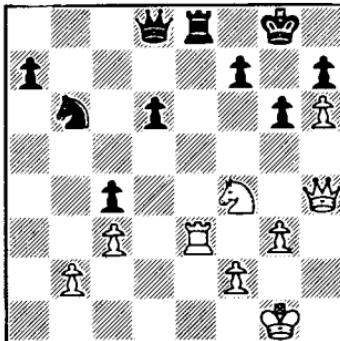
White to Move

DIAGRAM 268



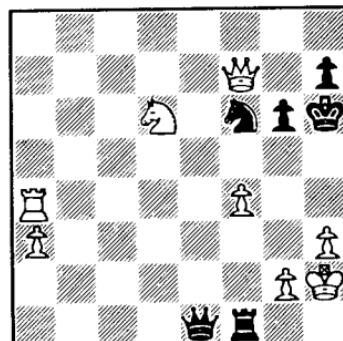
White to Move

DIAGRAM 271



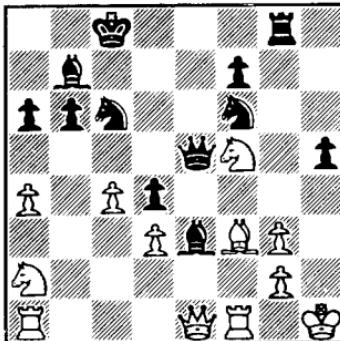
White to Move

DIAGRAM 269



White to Move

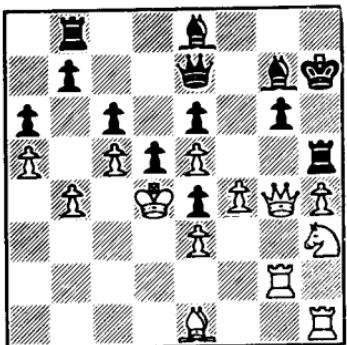
DIAGRAM 272



Black to Move

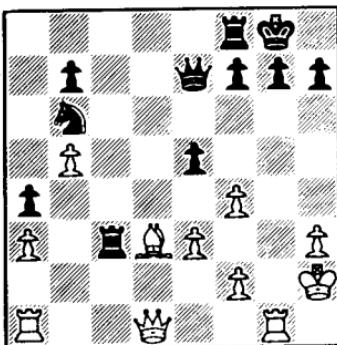
116 A Tactics Exam

DIAGRAM 273



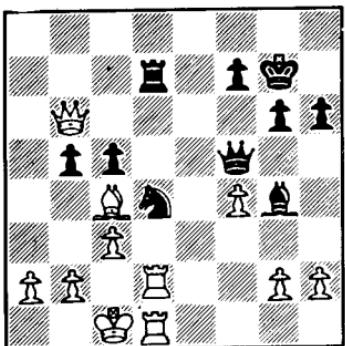
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 276



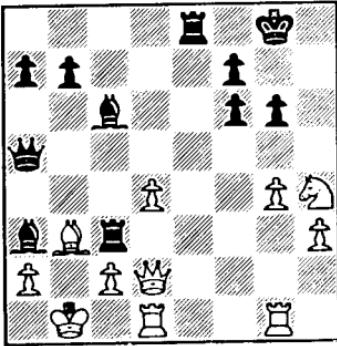
White to Move

DIAGRAM 274



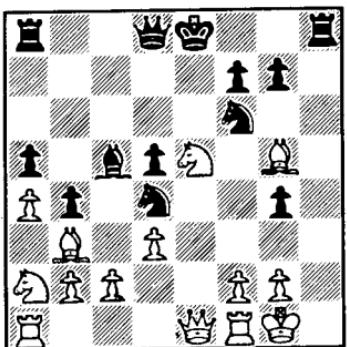
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 277



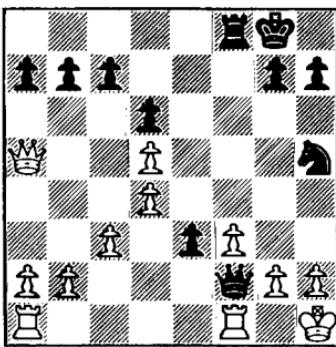
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 275



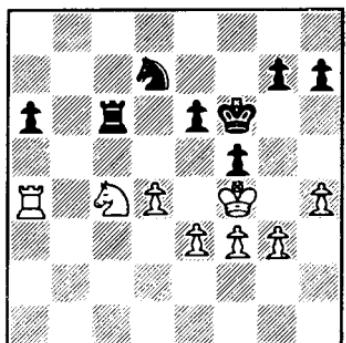
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 278



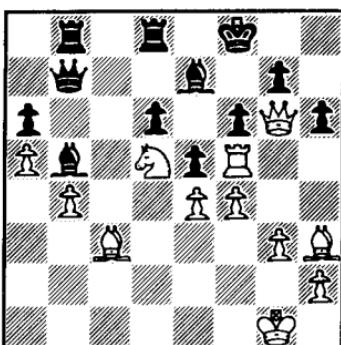
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 279



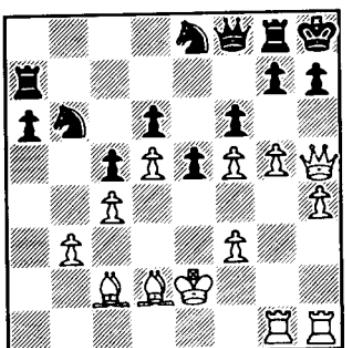
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 282



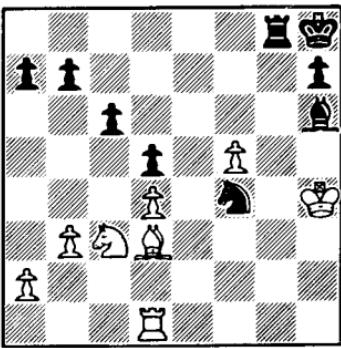
White to Move

DIAGRAM 280



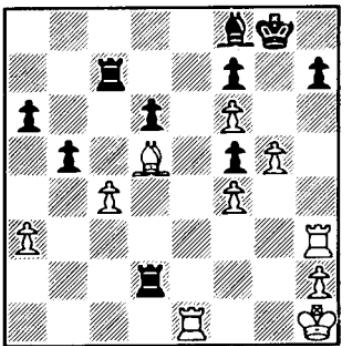
White to Move

DIAGRAM 283



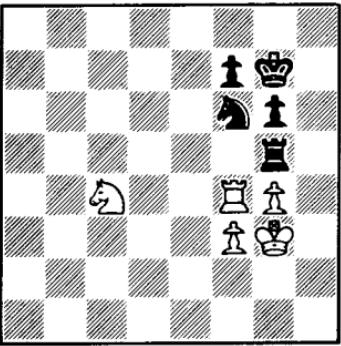
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 281



White to Move

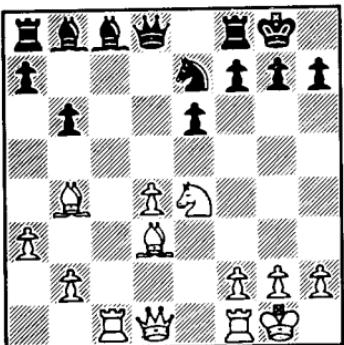
DIAGRAM 284



Black to Move

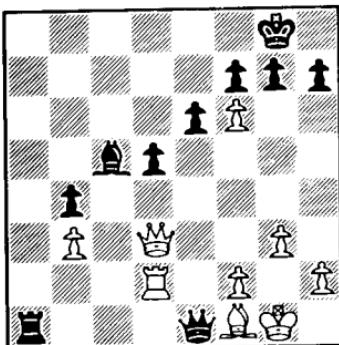
118 A Tactics Exam

DIAGRAM 285



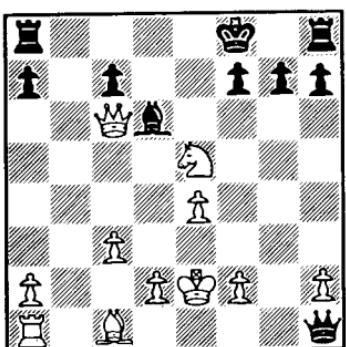
White to Move

DIAGRAM 288



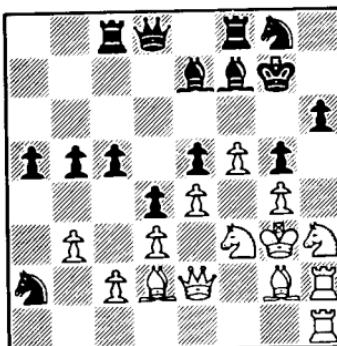
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 286



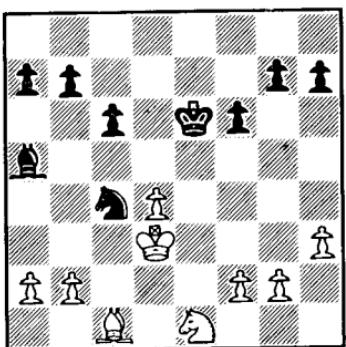
White to Move

DIAGRAM 289



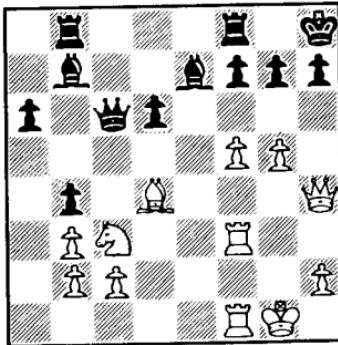
White to Move

DIAGRAM 287



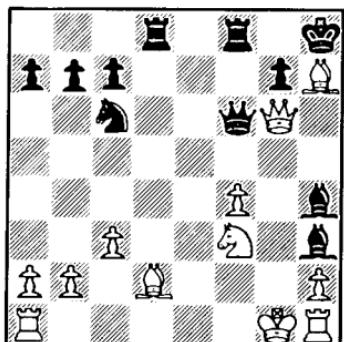
White to Move

DIAGRAM 290



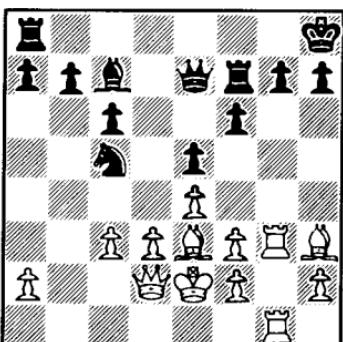
White to Move

DIAGRAM 291



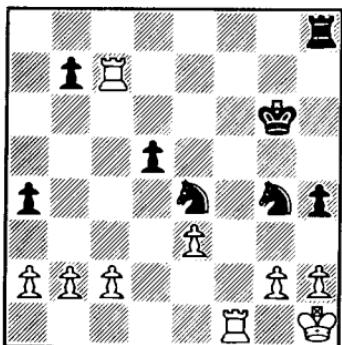
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 294



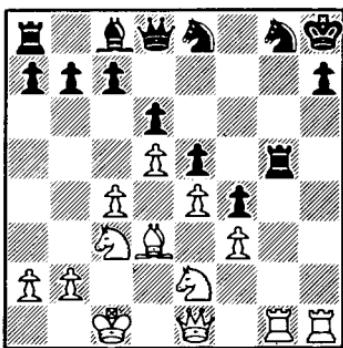
White to Move

DIAGRAM 292



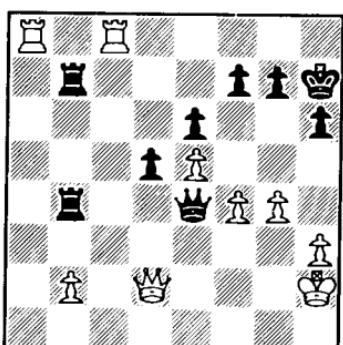
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 295



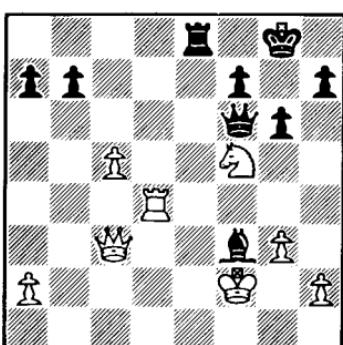
White to Move

DIAGRAM 293



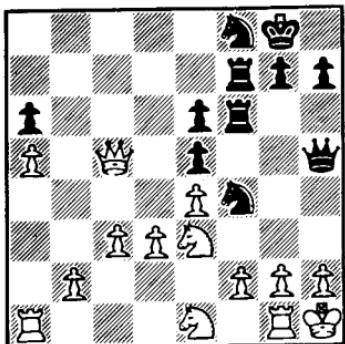
White to Move

DIAGRAM 296



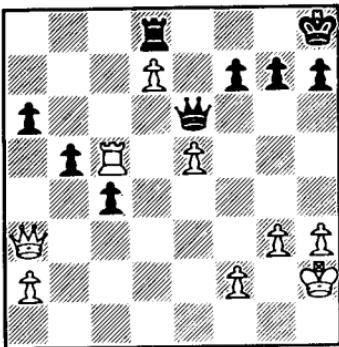
White to Move

DIAGRAM 297



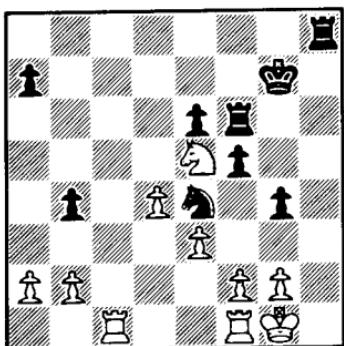
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 300



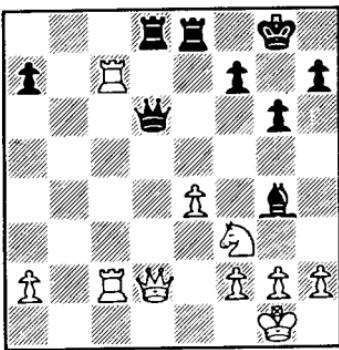
White to Move

DIAGRAM 298



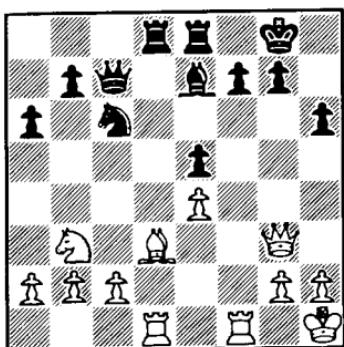
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 301



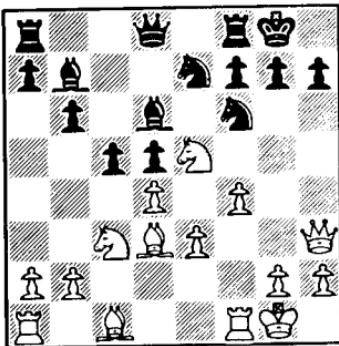
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 299



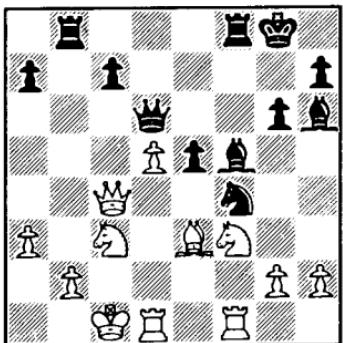
White to Move

DIAGRAM 302



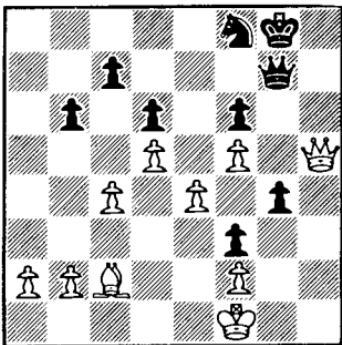
White to Move

DIAGRAM 303



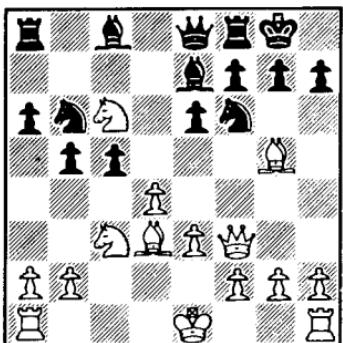
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 306



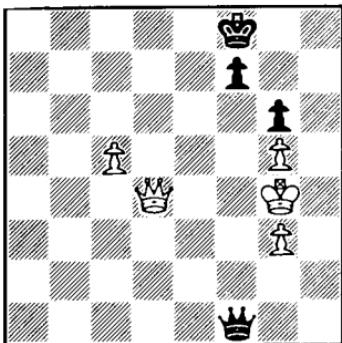
White to Move

DIAGRAM 304



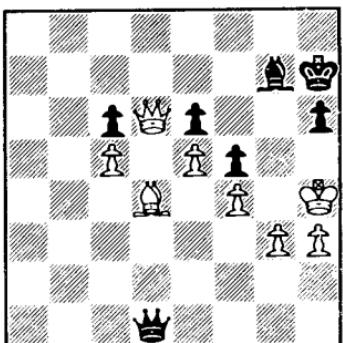
White to Move

DIAGRAM 307



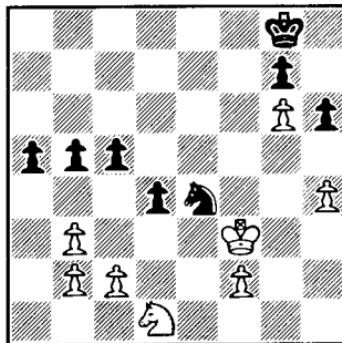
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 305



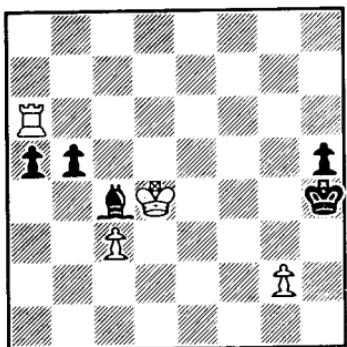
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 308



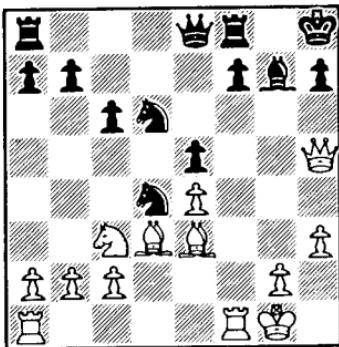
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 309



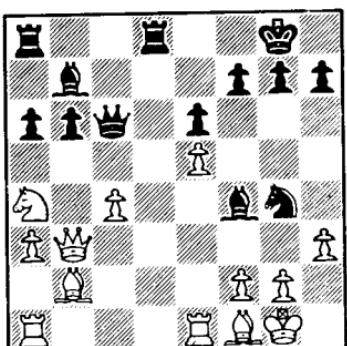
White to Move

DIAGRAM 312



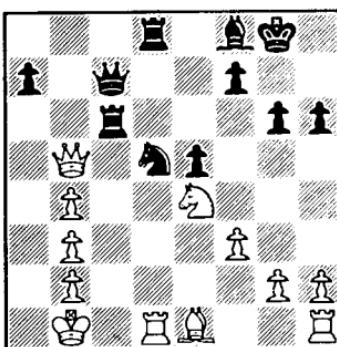
White to Move

DIAGRAM 310



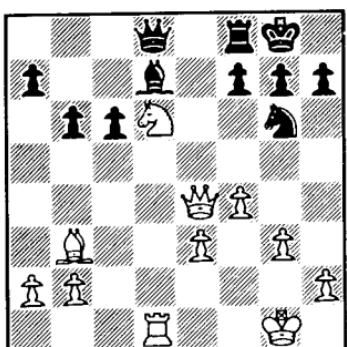
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 313



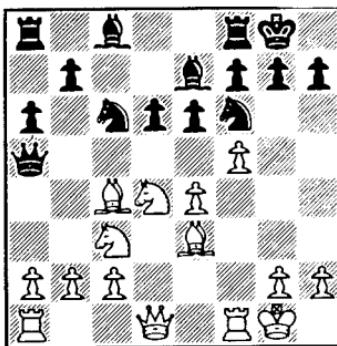
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 311



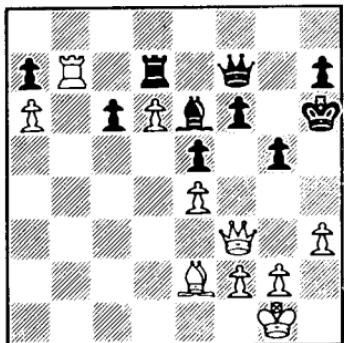
White to Move

DIAGRAM 314



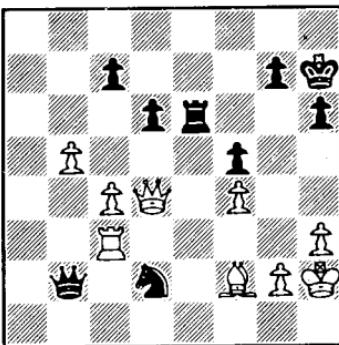
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 315



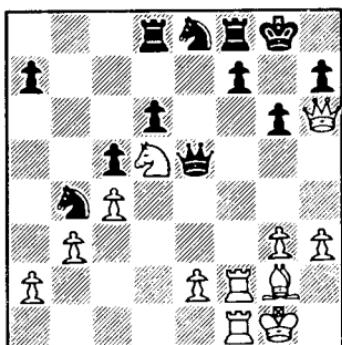
White to Move

DIAGRAM 318



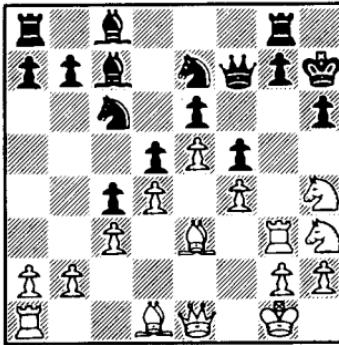
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 316



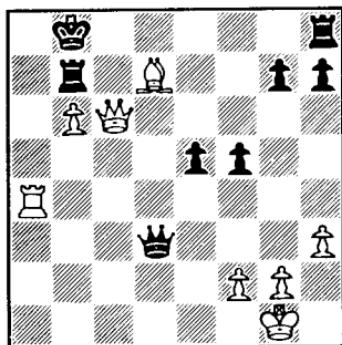
White to Move

DIAGRAM 319



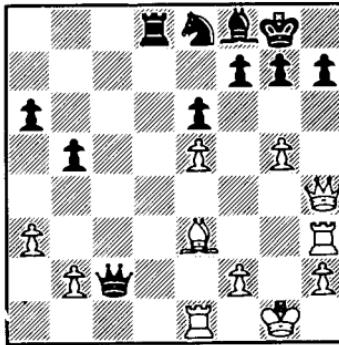
White to Move

DIAGRAM 317



White to Move

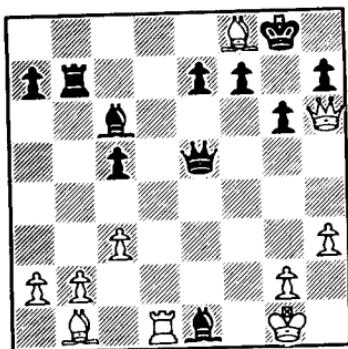
DIAGRAM 320



White to Move

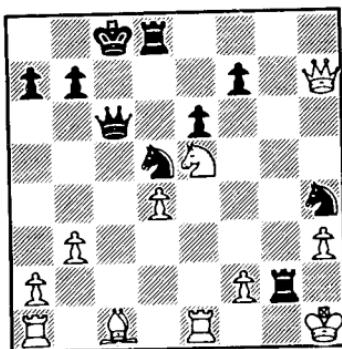
124 A Tactics Exam

DIAGRAM 321



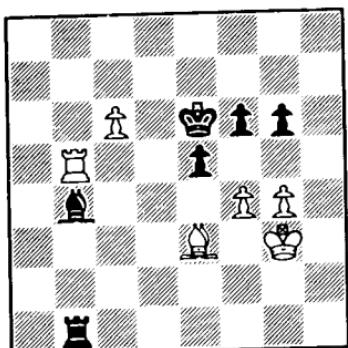
White to Move

DIAGRAM 323



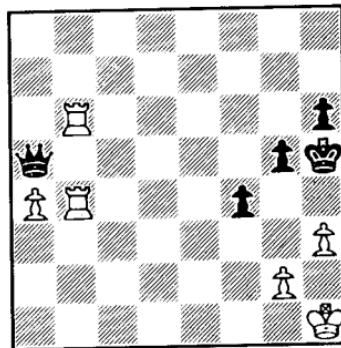
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 322



White to Move

DIAGRAM 324



White to Move

12 Do You Know the Classics?

'But what, strictly speaking, do you consider to be chess classics?', the reader is perfectly entitled to ask. 'Outstanding games by outstanding chess-players? Just the games themselves, or their fragments as well i.e. combinations? And can one call the works of art created by modern masters classics, or is this term applicable only to chess-players of the past? What about if you have a brilliant combination in a minor competition, or, let's say, in an easy game? If it has been created by little-known or totally unknown chess-players, is it a classic or not?'

There are no precise criteria for classics in chess. But all the same we have tried to answer these difficult questions. These answers are contained in the selection of the examples.* Alongside combinations by the leading lights you will see equally brilliant examples of creativity from ordinary masters. The scale of the competition and the position in the 'table of chess

ranks' did not have any decisive significance with regard to the selection of 'candidates'. Naturally, the games of World Champions and famous Grandmasters attract more attention to themselves – every one of their tactical operations is in the public eye. But if alongside the works of champions you find a combination produced by a none too famous chess-player, you can be sure that it deserves to be there! Have a look at diagrams 369 and 362. An unusually beautiful and unexpected operation was realized in the endgame by a master whose name means little to most chess devotees. But there is no doubt about it: the endgame in the Ortua-Sanz† duel is an original chess classic. Just as the admirable finish of the Nenarokov-Grigoriev encounter, which wanders from text-book to text-book, is also a chess classic.

†The position set is from the 'original' rendering in the game Tulkowski-Wojciechowski, Poznan 1931. The idea gained fame from a parallel game Ortua-Sanz, Madrid 1933 resulting in minor differences of the king-side pawns but with an identical finish.

* One should bear in mind here that many classic combinations have been used earlier to illustrate various themes, as well as in the exercises.

From the aesthetic point of view it does not matter whether the game was played in a match for the chess-crown or in a Blitz Tournament. Paul Morphy produced one of his most famous combinations in a box at the Paris Opera (No. 333). And the young Edward Lasker (later a famous master) was totally unable to foresee that his five-minute games with a queen sacrifice on h7 (No. 352) would withstand being published thousands of times.

But the reader will no doubt point out that there is one limitation to the concept of a classic. As in any art-form, in chess 'great things are best seen from afar'. And we have the right to call a classic only that which has withstood the test of time. Many of our contemporaries' games will become classics. But at the moment they are just 'candidates to the beautiful heritage'.

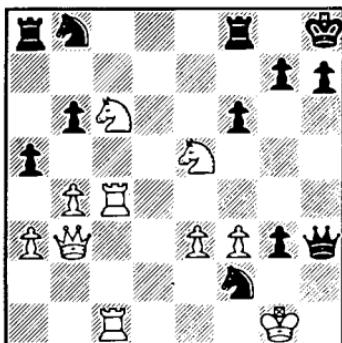
We have placed a thirty-year limit for these 'candidates' — the last examples in this section date back to 1950. Anything that has been created on the chessboard since will be led into the chess hall of fame by the next generation . . .

But all things being equal in this world, the popularity enjoyed by a chess combination does not always correspond to its real aesthetic value. There is a good deal of unjustly forgotten combinations, and the aesthetic criteria themselves are very vague.

Unlike the other sections, in this one we name the opponents and the competition in which the game was played at the very beginning of the answer. Every one of the 54 examples is an exercise in 'recognizing familiar features'. If you do not know the position, try to solve it by finding the strongest continuation.

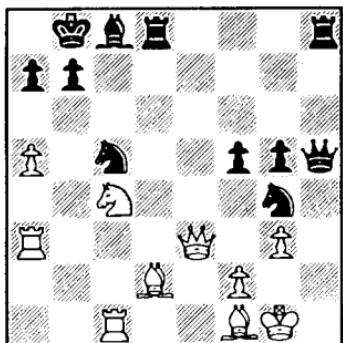
THE CLASSICS

DIAGRAM 325



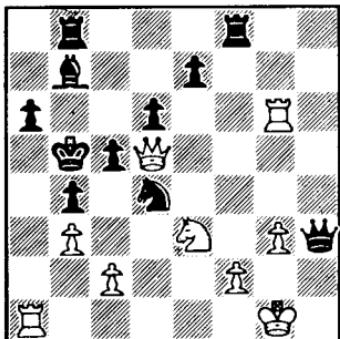
White to Move

DIAGRAM 326



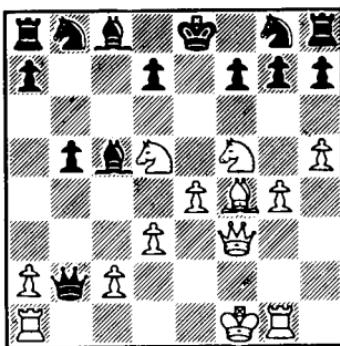
White to Move

DIAGRAM 327



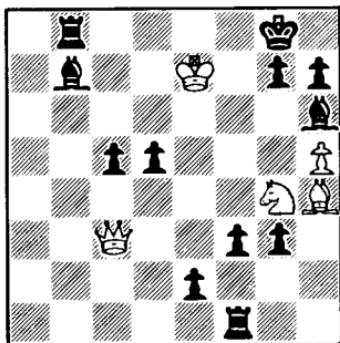
White to Move

DIAGRAM 330



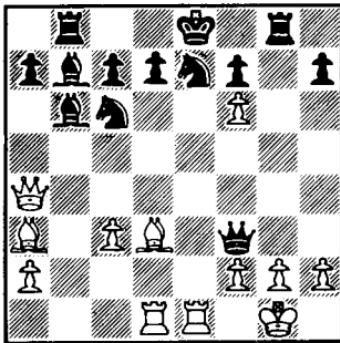
White to Move

DIAGRAM 328



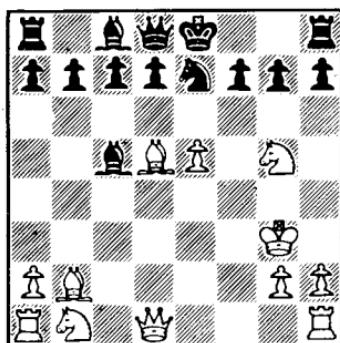
White to Move

DIAGRAM 331



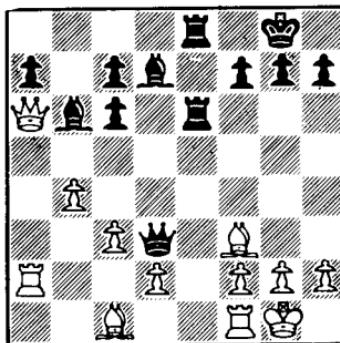
White to Move

DIAGRAM 329



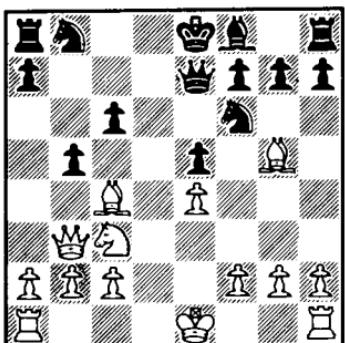
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 332



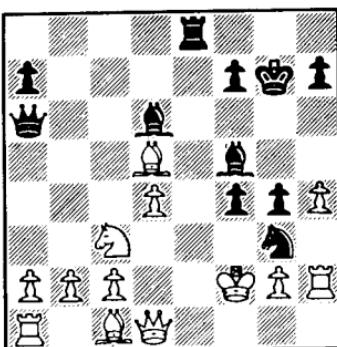
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 333



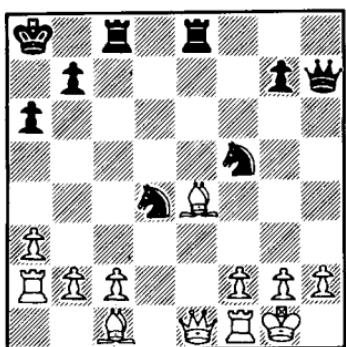
White to Move

DIAGRAM 336



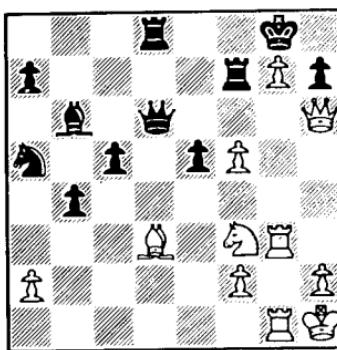
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 334



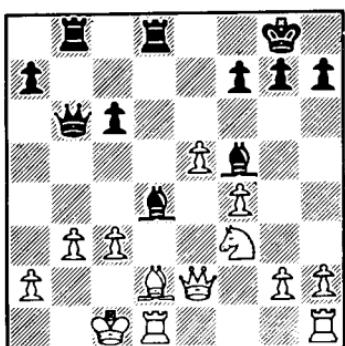
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 337



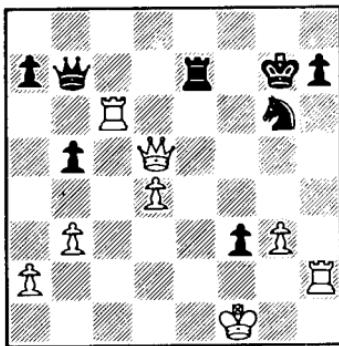
White to Move

DIAGRAM 335



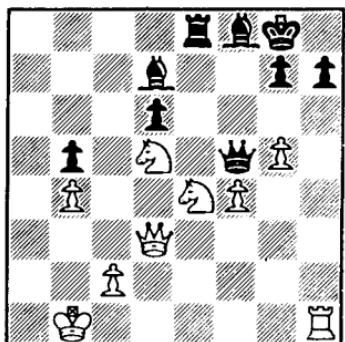
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 338



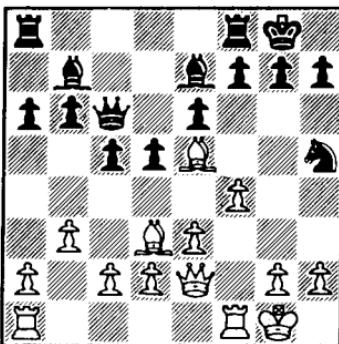
White to Move

DIAGRAM 339



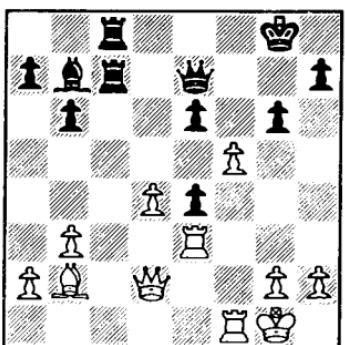
White to Move

DIAGRAM 342



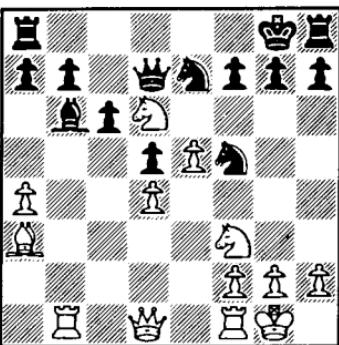
White to Move

DIAGRAM 340



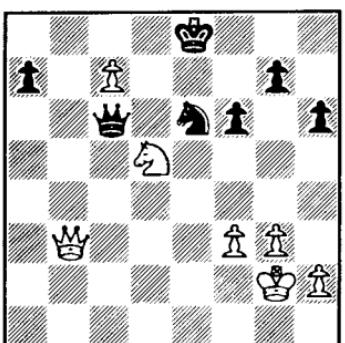
White to Move

DIAGRAM 343



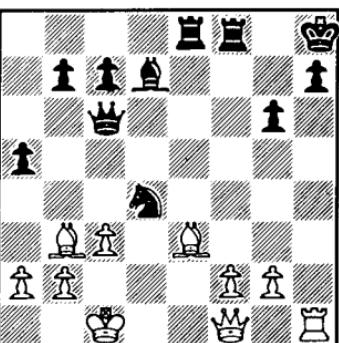
White to Move

DIAGRAM 341



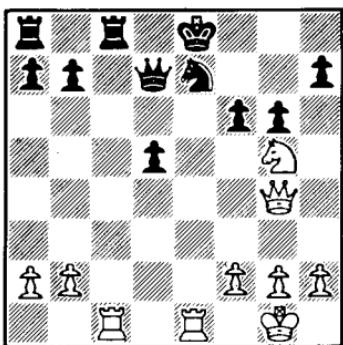
White to Move

DIAGRAM 344



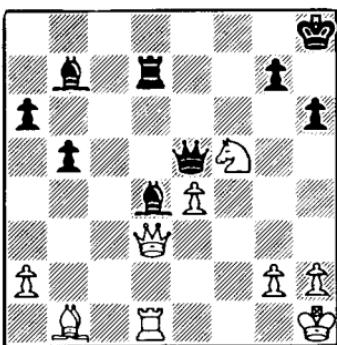
White to Move

DIAGRAM 345



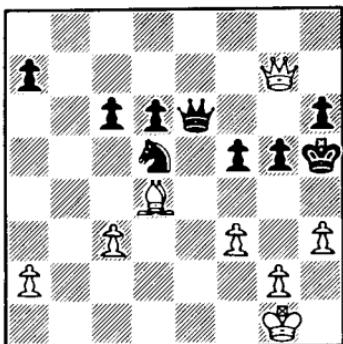
White to Move

DIAGRAM 348



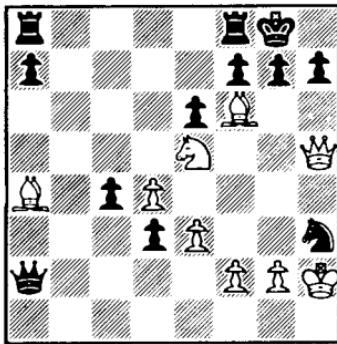
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 346



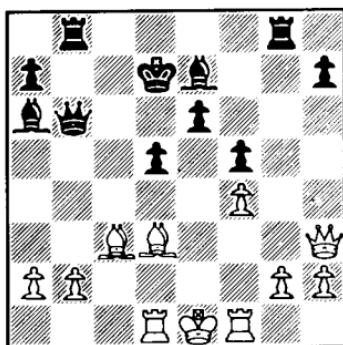
White to Move

DIAGRAM 349



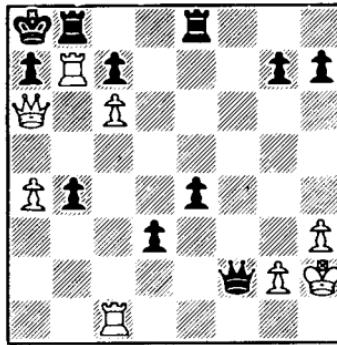
White to Move

DIAGRAM 347



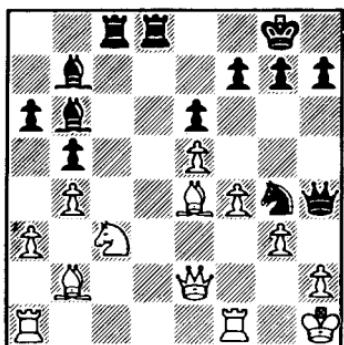
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 350



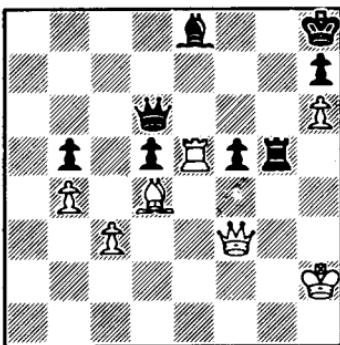
White to Move

DIAGRAM 351



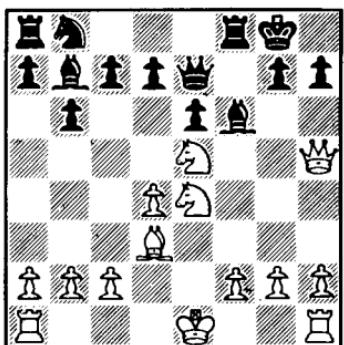
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 354



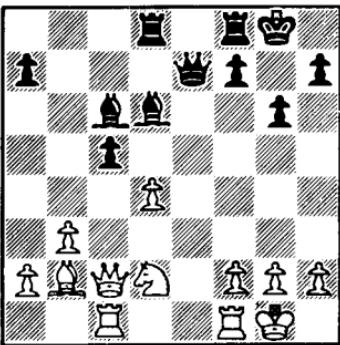
White to Move

DIAGRAM 352



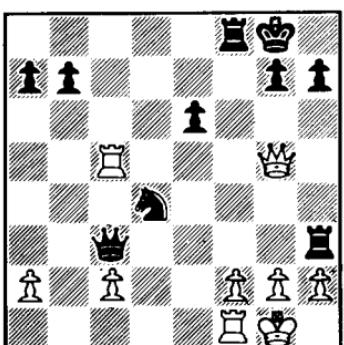
White to Move

DIAGRAM 355



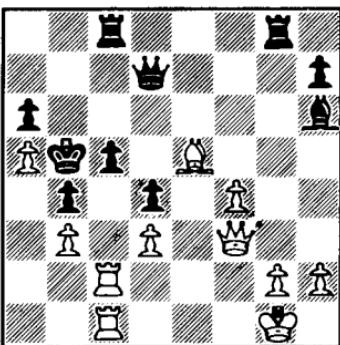
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 353



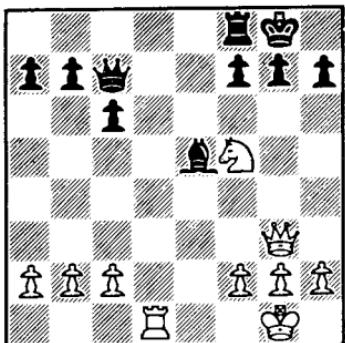
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 356



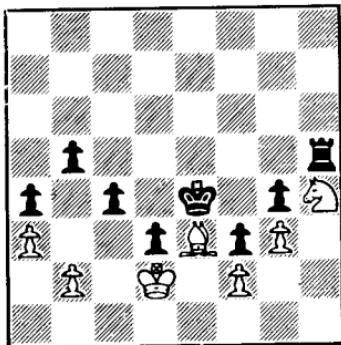
White to Move

DIAGRAM 357



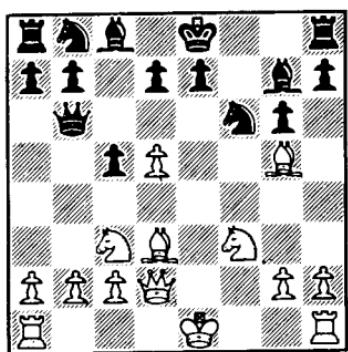
White to Move

DIAGRAM 360



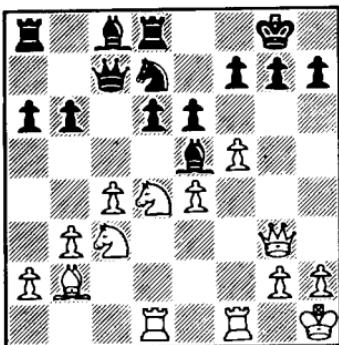
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 358



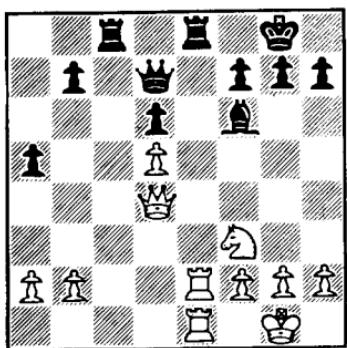
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 361



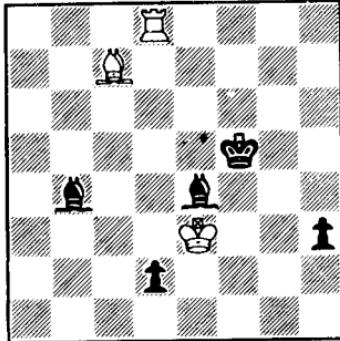
White to Move

DIAGRAM 359



White to Move

DIAGRAM 362



Black to Move

DIAGRAM 363

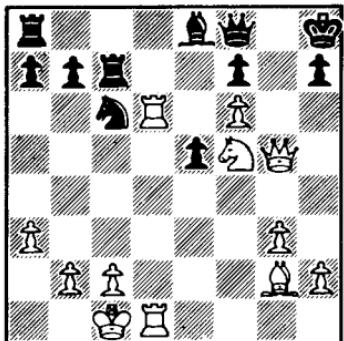


DIAGRAM 366

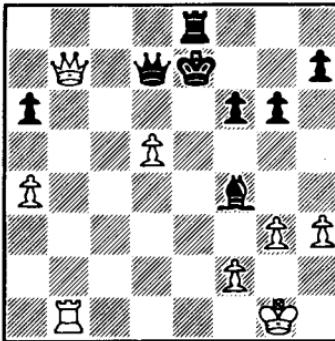


DIAGRAM 364

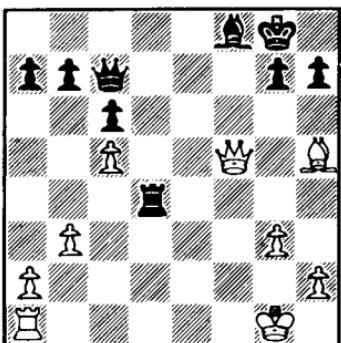


DIAGRAM 367

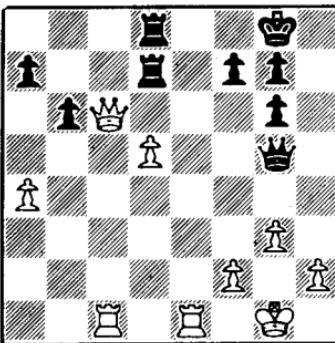


DIAGRAM 365

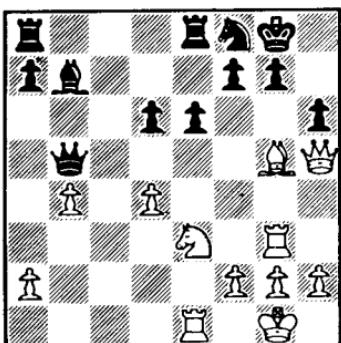
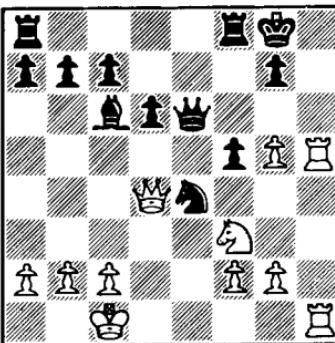


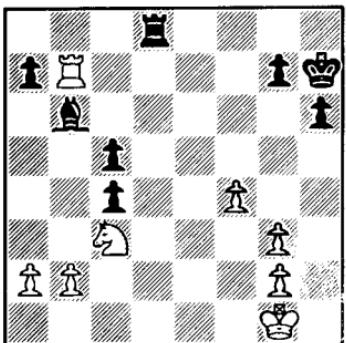
DIAGRAM 368



White to Move

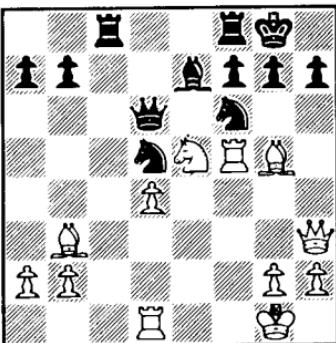
White to Move

DIAGRAM 369



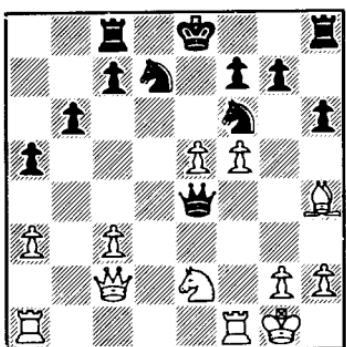
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 372



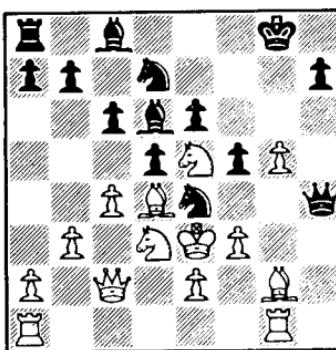
White to Move

DIAGRAM 370



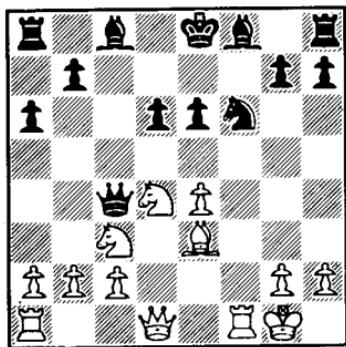
White to Move

DIAGRAM 373



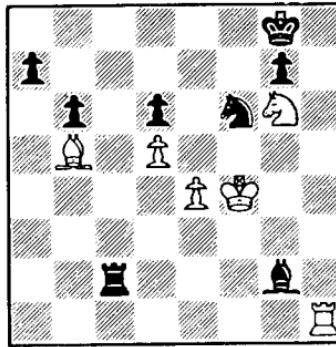
Black to Move

DIAGRAM 371



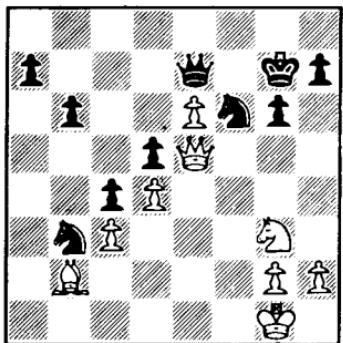
White to Move

DIAGRAM 374



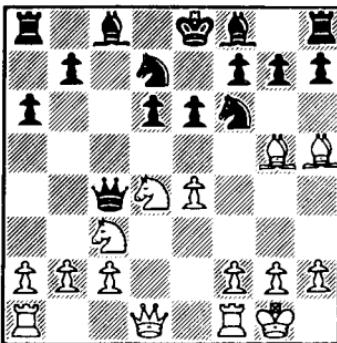
White to Move

DIAGRAM 375



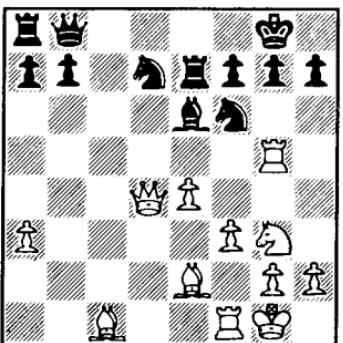
White to Move

DIAGRAM 377



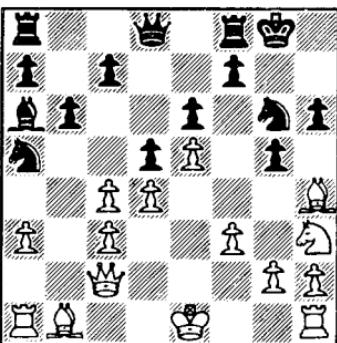
White to Move

DIAGRAM 376



White to Move

DIAGRAM 378



White to Move

Solutions to Exercises

1) 1 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4?$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (2 . . . $c6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xc6+$) 3 $\mathbb{Q}d8+!$ (decoy) 3 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ mate. (Zukertort-Anderssen, Breslau, 1865)

2) 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}d4?$ is a blunder that leads to a lost game from an equal position. After 2 $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ Black resigned (2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xd7+$ and 4 bc). (Stahlberg-Lundin, Stockholm, 1937)

3) By decoying the queen away from the defence of the eighth rank — 2 $\mathbb{Q}a7!$, White wins. (In the game Stephenson-Penrose, British Championship, 1968, White failed to notice this possibility and replied 2 $\mathbb{Q}c2$.)

4) The continuation 1 $\mathbb{Q}xg7?$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ loses after the decoying counter sacrifice 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}g2+!$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ $\mathbb{Q}e1+$ mating. (Uhlmann-Dely, Budapest, 1962)

5) 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}e1!$ (decoying both the rook — 2 $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ mate, and the queen — 2 $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ mate) 2 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}h1+!$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ mate. (Belenky-Pirogov, Moscow, 1975)

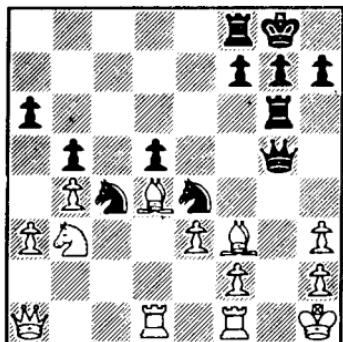
6) Did White remember the famous Adams-Torre game (No. 359), or did he find the decoying manoeuvre without any assistance from the heritage of the classics? We are not prepared to judge on this, but the move 2 $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ was played and Black resigned (Minić-Honfi, Yugoslavia-Hungary, 1966)

7) No. In the game Szell-Orso (Budapest, 1978) there followed 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xe3+!$ and White was forced to resign. The bishop cannot be captured by the queen, because both rooks will remain defenceless, and in reply to 2 fe comes mate in two moves — 2 $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ and 3 . . . $\mathbb{Q}d2$ mate.

8) Black can exchange the rook — 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xe1+$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xe1$, and then . . . divert the queen from defending e1 by means of 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ White cannot capture on f4 because of mate, and if 3 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ — he loses the queen. (Paly-Merkolov, Moscow, 1969)

9) The bishop does not have to withdraw. There followed 3 . . . $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ 4

gh? (Of course, he would have had to part with material after 4 g3).

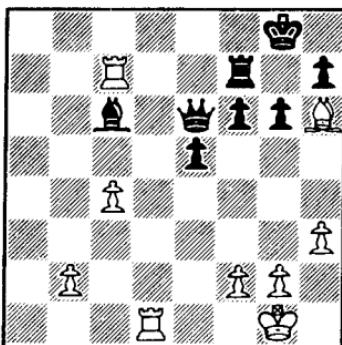


4 . . . ♕g1+! 5 ♘xg1 ♖xf2 mate.
(Balanel-Pytłakowski, Mariánské-Lazne, 1952)

10) No. Exploiting the lack of defence of the seventh rank, Black plays 1 . . . ♖f2+ and in reply to 2 ♘xf2 — 2 . . . ♖d4! with decisive material acquisitions. (Marziniak-Dobosz, Poland, 1973)

11) 1 ♘d1!! A 'quiet' move that leaves the queen en prise. It cannot be captured because of 2 ♘d8+. There is also the threat of 2 ♘xc7 ♗xc7 3 ♗e8+. 1 . . . ♖b7 doesn't help because of 2 ♘xb7.

The only thing left is to examine 1 . . . ♖c6. Then 2 ♘xc7! ♗xe6 (2 . . . ♗xc7 — 3 ♗xc6).



3 ♘xc6 ♗e8 (3 . . . ♗xc6 4 ♘d8+) 4 ♘cd6 with the inevitable ♘d6-d8. After this 'quiet' move the Wikman-Kanko game (Finland, 1975) did not continue — Black resigned.

12) Both captures are wrong. In reply to 1 . . . ♖xe4? comes 2 ♖d5, and then, after the queen has withdrawn, 3 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 4 ♖f6+ and 5 ♖xe4, with extra material. In the Steinitz-Hirschfeld game (London, 1863) 1 . . . ♗xe4? was played. Steinitz refuted this capture with the decoying manoeuvre 2 ♖h5! after which Black resigned. If 2 . . . ♗xd3 (or 2 . . . ♗xd4+ 3 ♗xd4 ♖xd4 4 ♖xf6+ and 5 ♖xd7), then 3 ♖xf6+ and the material advantage guarantees White an uncomplicated win.

13) 1 ♘g1!! Having 'lured' the queen away, White separates it from the king and concludes the attack without any trouble: 1 . . . ♗xg1 2 ♖g5+. Whichever way the king withdraws allows mate. In the

Gilg-Orbach game (Breslau, 1925) 2 ... ♜xg5 3 hg was played, after which Black resigned (in reply to 3 ... ♜ad8, 4 ♜h6+ ♜g8 5 g6 ♜f6 6 g7 is sufficient).

14) It can't. By playing 1 ... ♜xc2? Black fell into a trap: after 2 ♜f6+! he had to resign on 2 ... gf comes 3 ♜e8+ (not 3 ♜g3+? in view of 3 ... ♜f8) 3 ... ♜h7 4 ♜g3. 3 ... ♜f8 4 ♜g3+ leads to the same result. (Dely-Lengyel, Hungarian Championship, 1974)

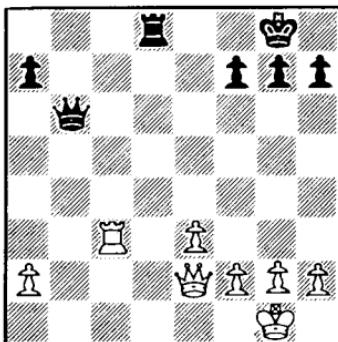
15) ♜d6! forces resignation. The knight at d6 cannot be captured because of 2 ♜e8+ ♜g8 3 ♜d4+. There is also the threat of 2 ♜xd5, and if the knight withdraws, let's say 1 ... ♜f6, there follows 2 ♜f7+ ♜xf7 3 ♜xd8+.

16) White forced a draw in an amusing way: 1 b4! ♜xb4 (1 ... ♜xd6? 2 bc) 2 d7 ♜d4 (if 2 ... ♜b8, then 3 ♜c4 and then 4 ♜xc5) 3 b4! After 3 ... ♜xd7 4 bc Black will have to give up the rook for the pawn — a draw. (Helmertz-Wernbro, Lund, 1973)

17) 1 ♜g4+ (decoying the f-pawn in order to open the diagonal up for the bishop) 1 ... fg 2 ♜g5+ (the king must be pushed aside) 2 ... ♜h8 3 ♜h6!

Threatens both 4 ♜xf8 mate (the point of the check on g5) and 4 ♜xh7 mate. (Hort-Portisch, Madrid, 1973)

18) No. In reply to 1 ♜xc3? follows 1 ... ♜xc3 2 ♜xc3 ♜xc3 3 ♜xc3



Black now has nothing to gain from 3 ... ♜b1+ in view of 4 ♜f1 (4 ... ♜d1?? 5 ♜c8+). But the diversion of the queen from the defence of the first rank: 3 ... ♜b2! 4 ♜c2 (4 ♜e1 ♜xc3!) 4 ... ♜b1+, and White loses a rook. (Bernstein-Capablanca, Moscow, 1914)

19) The hackneyed 1 ♜xd5+ and 2 ♜e7+ are the obvious moves. But Black captures on d5 with check.

The winning move is 1 ♜d4!! It not only protects against the threat ♜g4-f2+, but it also attacks — the queen, the knight and mate! This manoeuvre (or to be precise, this triple stroke) which diverts the queen from defending e7 (in reply to 1 ... ♜xd4 follows a direct attack: 2 ♜e7+ and 3 ♜xf8 mate), leads to a win in material.

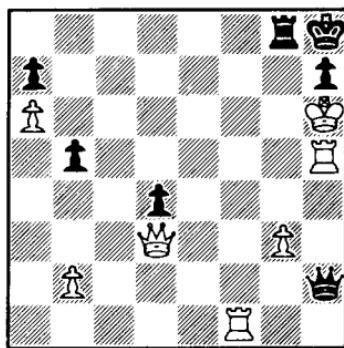
Black's only possibility is to exchange the queen for the rook

and the knight — 1 . . . $\mathbb{B}xf5$ 2 $\mathbb{W}xc5$ $\mathbb{B}xf1+$ 3 $\mathbb{W}g2$ and postpone defeat a little. (Jansson-Pytel, Stockholm, 1975)

20) White wins by decoying the queen from defending the rook at d8: 1 $\mathbb{W}a7!$ $\mathbb{W}a5$ 2 $\mathbb{W}a6!$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 3 $\mathbb{W}a7!$ The queen has nowhere else to withdraw and Black resigned. (Rovner-Kamishov, Moscow, 1947)

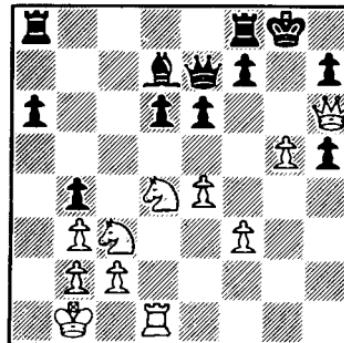
The success of White's tactical operation was determined not only by the weakness of the eighth rank and the position of the major pieces. The mute bishop at f3 also played his role — he defended the rook at d1. Had the bishop, for instance, been on b3, there would have been no 1 $\mathbb{W}a7$; Black would have replied with the intermediate 1 . . . $\mathbb{B}xd2$, later capturing the queen.

21) This position is taken from the game Ivanka-Lazarević (Yugoslavia, 1972). Having pictured the only variation with checks — 1 . . . $\mathbb{B}g8+$ 2 $\mathbb{W}h6$ $\mathbb{W}xh2+$ 3 $\mathbb{B}h5$, Lazarević decided that there would be nothing to pursue the enemy king with, White being a rook up. And she captured the rook 1 . . . $\mathbb{W}xf1$, after which the game ended in a draw.



Meanwhile, a decoying sacrifice which she had not noticed in her calculations in the rejected variation could have decided the issue: 3 . . . $\mathbb{W}d2+!$ and 4 $\mathbb{W}xd2$ $\mathbb{B}g6$ mate.

22) Black decided to capture the pawn by means of 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ (he declined 1 . . . bc because of 2 $\mathbb{W}xf6$ $3\mathbb{h}g$ cb+ 4 $\mathbb{W}xb2$ $\mathbb{W}g7$ 5 $\mathbb{g}h+$ $\mathbb{W}h8$ 6 $\mathbb{W}xg7+$ $\mathbb{W}xg7$ 7 $\mathbb{B}dg1+$, and White has an extra passed pawn), to which there followed 2 $\mathbb{B}xh5!$ gh. How can the reserves be brought on?



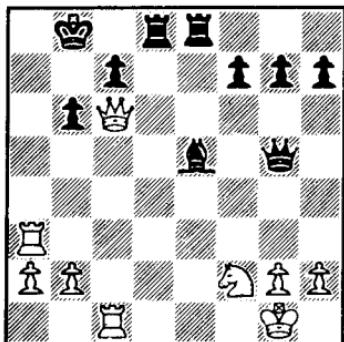
3 $\mathbb{Q}f5!$, and Black resigned; in reply to 3 . . . ef comes 4 $\mathbb{Q}d5$.

Bojković-Adamski, Junior World Championship, 1963)

23) 1 ... $\mathbb{B}xf2!$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xe6$. Both g2 and f1 are defended. White was convinced that his opponent had not taken this into consideration and given the bishop up in vain ... There followed, however, 2 ... $\mathbb{B}e2!!$, and the game ended. (Kahn-Bernstein, Paris, 1926)

24) A. The tempting move 1 $\mathbb{B}a3$ loses in view of the reply 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xh2+$ 2 $\mathbb{B}h1$ (2 $\mathbb{B}f1$ $\mathbb{B}e2$ mate) 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ 3 $\mathbb{B}g1$ (3 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{B}d1+$) 3 ... $\mathbb{B}d1+$! 4 $\mathbb{B}xd1$ $\mathbb{B}xd1+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $\mathbb{B}e1$ mate.

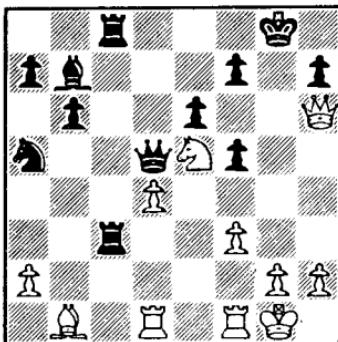
B. After 1 $\mathbb{B}h3$ $\mathbb{B}g5$ 2 $\mathbb{B}a3$ Black decoys the enemy queen with a sacrifice.



2 ... $\mathbb{B}xc1+$! 3 $\mathbb{B}xc1$ and now 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}xb2$! The bishop cannot be captured because of mate; Black captures the rook and as a result acquires a decisive advantage. (Sznajik-Gaprindashvili, Sandomir, 1976)

25) 1 ... $\mathbb{B}e2!!$ and White resigned. (Panno-Bravo, Fortalesa, 1975)

26) 1 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ gf 2 $\mathbb{B}h6!$ f5 (if 2 ... fe, then 3 $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$ $\mathbb{B}h8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ mating).



3 $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ 1-0. (Haik-Kiffmeyer, Stockholm, 1974)

27) The knight is hindering the advance of the e-pawn, so it must be decoyed with a sacrifice: 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}b6+!!$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ (after 2 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ White loses the pawn endgame) 2 ... e3. 0-1. (Goldenberg-Hug, Switzerland, 1976)

28) 1 $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{B}h8$ 2 $\mathbb{B}d8!$ Threatens 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ mate. Black has nothing to defend f7 with, and he suffers a loss of material. 2 ... h6 (no salvation for Black in 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf8+$) 3 $\mathbb{Q}5xg6+$ fg 4 $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ $\mathbb{B}g8$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}xh6$. 1-0. (Zubitsker-Kondrakov, Tashkent, 1967)

29) 1 ... $\mathbb{B}c1!$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xc1$ $\mathbb{B}d1+$ 3 $\mathbb{B}xd1$ $\mathbb{B}xd1$ mate. (Fontein-Euwe, Amsterdam, 1939)

30) 1 $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ and Black resigned (1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}h8+$). (Katalimov-Kolpakov, Riga, 1975)

31) 1 $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$. If 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}f8$, then 2 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ with the unchallengeable threat 3 $\mathbb{Q}e8$. In reply to 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}b8$, 2 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ wins with the twin threats 3 $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ and 3 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$. For instance: 2 ... $h6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xc8+$ or 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xc8$.

2 $\mathbb{Q}a5$ (once again decoying the queen from the eighth rank) 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xc7$. 1-0. (Ivkov-Eliskases, Munich, 1958)

32) There followed 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}e1!!$ and White resigned. The capture of the queen is followed by 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ and 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ mate, any move with the rook or the knight is followed by the exchange of the queens and then $\mathbb{Q}e5 - f3+$, and in case of 2 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ -2 ... $\mathbb{Q}f2$. (Ugoltsev-Ashin, 1976)

33) There followed 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}f3!$ and White resigned: in reply to 2 gf (as well as 2 $g3$) comes 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}d2$. (Stahlberg-Keres, Bad Nauheim, 1936)

34) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}e5!!$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ and 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ mate. (Correspondence, Demetrescu-Adam, 1934)

35) Were Black's queen not controlling e7, White would deliver mate with the knights: $\mathbb{Q}f5-e7+$ and $\mathbb{Q}e5-f7$ mate. This means that the queen must be diverted, and this is achieved by 1 $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ In reply to 1

... $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ the cavalry attack reaches its objective. Since there is not a single square on the a3-f8 diagonal controlled by the queen, the game ended. (Eggenberger-Schumacher, Basle 1979)

36) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}d8!$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ (2 $\mathbb{Q}xd8?$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ mate) 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ (once again the queen can't be captured because of mate) 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$. 0-1 (Alekseyev-Razuvayev, Moscow, 1969)

37) 1 $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ Decoying the knight from defending the bishop at d5 and the bishop at d5 itself from defending f7. In reply to 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ comes 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$, 3 $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ and 4 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ mate, and if 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$, then simply 2 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$, and Black is defenceless.

1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ (there was the threat of mate on h8) 4 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$. 1-0. (Tal-Tolush, 25th USSR Championship, Moscow, 1958)

38) 1 $\mathbb{Q}xc6+!bc$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ In reply to 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ comes 3 $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}b8$ mate. And if the rook is defended — 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}d8$, then 3 $\mathbb{Q}a6+$. (Hartston-Durao, Alicante, 1975)

39) 1 $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ gh (it's easy to see that the rook can't withdraw) 2 $\mathbb{Q}g1!$ 1-0 (Krutikhin-Chaplynsky, Junior USSR Championship, 1950)

40) Black is mated on d8! In order to do this White must clear the d-

file and divert the enemy queen and rook. Thus, 1 $\mathbb{Q}xe5+!$ $d\mathbf{e}2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}d8$ mate. (Mackenzie-NN, Manchester, 1889)

41) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}h4!!$ In reply to 2 $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ followed 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe3!$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g6+.$ Threatening the deadly discovered check 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}f1$ mate. Neither does 3 $h3$ help in view of 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}f1++$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ mate, nor 3 $g3$ because of 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xe1+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ mate. The point of the knight check is to clear the way to $h4$ for the king, but in this case mate is also achieved.

3 ... hg 4 $g3$ $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xe1+$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}g1+$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ 8 $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ 9 gf (9 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ mate) 9 ... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ mate. (NN-Steinitz, London, 1869)

42) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}h4!$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ (the queen can't be captured because of mate — White has defended $h2$) 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xh2+.$ Once again the rook is decoyed from defending $g1$. 0-1 (Reiner-Steinitz, Vienna, 1860)

43) The weakness of the eighth rank is obvious. However, 1 $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ doesn't produce anything — Black controls $c8$. In the meantime decisive action is required — $g2$ is under attack. In case of 1 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ Black protects himself with 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}c8.$

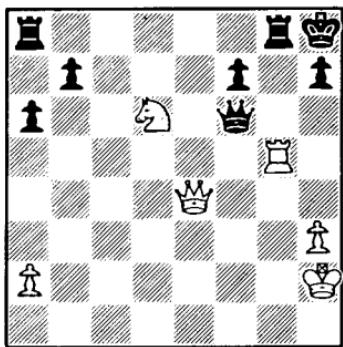
Victory is achieved by means of two decoying sacrifices: 1 $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ (inviting the enemy bishop to leave the $a6-c8$ diagonal) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ (the capture of the queen is followed by mate on the back rank) 2 $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ with inevitable mate. (A position from del Rio's book, 1750)

44) One's first reaction is to play 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ with the threat of mate on $h1$. Black, however, is mated earlier: 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf8+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ mate.

This combination doesn't work if the bishop is diverted: 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}c4+!!$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2.$ Now the queen sacrifice doesn't produce anything for White and he has to resign. (Bunyan-Crowl, Sydney, 1933)

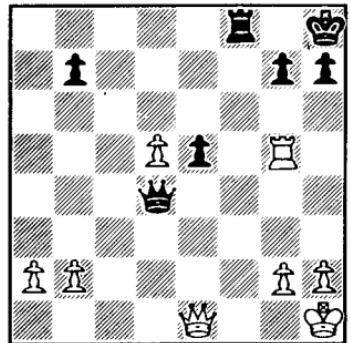
45) 1 $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}b4+$ $\mathbb{Q}a8.$ Now that the king has been edged off come two decoying sacrifices: 3 $\mathbb{Q}f3+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}e4+!$ The capture of the queen leads to mate (5 $\mathbb{Q}c8$ mate) 1-0 (Duras-NN, Prague, 1910)

46) 1 $\mathbb{Q}g5!!$ Defending himself against mate White offers his partner the choice of the queen or the rook. Both captures are followed by 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ mate. But Black can be content with the pawn, defending at the same time $f7$ — 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf6.$ After that White's rook and knight are en prise, and there is also the threat of $\mathbb{Q}f6-f2+\dots$



2 $\mathbb{W}d4!!$ Precisely so, and not 2 $\mathbb{W}e5?$, after which the queen would have been captured with check. After yet another purely puzzling diversionary move all that Black can do is 2 ... $\mathbb{B}g6$, and 3 $\mathbb{B}xg6!$ ends the game: 3 ... $\mathbb{W}xd4$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ mate. (Suta-Sutey, Bucharest, 1953)

47) 1 ... $\mathbb{W}c5+$ 2 $\mathbb{B}h1 \mathbb{W}c4!$ 3 $\mathbb{B}g1$ (forced in view of the threat 3 ... $\mathbb{B}f1+$) 3 ... $\mathbb{W}d4+$ 4 $\mathbb{B}h1.$



4 ... $\mathbb{W}e4!$ (the only possible move, because if 4 ... $\mathbb{W}d2$ White has the reply 5 $\mathbb{B}xe5$) 5 $\mathbb{W}c1.$

In reply to 5 $\mathbb{W}d1$ comes 5 ... $\mathbb{W}f4$ with two threats — mate on f1

and 6 ... $\mathbb{W}xg5$. If 5 $\mathbb{W}g1$, then 5 ... $\mathbb{W}e2$ winning the queen.

5 ... $\mathbb{W}d3$ 6 $\mathbb{W}g1 \mathbb{W}d4+$ 7 $\mathbb{B}h1 \mathbb{W}d2!$ If the queen is captured White is mated, and otherwise the rook is lost. (Lowtzki-Tartakower, Jurate, 1937)

48) Achieving a win is, of course, tied up with promoting the g-pawn. This requires the moves $g6-g7$ and $\mathbb{A}c2-h7+$. But in reply to 1 g7 Black will play 1 ... f5. What reaches the goal is 1 $\mathbb{A}g5!!$ (in order to divert the enemy pawn from the f-file; in reply to 1 ... fg 2 g7 is already decisive) 1 ... $\mathbb{A}e7$ 2 g7. 1-0. After the forced 2 ... f5 3 $\mathbb{A}xe7$ White easily obtains the advantage. (Hennings-Walter, East Germany, 1964)

49) 1 $\mathbb{B}xg7+!$ $\mathbb{A}xg7$ 2 $\mathbb{W}g4$. There is no defence to the two threats — mate and the open attack 3 $\mathbb{A}h6+$ winning the queen. After 2 ... $\mathbb{W}xf5$ 3 $\mathbb{W}xf5$ White's victory is only a question of time. (Keres-Gligorić, Candidates' Tournament, Yugoslavia, 1959)

50) 1 ... $\mathbb{A}xd3?$ 2 $\mathbb{W}g8+$, and Black is mated after 2 ... $\mathbb{W}xg8$ 3 $\mathbb{A}e6++$ and 4 $\mathbb{B}g8$ mate. (Nei-Petrosian, USSR Team Championship, 1960)

51) No. In reply to 1 $\mathbb{W}xc7?$ like a bolt out of the blue came 1 ... $\mathbb{W}h3+!!$ and White stopped his clock because of the inevitable mate: 2 $\mathbb{W}xh3$ $\mathbb{A}f1$ mate, or 2 $\mathbb{W}g1$ (f2) 2 ... $\mathbb{W}f1$ mate. Thus ended

the Andersson-Hartston game.
(Hastings, 1972/73)

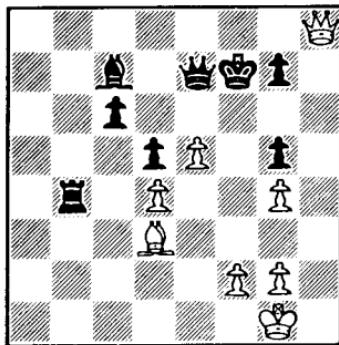
52) Black can safely capture the rook — 1 ... ♜xd1. In reply to 2 ♜xf6 he has at his disposal a decoying queen sacrifice — 2 ... ♕h1+ 3 ♕xh1 ♜xf2+ and 4 ... ♜xg4 and as a result is left with an extra pawn, extra material, and a winning position.

In the Spiridonov-Estrin game (Polanice Zdroj, 1971) Black overlooked this possibility and offered to exchange the queens — 1 ... ♕e4.

53) Naturally, there is no point in capturing the queen and getting mated. But with the aid of checks (i.e. forced moves) there is a possibility of creating a position in which e1 will be defended, and then capturing the queen: 1 ♜xg7+! (attracting) 1 ... ♕xg7 (or 1 ... ♘h8 2 ♜g8+ ♜xg8 3 ♜c3+) 2 ♜g3+ and 3 ♜xd5. (Shandlik-Ribl, Prague, 1937)

54) White sacrificed the queen — 2 ♜xg7+, and the game did not carry on any further — Black resigned. After 2 ... ♜xg7 3 ♜xd7+ ♜g8 4 ♜f6+ ♘f7 5 ♜d5+ and 6 ♜xc7 he is left a piece down. (Keres-Spassky, Interzonal, Göteborg, 1955)

55) 1 ♜xf8+! ♘xf8 (if 1 ... ♜xf8, then 2 ♜h7+ ♘h8 3 ♜g6+ and 4 ♜h7 mate) 2 ♜h8+ ♘f7.



3 ♜g6+ ♘xg6 (the result is not altered by 3 ... ♘e6 4 ♜g8+ ♜d7 5 ♜f5+) 4 ♜h5 mate. (Geller-Novotelnov, Moscow, 1951)

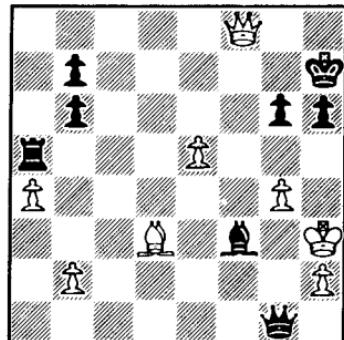
56) No. In reply to 1 ... ♜xc3 comes 2 ♜c4+! After 2 ... ♜xc4 (2 ... ♜xc4 3 ♜xd8+) 3 ♜xd8+ ♘f7 4 ♜xf5+ ♘f6 5 ♜d7+ Black resigned. (Dvoiris-Spassky, Simultaneous Display with clocks, Moscow, 1972)

57) 1 ♜h5++!! ♘xh5 (in reply to 1 ... ♘xf5? comes 2 ♜g6 mate!, and in case of 1 ... ♘h7 — 2 ♜g7 mate) 2 ♜g7+ with perpetual check on f5 and g7. Black cannot avoid it by withdrawing the king to h7 (2 ... ♘h6 3 ♜f5+ ♘h7? 4 ♜g7 mate) (Tarasevich-Zlotnik, Moscow, 1971)

58) Black played 1 ... ♜h1+!! and White had to resign! After 2 ♘xh1 ♘g3 mate is inevitable. (Donner-Spanjaard, Holland, 1961)

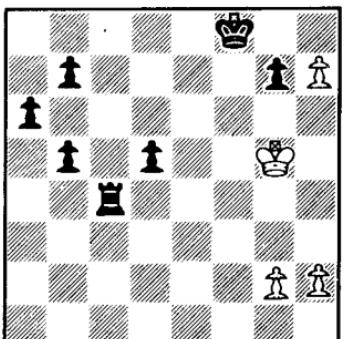
59) 1 ♜d3+ (barricading the king's exit to g6 and preparing for the

concluding sacrifice) 1 . . . g6 2 ♜h8+ (an attracting sacrifice which allows the queen to join in the action) 2 . . . ♜xh8 3 ♜f8+ ♜h7 4 ♜xf7+ ♜h8 5 ♜f8+ ♜h7.



6 ♜xg6+! ♜xg6 7 ♜g8 mate. (Forintos-Tomović, Budapest-Belgrade Match, 1957)

60) In the game NN-Em. Lasker, played in a simultaneous display in London in 1914, White went 2 ♜g4? and to 2 . . . ♜c4+ replied 3 ♜g5.



The unobvious manoeuvre 3 . . . ♜h4!! (attracting into a check with the gain of a very important tempo)

allowed the black king to hold up the pawn. After 4 ♜xh4 g5+ and then 5 . . . ♜g7 Lasker won the game which he should have lost.

To 1 . . . ♜c3+ Lasker's opponent should have replied 2 ♜f2!. After 2 . . . ♜c2+ 3 ♜e3 ♜c3+ 4 ♜d2 the pawn cannot be held back.

61) 1 ♜c4+! ♜xc4 2 g8=♕+ and 3 ♜xc4 (Pihajlić-Ivanka, Subotica, 1976)

62) 1 . . . ♜e2+ 2 ♜h1 ♜xh2+! 3 ♜xh2 ♜h4 mate. (Meo-Giustolisi, Reggio Emilia, 1959)

63) 1 ♜g7+! (attracting into a double discovered check) 1 . . . ♜xg7 2 ♜f5++ ♜g8 3 ♜h6 mate. (Mista-Kloza, Poland, 1955)

64) 1 . . . ♜xc2+ (attraction followed by a discovered check) 2 ♜xc2 (2 ♜a1 ♜c3 mate) 2 . . . b3+ and 3 . . . ♜xd6. (Wockenfuss-Timman, Bad Lauterberg, 1977)

65) 1 ♜d8+ ♜g7 2 ♜xf6+! (attracting into a fork) 2 . . . ♜xf6 3 ♜xe4+ ♜e5 4 ♜xc5 bc. With an extra pawn White easily wins the pawn endgame. (Euwe-Davidson, Amsterdam, 1925)

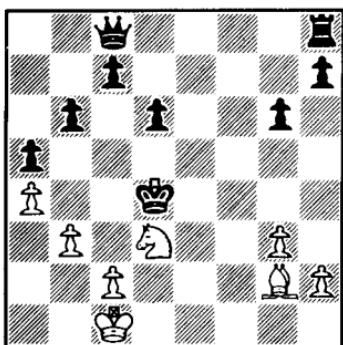
66) 1 . . . ♜xf4+! 2 ♜xf4 g5+ 3 ♜g4 ♜e3+ and 4 . . . ♜xc2, remaining a knight up. (Wittek-Meitner, Vienna, 1882)

67) Because of the threat of mate on h2, White needs to adopt strong

measures: 1 $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ (1 ... $\mathbb{Q}h7$
2 $\mathbb{Q}d3+$) 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf8+!$ (attraction) 2
... $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}f8+!$
 $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}d8$ mate. (Vidmar-Euwe,
Karlsbad, 1929)

68) 1 $\mathbb{Q}xf7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xc7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xc7$. With the help of two sacrifices White has attracted the opponent's king and rook onto the seventh rank and now obtains a decisive material advantage: 3 $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xa7$. 1-0. (Mecking-Tan, Interzonal Tournament, Petropolis, 1974)

69) 1 $\mathbb{Q}xc6+!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}e5++$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$
3 $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$.

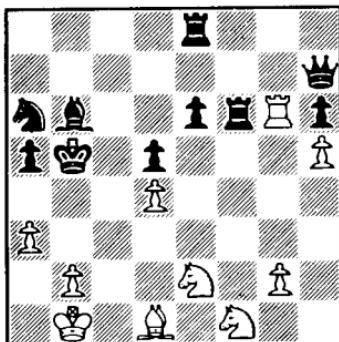


With the aid of a double check the king has been prised out of his refuge and is now mated.

4 $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ Black resigned — there is no defence to 5 c3 mate. (Kasparian-Manvelian, Erevan, 1936)

70) 1 $\mathbb{Q}xc6!$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xb5+!!$ The Black king is invited to go on a small excursion. He should have rejected the offer and withdrawn to

b7, although after 3 $\mathbb{Q}xe8$ $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ White would have had a decisive positional advantage. After 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ White offered yet another sacrifice developing the same theme.



3 $\mathbb{Q}a4+!$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ (3 ... $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ leads to mate in two moves — 4 $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ mate) 4 $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$. Thus ends the king's balancing on the edge of the precipice, or if you like, the king's journey along the front line

7 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ mate. (Tietz-Remisch, Carlsbad, 1898)

Alternative ways to victory are 1 $\mathbb{Q}c2!$ or 1 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}c2+$.

71) 1 $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}g6!!$ and Black, after 2 ... hg, 2 ... fg or 2 ... cd has to part with the queen (2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}de7$ mate; 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xh7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}h1+$ mating) (Gargulak-Kahan, 1909)

72) 1 ... g4+! 2 $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ (in reply to 2 $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ comes 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ mate) 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}f5!!$ (by forcing the queen exchange White wins with the help of a pawn storm on the \mathbb{Q} -side) 3 h5 (nothing is altered by 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf5+$

$\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 4 $\mathbb{g}4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ and then $c5-c4$)
 3 . . . $c4!$ 4 $h6$ (4bc b3) 4 . . .
 $\mathbb{W}xg4+$ 5 $\mathbb{W}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$. 0-1. (Tatai-Mariotti, Italy, 1973)

73) 1 $\mathbb{Q}xe8+!$ (destroying the guard of $g6$) 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xe8$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$. If 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}h7$ the following wins
 3 $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}f6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 5
 $\mathbb{W}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 6 $\mathbb{W}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7 $\mathbb{W}xe8+$
 $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 8 $\mathbb{W}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 9 $\mathbb{W}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 10
 $\mathbb{W}g7+$ and 11 $\mathbb{W}xa7$.

3 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$. In reply to 3 . . . $\mathbb{Q}e7$ comes 4
 $\mathbb{Q}xa6+$ and 5 $\mathbb{Q}xa7$, and if 3 . . .
 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ – 4 $\mathbb{Q}h4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 5 $\mathbb{W}g6+$. 1-0.
 (Bronstein-Zita, Moscow-Prague Match, 1946)

74) He can't. In reply to 1 . . . $f3?$ comes 2 $\mathbb{W}xh6+!!$ (not 2 $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$
 $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 4 $\mathbb{W}g5+$, and White only has perpetual check) 2 . . . gh (2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}h4$ mate)
 3 $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg8$ (otherwise mate on $h7$) 5 $\mathbb{Q}xg8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 6
 $\mathbb{Q}1g7$ mate. (Richter-NN, 1939)

75) In reply to 1 . . . $\mathbb{A}e5$ White was planning to play 2 $f4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ (2 . . .
 $\mathbb{A}xe2$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xe2$, defending $f4$) 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf4$
 $\mathbb{W}xt4$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xh5$. There followed, however, 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xf3+!$, and he had to resign, for after 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{A}e5$ mate is inevitable. (Dorfman-Romanishin, Cienfuegos, 1977)

76) 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ (destroying the defence of $h2$) 2 gf $\mathbb{W}h4$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}fd1$
 (after 3 fg comes mate after 3 . . .
 $\mathbb{W}xg4+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{W}f3+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$)
 3 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 4 $\mathbb{W}c2$ (White cannot

defend $f3$ anyway) 4 . . . $\mathbb{W}h3! 5$
 $\mathbb{W}b3+$ d5. 0-1. (Geiler-Shanurenko, Moscow, 1946)

77) 1 . . . $\mathbb{W}xe4!$ By destroying the knight Black realizes a standard (for the enlightened players, and an unexpected one for those who aren't) mating combination: 2 de $\mathbb{Q}xd1+$ 3
 $\mathbb{W}xd1$ $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ 4 hg $hg+$ and mate on the following move, or 2 $\mathbb{W}xe4$ after which mate comes two moves earlier – 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ 3 hg hg mate. 0-1. (Wilhelm-Meyer, Mulhouse, 1977)

78) 1 . . . $\mathbb{W}xg5!$ By destroying the knight Black creates a mating web. After 2 fg $\mathbb{Q}f3$, mate is inevitable. 1-0. (Soler-Pulieri, Correspondence, 1977)

79) 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}g2!$ The target of the attack is $h2$. In reply to 2 $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ comes 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$ (the move 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ also wins in reply to 2 $\mathbb{W}xg2$) 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{W}xh2+$ and 4 . . . $\mathbb{W}xf2$ mate. 1-0. (Urban-Schöneberg, Halle, 1971)

80) 1 $\mathbb{Q}xh7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ (clearing the line for the queen and the rook) 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}h3+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4
 $\mathbb{W}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}h7$ mate. (Kübart-Donner Bad Piermont, 1951)

81) 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}g1!$ If 2 $\mathbb{Q}d2$, then 2 . . .
 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ or 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xh2$. 0-1. (Frieberg-Schüssler, Malmö, 1976)

82) White delivers mate: 1 $\mathbb{W}xg6+!$
 $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ mate.
 (Hecht-Timman, Helsinki, 1972)

83) 1 ♜xc4! dc 2 ♜xd6 ♜xd6 3 ♜g6+ and mate on the following move. (L. Steiner-Balogh, Pistyan, 1922)

84) The move 1 ♜xh6? loses. Black does not reply 1 ... ♜xh6?? (2 ♜g8+ ♜d7 3 ♜d8 mate), but 1 ... ♜xe2+! By sacrificing itself the rook opens up a flight square for the king. There is no longer any threat of mate — the king shelters on e6. In exchange for the queen White only gets a rook and a bishop (a variation from the game Shishov-Zagoriansky, Riga, 1953)

85) Were not his own f-rook in the way, Black would deliver the thematic mate ♜f4-h3 mate. However, 1 ... ♜xg3+ is unsuitable because after 2 hg the White king has a flight square on h2. The following is decisive: 1 ... ♜f2! 2 ♜xf4 (2 ♜xf2 ♜h3 mate; 2 ♜xf2 ♜e1+ and 3 ... ♜h3 mate) 2 ... ♜g2+ 3 ♜h1 ♜xg3+ 4 ♜f3 ♜xf3 mate.

86) 1 ♜h6+ ♜f8 2 ♜f5! ef (or 2 ... gf) 3 ♜xh7 with inevitable mate. (Timman-Pomar, Las Palmas, 1977)

87) 2 ♜xd5! (clearing the diagonal for the fianchettoed bishop) 2 ... cd. More forceful is 2 ... gh 3 ♜xe7+ ♜xe7 4 ♜xe7, although even in this case Black cannot save the game. If Black does not give up the queen, but instead plays 3 ... ♜g7, he is mated — 4 ♜xh5+ f6 (or 4 ... ♜f6) 5 ♜xh7 mate.

There is still the counter sacrifice of the queen to look at — 2 ... ♜xd5. Then 3 ♜h6 ♜d6 4 ♜xh7+ ♜xh7 5 ♜h5+ ♜g8 6 ♜h8 mate, and if 3 ... ♜f6 not 4 ♜xd5 ♜xb2, but 4 ♜xe8! ♜xe8 5 ♜xf6 mating.

3 ♜xh7+! ♜xh7 4 ♜h5+ and 5 ♜h8 mate. (Marel-Nečesany, Correspondence, 1946/47)

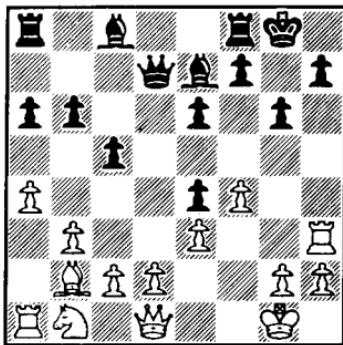
88) White delivered mate in four moves: 1 ♜c7+ ♜a7 2 ♜xa6+! ba 3 ♜b5++ ♜a8 4 ♜a7 mate. (Munsk-NN, Kassel, 1914)

89) 1 ♜g8+! A move which compelled Black to capitulate in view of the following forced variation: 1 ... ♜xg8 2 ♜d4+ ♜g7 3 ♜xg7+ ♜xg7 4 ♜c7+ ♜f6 (4 ... ♜f8 — ♜xb8+ etc) 5 ♜xf4+ ♜f5 (5 ... ♜e7 allows White to capture the rook with check after 6 ♜d6+, and in reply to 5 ... ♜g7 the rook is captured after the preliminary 6 ♜xg3+) 6 ♜d6+! ♜g7 7 ♜xg3+ and 8 ♜xb8. (Ftacnik-Georgiev, Groningen, 1977)

90) 1 ♜xe6! (freeing the long diagonal with the idea of creating a double threat) 1 ... ♜xc4 (1 ... fe 2 ♜c3!) 2 ♜h6+! After 2 ... gh 3 ♜xh6, mate is inevitable. 1-0. (Larsen-Matanović, Zagreb, 1965)

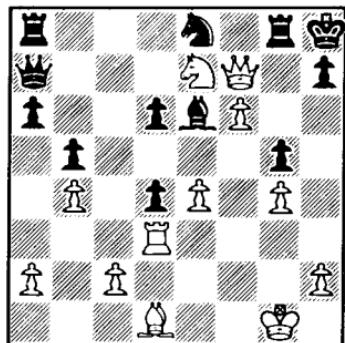
91) 1 ♜f6+ gf 2 ♜xh7+ ♜xh7 (2 ... ♜h8 3 ♜h3) 3 ♜h3+ and 4 ♜g3 mate. (Radovici-Neamtu, Romanian Championship, 1963)

92) 1 $\mathbb{B}xc4$ bc 2 $\mathbb{B}f5!!$ The rook cannot be captured: 2 ... gf 3 $\mathbb{W}xf5+$ $\mathbb{W}h8$ (3 ... $\mathbb{W}h6$ 4 $\mathbb{W}h5$ mate) 4 $\mathbb{W}h5+$ $\mathbb{W}g8$ 5 $\mathbb{W}g6+$ and 6 $\mathbb{W}g7$ mate. There are also the threats of $\mathbb{B}f5-h5+$ and $\mathbb{W}c2xg6$ mate. Black resigned; all his pieces ended up playing the role of extras! (Tal-NN, Clock Simultaneous, Holland, 1976)



93) 1 ... ed? 2 $\mathbb{A}d1!$ Threatening $\mathbb{g}4$ and then a queen sacrifice on $h7$. If 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{B}g7$, then 4 $\mathbb{Q}xh7!!$ $\mathbb{W}g8$ (4 ... $\mathbb{B}xh7$ 5 $\mathbb{W}f8$ mate) 5 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{W}f8$ 6 $\mathbb{W}h8+$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 7 $\mathbb{W}d5+$ and $\mathbb{W}xg7$.

2 ... $g5$ 3 $g4$ $\mathbb{B}g6$ 4 $\mathbb{W}f8+$ $\mathbb{B}g8$ 5 $\mathbb{W}xf7$ $b5$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ $\mathbb{A}e6$.



7 $\mathbb{W}xh7+!$ $\mathbb{W}xh7$ 8 $\mathbb{B}h3$ mate. (Planinc-Matulović, Novi-Sad, 1965)

Instead of 1 ... ed? the correct move is 1 ... $\mathbb{A}e6$ maintaining defensive resources.

94) 1 $\mathbb{A}xe4$ (secures $g3$ for the rook) 1 ... de 2 $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ (frees the diagonal for the bishop) 2 ... $\mathbb{W}xd7$

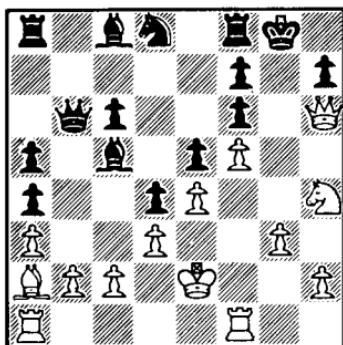
3 $\mathbb{W}h5!!$ In reply to 3 ... gh follows 4 $\mathbb{B}g3+$, otherwise $h7$ cannot be defended. (Kubicek-Privara, Ostrava, 1976)

95) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}a4!$ 2 $\mathbb{W}g4$ (in reply to 2 $\mathbb{W}h6$ Black would have played 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$, and if 3 $\mathbb{B}xf6$, then 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}xb3!!$) 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 3 $\mathbb{B}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xb3!!$ Black has parried the threats and remains with a decisive material advantage. To 4 cb comes the simple 4 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$, and 4 $\mathbb{W}f4$ leads to mate in two moves (4 ... $\mathbb{A}a2+$), and so White resigned. (Fischer-Geller, Skopje, 1967) In his commentaries Fischer later wrote that he had missed the check with the bishop on $a2$ in his preliminary calculations and had only seen it when he was pondering the move 4 $\mathbb{W}f4$.

96) 1 $\mathbb{Q}a4!!$ The point of the sacrifice is to prevent the opponent from opening up the diagonal and gaining control of $g1$. But why is the knight going to $a4$? Because, that way: 1) an important tempo is gained (the knight has to be cap-

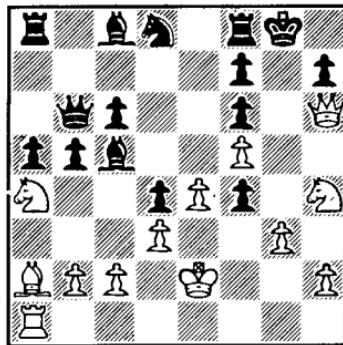
tured) and 2) the first rank is not obstructed.

1 . . . ba



2 $\mathbb{B}f4!$ (clearing . . . the g-file!) 2 . . . ef (there was the threat of mate — 3 $\mathbb{B}g4+$) 3 gf, and there is no defence to the threat 4 $\mathbb{B}g1$. (Alexander-Marshall, Cambridge, 1928)

Those who found the solution by playing the moves in the reverse order — 1 $\mathbb{B}f4$ ef 2 $\mathbb{Q}a4$, made a blunder.



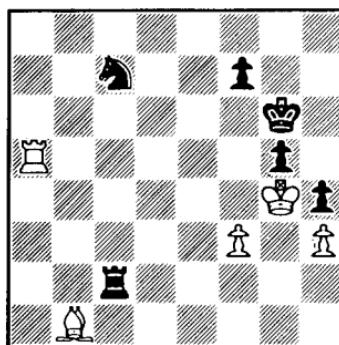
Black is saved by the intermediate check 2 . . . f3+!! After 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ ba (3 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ ba) 3 . . . $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ (but not 3 . . . ba in view of 4 $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ fg 5 f6)

the attack 4 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ does not fulfil its purpose: 4 . . . fg 5 f6 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ fe. The queen controls the seventh rank and Black is a rook up.

97) After 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ 2 $\mathbb{B}d2$ a second attack on the rook turns out to be decisive: 2 . . . $\mathbb{W}d1!$, after which White has to part with the queen (3 $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ $\mathbb{W}xd6$).

98) Mate can be averted, either by playing 1 h4, or by exchanging the bishop for three pawns: 1 $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xg5$, and then capturing the h-pawn.

With the move $\mathbb{Q}g7-g6$ Black has set a trap. The tempting 1 $\mathbb{Q}b1$ does not save from mate: 1 . . . h4+ 2 $\mathbb{Q}g4$.



2 . . . f5+!! (by this original means Black unpins his rook) 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{B}g2$ mate. (Tavernier-Grodner, Charlesville, 1952)

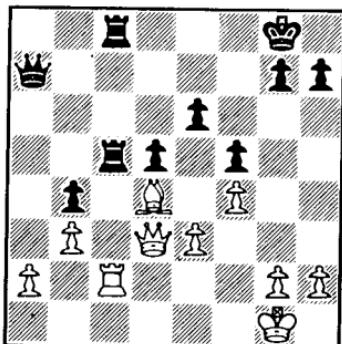
99) 1 . . . $\mathbb{W}e3+$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ (2 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$) 2 . . . $\mathbb{W}h3!!$ 0-1. In reply to 3 $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ (as well as to 3 $\mathbb{B}g1$) 3 . . . $\mathbb{Q}g4$ leads to mate. (Pokern-W. Hübner, West Germany, 1966)

100) The tactical operation 1 $\mathbb{Q}xe4?$ $\mathbb{A}xe4$ 2 $\mathbb{B}e1$ leads to a loss after 2 ... $\mathbb{A}g5+$ 3 $\mathbb{B}d1$ 0-0!, and White is two pieces down. (de Meille-O'Kelly, Brussels, 1935) It is also possible to reverse the order of the moves — 2 ... 0-0!, and to 3 $\mathbb{B}xe4$ — 3 ... $\mathbb{A}g5+$. Apologies for ... 0-0 — ed

101) Only to f1, which leads to a win. In case of 2 $\mathbb{B}f2?$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 3 $\mathbb{B}d8$ $\mathbb{W}h4+!$ White loses the rook. (Makogonov-Chekhover, 10th USSR Championship, 1937)

102) No. After 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ 2 $\mathbb{A}e3$ the tempting 2 ... $\mathbb{W}g5$ (double pin) does not win, but loses a piece because of 3 $\mathbb{W}xd4!$ (Toran-Kuijpers, Malaga, 1965)

103) The first thing to do is to attract the rook into a pin — 1 $\mathbb{B}xc5!$ $\mathbb{B}xc5$ 2 $\mathbb{B}c2$ $\mathbb{B}fc8$

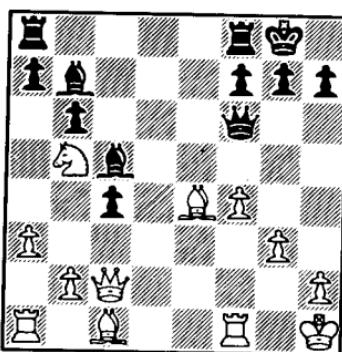


And now $\mathbb{W}b5!$ — a fresh attack on the doubly pinned (along the rank and the file) and doubly defended c-rook leads to a gain in

material. The following moves were made 3 ... $\mathbb{B}xc2$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ $\mathbb{B}xa2$ 5 $\mathbb{A}c5$ $h6$ 6 $h4$ $\mathbb{W}h7$ 7 $h5$, and Black resigned. (Kotov-Holmov, Moscow, 1971)

104) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe3+$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}a4!$ 3 $\mathbb{W}a3$ $\mathbb{B}xc1+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ $\mathbb{B}d1+$ 5 $\mathbb{B}f2$ $\mathbb{B}d2+$ 6 $\mathbb{B}e2$ (if 6 $\mathbb{W}g1$, then 6 ... $\mathbb{B}c2!$ 7 $\mathbb{B}a2$ $\mathbb{B}e2$, winning the pinned rook) 6 ... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 7 $\mathbb{B}f3$ $\mathbb{B}d3$. The pin paralyzing the rook played a decisive role. 0-1. (Leonhardt-Spielmann, Berlin, 1920)

105) No. After 2 $\mathbb{Q}xe4?$ Black wins by exploiting the pin on the e-bishop (on the rank and on the file).



2 ... $\mathbb{W}f5!$ 3 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{B}ae8$ 4 $\mathbb{A}c3$ $\mathbb{B}xe4!$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ (Yuriev-Tishler, 1927)

106) The move 1 $\mathbb{B}f8$ leads to a loss after the reply 1 ... $\mathbb{B}f4+!!$ To 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ comes 2 ... $\mathbb{W}g2+$ 3 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{B}f3$ mate. And if 2 $\mathbb{B}xf4$, then simply 2 ... $\mathbb{B}xe7$. 0-1. (Averbakh-Goldenov, Minsk, 1952)

It is worth noting that the im-

mediate $1 \dots \mathbb{W}g2+$ (instead of $1 \dots \mathbb{B}f4+$) $2 \mathbb{Q}e1 \mathbb{Q}f3+$ is unsuitable in view of $3 \mathbb{B}xf3!$

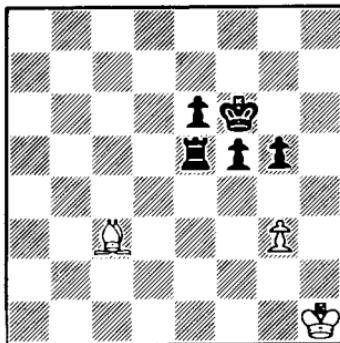
107) White has to give up material. The tempting move $1 \mathbb{B}xh5?$ (White seemingly pins the bishop; to $1 \dots \mathbb{Q}xe3$ comes $2 \mathbb{B}xh8+$ mating) is refuted by the effective reply $1 \dots \mathbb{B}g8!!$

Black has rid himself of the pin by creating the threat of mate. After $2 \mathbb{W}d3 \mathbb{W}g1+$ White resigned ($3 \mathbb{B}d1 \mathbb{B}c1+! 4 \mathbb{B}xc1 \mathbb{W}xc1$ mate). (Boleslavsky-Bondarevsky, Match-Tournament, Leningrad-Moscow, 1941)

108) $1 \mathbb{B}xe5!$ (attraction into a pin) $1 \dots \mathbb{B}xe5 2 g3.$

Black is in zugzwang. In reply to $2 \dots f4$ comes $3 g4$ and after the f-pawn moves, he parts company with the rook. And if $2 \dots g4$, then $3 \mathbb{W}g2$, and Black also loses the rook. In both cases White wins easily.

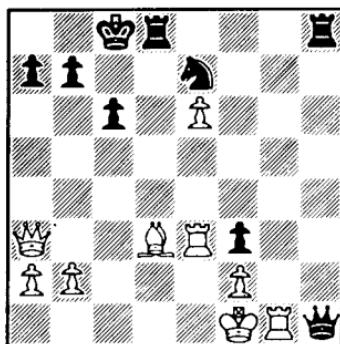
This elegant example was the conclusion of a game Tarrasch-NN. However, in reality White does not win, but just manages to get a draw.



Instead of $2 \dots f4$ or $2 \dots g4$ Black must give the rook up immediately by means of $2 \dots \mathbb{W}g6!$, in an effort to exchange the only white pawn. After $3 \mathbb{Q}xe5 \mathbb{W}h5!$ the aim is achieved. There is no defence to the threat $f5-f4$, and so it is a draw.

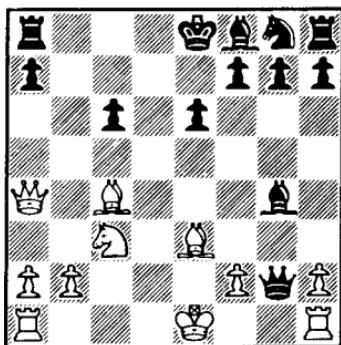
109) $1 \mathbb{B}d4!$ (line-closing allowing the d-pawn to promote to a queen) $1 \dots \mathbb{W}xd4 2 d7. 1-0.$ (Vatnikov-Vietal, Czechoslovakia, 1973)

110) In order to deprive the king of a flight square Black plays $1 \dots d3!$ and in reply to $2 \mathbb{Q}xd3 - 2 \dots f3$ (the third file is closed by the sacrifice of the d-pawn, and the white king is in a mating net) $3 \mathbb{B}e3 (3 \mathbb{W}xe7 \mathbb{W}h3+ and 4 \mathbb{W}h1 mate) 3 \dots \mathbb{W}h1+ 4 \mathbb{B}g1.$



$4 \dots \mathbb{W}xg1+! 5 \mathbb{W}xg1 \mathbb{B}dg8+ 6 \mathbb{W}f1 \mathbb{B}h1$ mate. (Zhuravlev-Borisenkov, Moscow, 1949)

111) By using the idea of line-closing, White wins easily.



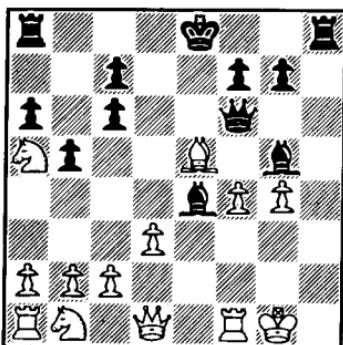
1 $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ (severs the connection between the enemy queen and c6)
 1 . . . ed 2 $\mathbb{W}xc6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ (if 2 . . . $\mathbb{W}e7$, then 3 $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$) 3 $\mathbb{W}xa8+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$
 4 $\mathbb{W}b7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 5 $\mathbb{W}c6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}f4!$
 1-0. After 6 . . . $\mathbb{W}xh1+$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}d2$
 $\mathbb{W}xa1$ White mates in three moves:
 8 $\mathbb{W}xd6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 9 $\mathbb{W}e5+$ and 10 $\mathbb{W}g5$ mate. (Janowski-Schallopp, Nürnberg, 1896)

112) Having played e4-e5 White was convinced that the queen must withdraw — in reply to 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{W}xe5$, 3 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ is decisive. However, the move 2 . . . $\mathbb{W}xe5$ is by no means necessary. Instead of that it is possible to play 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}e4!$

Threatening mate, Black has closed the e-file and develops an irrefutable attack.

3 f4.

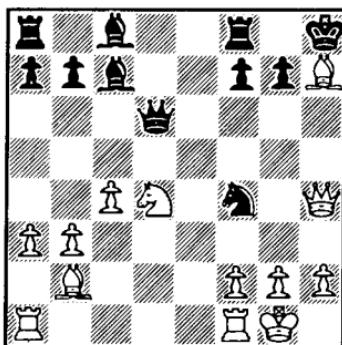
In case of 3 de $\mathbb{W}xe5$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}e1$, the following wins 4 . . . $\mathbb{W}h2+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{W}h1+$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{W}xe4+$



3 . . . $\mathbb{W}xe5!$ 4 de (the queen is once more unassailable — 4 fe $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ mate) 4 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 5 $\mathbb{W}f3$ (5 $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e3+$) 5 . . . $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}f2$.

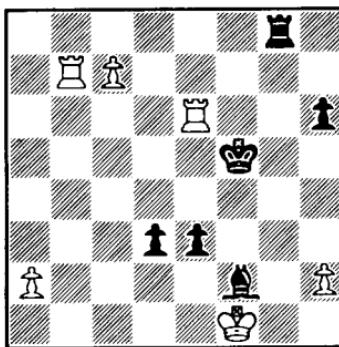
At this point Black castled queen-side and won. (Nippgen-Werhagen, Strasbourg, 1973) The aim can also be achieved by 6 . . . $\mathbb{W}h2+$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 8 $\mathbb{W}xf2$ $\mathbb{W}h1+$.

113) 2 $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ (of course, not 2 . . . $\mathbb{W}xh7?$) 3 $\mathbb{W}xd3+$; White defends himself against mate and has two extra pawns) 3 $\mathbb{W}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ 4 $\mathbb{W}h4$.



4 . . . ♘h3+! 0-1 (Shereshevsky-Kupreichik, Minsk, 1976)

114) White escapes by using the idea of line-closing: 1 ♕e6+ ♖xf5



2 ♜g6!!

The capture with the rook on g6 is out of the question because of 3 c8=♕+, and 2 . . . ♖xg6 closes the g-file, which allows White to play 3 ♜b8.

2 . . . ♜e8!

The threat is now 3 . . . e2+.

3 ♜e6!

The rook once again places itself in a double attack. In case of 3 . . . ♖xe6 the e-file is closed, which allows 4 ♜b8, and complications — 3 . . . ♖xe6 4 c8=♕ e2+ 5 ♖g2 e1=♕ — are not to Black's advantage. Thus after 3 . . . ♜g8! 4 ♜g6! the game ended in a draw — just like in a prize-winning study. (Kuijpers-Petersen, Halle, 1967)

115) The bayonet attack 1 d6 forces White to resign the game (1 cd 2 ♘xd6 mate; 1 . . . ♘a6 2 dc

♘xc7 3 ♘d6 mate or 2 . . . ♗c8 3 ♘d6 mate, and any other move loses the queen). (Rumiantsev-Lomonosov, Vilnius, 1978)

116) There followed 1 . . . ♗xc2, and White resigned because he loses the queen: in reply to 2 ♜xc2 comes 2 . . . ♘d3 mate. (NN-Canal, Simultaneous Display, 1935)

117) The 'active' black king was mated in three moves: 1 ♜f4+ ♘h5 2 ♜h4+!! gh 3 g4 mate. (Durao-Cattozzi, Dublin, 1957)

118) 1 . . . ♗g7! By capturing the knight the rook will shut off its own king's flight square, and he will be mated (2 ♜xf4 ♜h8+ and 3 . . . ♜h3 mate). White went on to play 2 ♜e5, but after 2 . . . ♜h8+ 3 ♗g3 ♜g6 did not escape mate. (Roel-Neishtadt, Correspondence, 1959-1960)

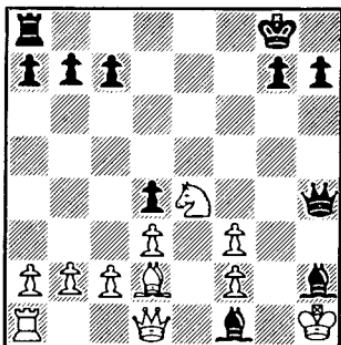
119) The check with the queen along the g-file is impossible, and the rook cannot be moved — in reply to 1 . . . ♜e8 will come 2 ♘f6+. At the same time he must not tarry — White is about to exchange the bishop at d6.

Three sacrifices crown the attack: 1 . . . ♘h2+! 2 ♗h1 (2 ♗xh2 ♘f1+) 2 . . . ♘f1! (clearing the h-file and at the same time attracting the queen onto f1, where it will block the king's exit)

3 ♗d1.

If 3 ♗xf1, then 3 . . . ♘xg3+ and mate on h2. And now, having cap-

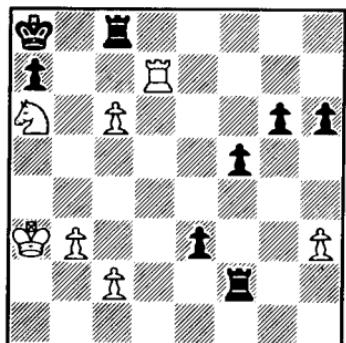
tured the bishop on the way, the king is out to shelter on e2...



3 . . . ♜e2! That persistent bishop! Whether the queen captures it or whether she withdraws, White is eventually mated. (Herrmann-Charousek, Budapest, 1896)

Black can also win with 1 . . . ♘f1! 2 ♗e1 ♜h3!.

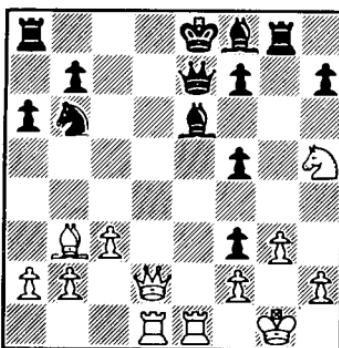
120) The fact that White does not lose is obvious from the variation 1 ♖a6+ ♜a8 2 ♖xc7+, Black cannot capture the knight because of 3 ♕d8+ mating, and thus must agree to a repetition of moves after 2 . . . ♜b8 3 ♖a6+ ♜a8



But does White have to repeat the moves? An amusing mating net is woven by the study move 4 ♕b7!! The pawn cannot be captured because of 5 ♕b8 mate. At the same time there is the threat of the striking 5 ♕b8+! (blocking) 5 . . . ♜xb8 6 ♖c7 mate. There is no defence, and Black resigned. (Janowski-NN, Paris, 1900)

121) Instead of the move that Black expected 1 ♗h4, there followed the astounding 1 ♕e8! and the game ended: in reply to 1 . . . ♜xe8 comes 2 ♖f6 mate. (Nielsen-Jensen, Denmark, 1926)

122) 1 0-0 ef 2 ♕fe1 ♜e6.



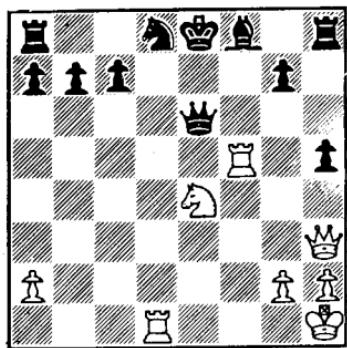
d7 is amply protected. But there followed two diverting sacrifices, and Black was mated precisely on that square: 3 ♖f6+! ♜xf6 4 ♖a4+! ♖xa4 (4 . . . ♜e7 5 ♖d6 mate) 5 ♖d7 mate. (Pichugin-Fradkin, Habarovsk, 1931)

123) Black forces a gain in material by using the ideas of decoying, the

pin and the double attack: 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd1+$ 3 $\mathbb{B}xd1$ $\mathbb{B}f1!$ 4 $\mathbb{B}hd2$ $\mathbb{B}xd1+$ 5 $\mathbb{B}xd1$ $\mathbb{B}f1!$ White has to part with material: 6 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{B}xd1+$, after which Black, having captured the g-pawn, wins easily. (Timofeyev-Lobanov, Chita, 1935)

124) 1 $\mathbb{Q}d6!!$ The ideas of line-closing (the knight cannot capture the bishop — the queen at e6 will be deprived of protection) and decoying (to 1 ... $\mathbb{B}xd6$ will follow 2 $\mathbb{W}b8+$ mating — control of c8 has been removed). At the same time the queen at e6 is unprotected, and there is the threat of 2 $\mathbb{B}f8$ mate. 1-0. (B. Lasker-Kagan, Berlin, 1894)

125) The bishop sacrifice is correct. In reply to 1 ... $\mathbb{W}xb2$ in the Kranz-Selberg game played by correspondence in 1975, there followed 2 $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ $\mathbb{W}xe5$ (2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ — 3 $\mathbb{W}xf5$) 3 $\mathbb{B}xf5$ $\mathbb{W}xe6$ (or 3 ... $\mathbb{W}xe4$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xc7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 5 $\mathbb{W}a3+$ mating)



4 $\mathbb{B}e5!$ 1-0

126) No. 2 $\mathbb{W}xd5$ is followed by 2 ... $\mathbb{B}c1+$! (the ideas of decoying — 3 $\mathbb{B}xc3$ $\mathbb{W}xd5$ and line-closing — 3 $\mathbb{B}xc1$ $\mathbb{W}b1$ mate) (Wiszniewetzki-Auerbach, Lvov, 1912)

127) The miracle happened along the h-file: 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ (clearing the line and at the same time decoying the g-pawn) 2 gf (if 2 $\mathbb{Q}f1$, then, of course, 2 ... $\mathbb{B}h1+$) 2 ... $\mathbb{B}h1+$ Attracting the king into a fatal check. White resigned without waiting for mate: 3 $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ $\mathbb{W}h3+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}h2+$ and 5 ... $\mathbb{W}xf2$ mate. (Hamrin-Jeronne, Correspondence, 1976-1977)

128) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}a3+$! 2 $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ $b4+$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}a4$ (3 $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ is followed by 3 ... $\mathbb{W}c1+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ mate) 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ $\mathbb{B}b5+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{W}c1+$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4+$! Mate is inevitable. 0-1. (Zinn-Minev, Galle, 1967)

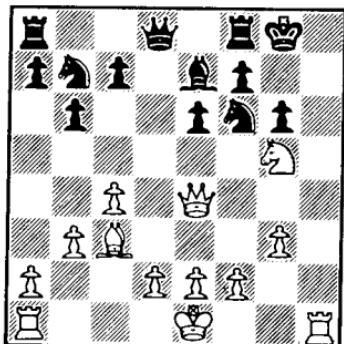
129) 1 ... $d2+$! (attraction into a check) 2 $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4+$! (decoying the knight at c5, after which the a-pawn reaches the prize square) 3 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $a2$. 0-1. (Franke-Metger, Leipzig, 1877)

130) Force a win by means of 1 $\mathbb{W}xg7+$! (first — attracting the king to g7, after which follows a discovered check) 1 ... $\mathbb{W}xg7$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ (if 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}f7$, then 3 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ mate; 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ — 3 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ mate) 3 $\mathbb{B}g8+$! (decoying the rook from f8) 3 ... $\mathbb{B}xg8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$. And now the last discovered check. White not only wins back

the material he has lost, but goes a piece up: 6 ♜xd4+ ♕f7 7 ♜f1+ ♕e7 8 ♜xb2. 1-0. (Westerinen-Sigurjonsson, New York, 1978)

131) In reply to 1... ♔d6? there followed 2 ♜h8+ (if 2 ♜h4, then 2... ♔h5) 2... ♕g7 (2... ♕xh8 3 ♜h4+ ♕g8 4 ♜xf6) 3 ♜h7+ ♕g8 4 ♜h4 and Black resigned. (Trockenheim-Wilczynski, Warsaw, 1939)

There was an escape route, however.



Instead of 1... ♔d6 he should have played 1... ♜xd2+!!, returning the piece sacrificed by White, but at the same time avoiding the mating threats: 2 ♜xd2 ♕xe4 3 ♕xe4 ♔d6 or 2 ♜xd2 ♕xe4+ 3 ♕xe4 f6 and then ♜b7-d6. In the first variation, the bishop is decoyed from the long diagonal, in the second one the king is attracted to a check, which allows Black to gain time for defence against mate.

132) 1 ♜xd7! ♕xd7 (after 1... ♜xd7 2 ♜xc5 Black's position is

without hope) 2 ♜xc6+! ♕xc6 3 ♜a4+! 1-0. The only reply possible 3... ♜d5 is followed by 4 ♜d1+. (Olafsson-Quinteros, Las Palmas, 1974)

133) Instead of 1... f6 (Torre-Ed. Lasker, Chicago, 1926) the tactical stroke 1... c3! would have decided the outcome of the game as early as in the opening. The themes of decoying (the bishop at b2 from defending the queen) or line-closing (the diagonal of the bishop at b2), as a result of which the knight at e5 is deprived of any defence. The intermediate sacrifice 2 ♜xd6 does not help, because after 2... cd White has two pieces en prise.

134) 1... ♜xb1+! 2 ♜xb1 ♕a6! winning. (Johansson-Metzing, Berlin, 1973)

135) Black missed a continuation which begins with 1 ♔f5!!

The ideas of decoying (the rook from the back rank — 1... ♜xd2 2 ♜c8+ as well as the queen on the third move of the combination), line-closing (the knight closes the c8-h3 diagonal and c8 turns out to be unprotected) with an open attack (on the queen and g7). After 1... ♜g5 (if 1... ♜xg2+ 2 ♜xg2 ♜xg2, then 3 ♜xg7+ ♕g8 4 ♜c7 and then 5 ♜xg2, as it threatens ♔f5-h6 mate) 2 ♜xd8+! ♜xd8 3 ♜c8! ♜xc8 4 ♜xg7+ ♕g8 5 ♔d5+ Black is mated. (A possibility which was missed in the Yudovich-Ragozin

game, 10th USSR Championship, Tbilisi, 1937)

136) By means of 1 ... ♜f1!! After 2 ♜xf1 (2 ♜xf1 ♜g3+) 2 ... ♜g3+ White, in order to avoid 3 ♜g1 ♜e2++ 4 ♜h1 ♜g1 mate or 3 ♜g2 ♜e4+ 4 ♜h1 ♜f2+, had to give up the queen: 3 ♜xg3 ♜xg3, and Black realized a material advantage. (Barcza-Antoshin, Sochi, 1966)

137) No! There followed 1 ♜xg6+! ♜xg6 2 ♜xg6 ♜xg6 3 g4!, and Black suffered material losses: 3 ... ♜h2+ 4 ♜g3 ♜d2 5 ♜xf5 ♜f6 6 ♜xd7 (Spielmann-Hönliger, 1936).

138) 1 ♜a6!! By closing the a-file for an instant, White gives his opponent the opportunity of capturing the bishop with the rook and renewing the deadly threat of check on a1. But then, by exploiting the fact that the rook has left the seventh rank, he manages to mate his opponent: 1 ... ♜xa6 2 ♜xh7+! ♜xh7 3 ♜f6 mate.

At the same time after 1 ♜a6 White threatens 2 ♜f6 (2 ... ♜xg7 3 ♜xg7 ♜xg7 4 ♜xh7 mate 2 ... ♜xf6 3 ♜g8 mate). In case of 1 ... ♜xg7 2 ♜xg7 ♜xa6 the same combination wins — 3 ♜xh7+, 4 ♜f6+ and 5 ♜h7 mate.

In the game there followed 1 ... ♜xa6, and after 2 ♜g3! Black resigned. (Richter-NN, 1930)

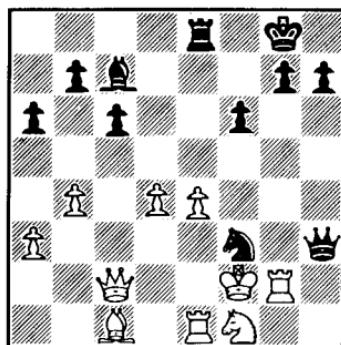
Instead of the tempting 1 ... ♜b3+ Black should have played 1 ... a3! with a very strong threat.

139) 1 ♜xd5 (attraction) 1 ... ♜xd5 2 ♜f6+ (diverting the pawn from g7 in order to open up the g-file) 2 ... gf 3 ♜e6+. White wins the Queen and as a result has in the ending a bishop for two pawns. (Salwe-Marco, Ostend, 1907)

140) 1 ♜e7+! (freeing the fifth rank for the rook) 1 ... ♜xe7 2 ♜xh7+ (attracting into a check, exploiting the pin) 2 ... ♜xh7 3 ♜h5+ ♜g8 4 ♜h8 mate. (Spielmann-Hönliger, Vienna, 1929)

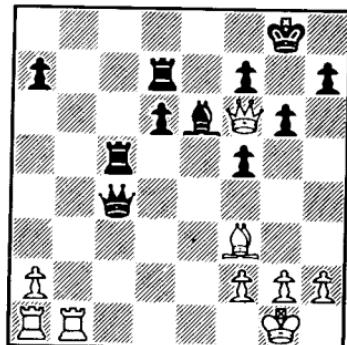
141) The move 1 ♜b4! was made, and Black stopped his clock. The rook cannot be captured (by the queen — because of mate on d8), and in reply to 1 ... ♜c7 will follow 2 ♜xb7. (Sindik-Cebalo, Zagreb, 1978)

142) 1 ... ♜xg2+! (diverting the rook from defending f3) 2 ♜xg2 ♜f3+ 3 ♜f2.



3 ... ♜xg2+! (attracting into a fork) 4 ♜xg2 ♜xe1+. 0-1. (Finotti-Reinhart, Hamburg, 1937)

143) 1 b4! (attracting the queen onto an open file) 1 ... ♕xb4 2 ♘db1 ♕xc4.



To 2 ♘b8+ Black will reply 2 ... ♘c8. White, however has played for this position; he has prepared the diverting manoeuvre 2 ♔e2! after which Black will find it impossible to defend the back rank. The bishop cannot be captured because of mate, in reply to 2 ... ♕c3 will follow 3 ♘b8+ ♘c8 4 ♕xc3, and in case of 2 ... ♕c2 the bishop continues pursuing the queen – 3 ♔d3!! , which ends the game. 1-0. (Bukić-Romanishin, Moscow, 1977)

144) 1 ... ♘f1+! 2 ♘xf1 ♕h2+! 3 ♕xh2 (3 ♕f2 gf=♕+ or 3 ... g1=♕+) 3 ... gf=♕+ and 4 ... ♔xd2. Black is a knight up. (An instructive example.)

145) 1 e5! (clearing the diagonal along which h7 will be made accessible) 1 ... de.

1 ... fe 2 ♔e7+! ♕xe7 3 ♘xf8+ ♕xf8 4 ♕xh7+ and 5 ♘xf8.

2 ♘h4 h6

The threat was 3 ♔e7+ ♕xe7 4 ♕xh7+ ♕f7 5 ♕h5+ or 4 ... ♕h8 5 ♕g6+ etc.

3 ♘xh6 ♘d6 (naturally, 3 ... gh 4 ♔xh6+ is also no escape from defeat)

4 ♔e7+! (freeing the diagonal for the bishop at h7) 4 ... ♕xe7 5 ♘h8+. A model sacrifice attracting the king. 1-0. (Sämisch-Engel, Brno, 1928)

146) Were the knight not at e4, White would deliver mate. So the knight abandons his post – 1 ♔f6+! (freeing the line as a result of which the black king will get an escape square on g7) 1 ... gf 2 ♘f8+! (attracting to a check which helps to close the flight square) 2 ... ♕xf8 3 ♘h6+ ♕g8 4 ♘e8 mate. (Richardson-Delmar, New York, 1887)

147) 1 ♔h3! (diverting the queen) 1 ... ♕xh3 2 ♘xf4. Clearing the long diagonal with, at the same time, an open attack. Black resigned. In reply to 2 ... ♘e8 the over-worked rook will be exploited – 3 ♘xe5+ and 4 ♘f8 mate (the same moves may be made in the reverse order). (Manin-Ruderfer, Tashkent, 1979)

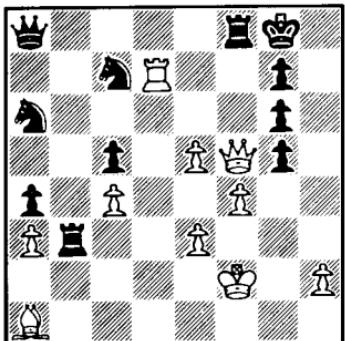
148) 1 ... ♘c1+! (diverting either the rook from defending the queen, or the queen from defending the second rank, including a2) 2 ♘xc1 (2 ♘xc1 ♕xd2) 2 ... ♘xa3+! 3 ♕b1 (3 ba ♘a2 mate) 3 ... ♘a1+!

(and now attraction of the king onto a1, following which the 'geometrical' manoeuvre of the queen leads to mate) 4 ♜xa1 ♜a8+! 5 ♜b1 ♜a2 mate. (Wheeler-Hall, England, 1964)

149) The players had just left the opening (it is easy to see from the diagram that they have played the Dragon Variation of the Sicilian Defence), but it only took one move 1 ♜f5!! to make black resign. If the rook is captured, the diversion of the knight from the defence of h7 wins — 2 ♜d5!, otherwise there is no visible defence to 3 ♜xf6.

In case of 1 ... ♜d8 2 ♜xf6 ♜g8 with the idea of capturing the daring rook (it is not clear if Black saw this possibility) there follows 3 ♜d5! ef 4 ♜xf6 with mate on h7. (Sholdager-Dahlhof, Denmark, 1974/75)

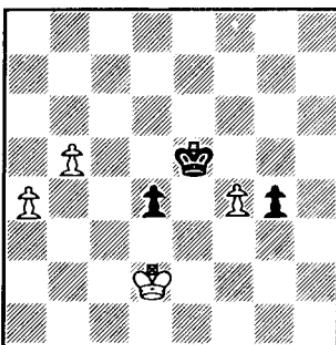
150) 1 ♜g5! hg 2 ♜g6! fg (there was the threat of 3 ♜e7+ and 4 ♜h3 mate).



3 ♜xg7+! The knight sacrifices have opened up the h-file and the seventh rank. Now the bishop which has been lying dormant in ambush joins the battle: 3 ... ♜xg7 4 e6+, and Black was mated. (Grynszpan-Kaminski, Poznan, 1961)

151) Black decided that his partner had missed an elementary fork. There followed 1 ... ♜xd7 2 ♜xd7 ♜c5+ 3 ♜f5 ♜xd7. Black had achieved his aim, but his joy proved to be shortlived. After 4 e6! ♜c8 5 e7 he had to resign. (A game played by amateurs in Belgium in 1968)

152) With correct play Black should win: 1 ... f4 2 gf+ (creating a passed pawn; in reply to 2 a5 or 2 b6 will follow 2 ... ♜d6).

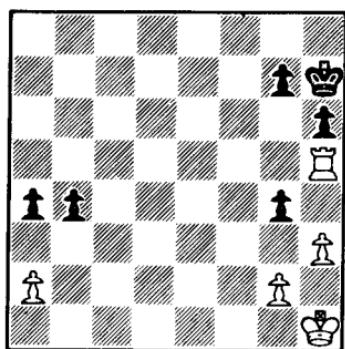


2 ... ♜d6!!

The king is now securely watching over the a- and b-pawns while one of the black pawns makes it to the first rank.

3 a5 g3 4 a6 ♜c7 5 ♜e2 d3+ 6 ♜xd3 g2. 0-1. (Stoltz-Nimzowitsch, Berlin, 1928)

153) In the game Ventura-Salvio (early 17th c.) White succumbed to the temptation of winning a knight: 1 ♜xg4? fg 2 ♜xh5

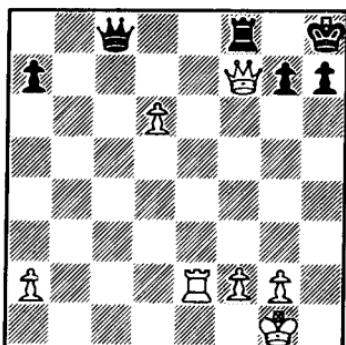


There followed 2 . . . g5! and Ventura had to resign. While the rook is extricating itself out of the encirclement, one of the black pawns reaches the first rank: 3 hg (3 h4 ♜g6!) 3 . . . b3 4 ♜h3 b2 or 4 ab a3!

Correct play is either 1 ♜g1 or 1 ♜f3.

154) By sacrificing material and then the queen White wins: 1 ♜xb2! ♜xb2 2 ♜xc8+! ♜xc8 3 d7! (Engels-Maroczy, Dresden, 1936)

155) 1 ♜xf8+ ♜xf8 2 ♜f7! (attention: the back rank!) 2 . . . ♜c8.



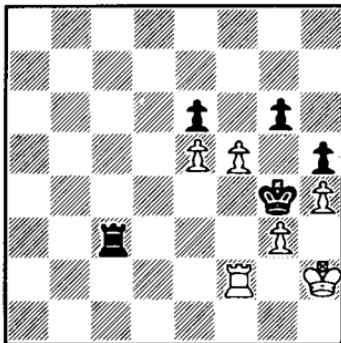
3 ♜xf8+! ♜xf8 4 d7! 1-0 (Capablanca-Gromer, New York, 1913)

156) If 1 d7, then 1 . . . ♜a8. The path to the promotion square is opened up by the sacrifice 1 ♜xa6!!

After 1 . . . ♜xa6 2 d7 ♜a8 3 ♜c6! bc 4 bc ♜xc6 5 d8=♕+ ♜g7 6 ♜e5+ f6 7 ♜xf6+! ♜xf6 8 ♜e7+ ♜h6 9 ♜xf6 White reduced the affair to a winning queen endgame. The following moves were made 9 . . . ♜c7+ 10 f4 ♜c5 11 c4! ♜f2 (11 . . . ♜xc4 12 ♜f8+ ♜h5 13 g4+ ♜h4 14 ♜h6 mate) 12 ♜e5 ♜d2 13 c5 ♜c2 14 ♜g5+ ♜g7 15 ♜e7+ ♜h6 16 c6 e5 17 ♜g5+, and Black resigned. (N. Garcia-J. Miles, Women's Olympiad, Buenos Aires, 1978)

157) With Black winning after 1 . . . ♜f3!! White's king is immobile (2 ♜g2 ♜e1+) and if 2 ♜d6+, then 2 . . . ♜g5 with the threat 3 . . . ♜d4. 0-1 (Sternberg-Pawelczak, Berlin, 1964)

158) 1 ♜h2 is a cunning move. White sets his opponent a trap by inviting him to play 1 ... ♜g4. Then 2 f5!!



In reply to 2 ... ef or 2 ... gf there follows 3 ♜f4 mate! And if 2 ... ♜xg3, then 3 f6! and the pawn promotes to a queen. (Radzikowska-Erenska, Poland, 1978)

The correct move is 1 ... ♜e4, after which the rook endgame should end in a draw.

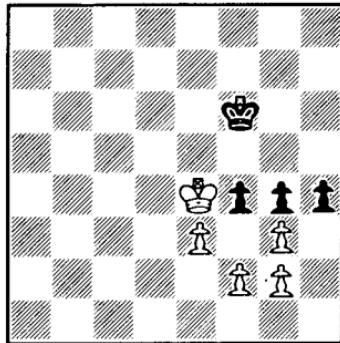
159) By attempting to force the enemy king away from his pawns, the white king has distanced himself too far away from his own forces. Black wins by realizing a pawn storm: 1 ... f4!!

If 2 gf, then 2 ... h4 and the h-pawn promotes to a queen. In reply to 2 ef there also follows 2 ... h4! (diverting the g-pawn) 3 gh (otherwise 3 ... h3 or 3 ... hg and ... e3) 3 ... g3 4 fg e3.

There is no escape for White in 2 ♜d5, in reply to which, like in the previous variations, the brave

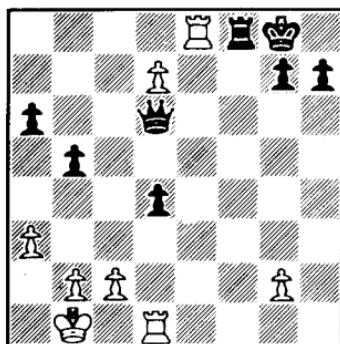
h-pawn puts itself en prise — 2 ... h4 3 ♜xe4.

If 3 gh, then 3 ... g3!; 3 ef h3 or 3 ... hg



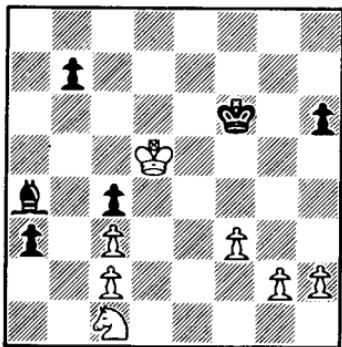
3 ... f3! 4 gf h3, and White had to resign. (Pomar-Quadrás, Olot, 1974)

160) 1 ♜xf7+! ♜xf7 2 ♜xe8+ ♜xe8 3 ♜xe8+ ♜f8 4 d7 ♜d6.



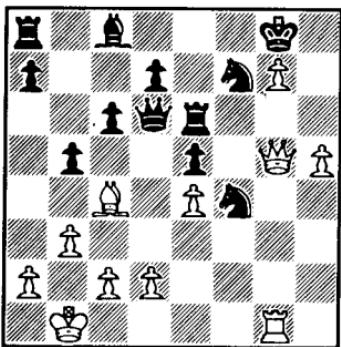
5 ♜f1!! 1-0 (Velimirović-Csom, Amsterdam, 1974)

161) 1 ... a3 2 ♜c1 ♜a4! 3 ♜xd5.



It may seem that Black has achieved nothing: in reply to 3 ... ♕xc2 there will follow 4 ♔xc4 and then ♖c4-b4. However the elegant 3 ... ♜b3!! gives the pawns fantastic powers: 4 cb a2!! (naturally, not 4 ... cb? 5 ♜xb3) 5 ♜xa2 cb and the knight is helpless. (Agapov-Kurmashov, Kaliningrad, 1978)

162) 1 ♜xh6!! (the g-pawn will be supported by the h-pawn!) 1 ... ♜xh6 (1 ... ♜xh6 2 ♜xf7+ ♜xf7 3 g8=♕+) 2 ♜g5 ♜f7.



3 ♜d8+!! ♜xd8 4 h6. There is no defence to h6-h7+. 1-0 (Teichmann-NN, Zürich, 1920)

Instead of resigning, Black can escape by the paradoxical 4 ... ♜d4!! 5 h7+ ♜f7 6 g8=♕+ ♜e7 7 h8=♕d6! — author.

163) The black king has no squares to withdraw to. By sacrificing the rook and then the queen, Black achieves a stalemate position: 1 ... ♜f7+! 2 ♜xf7.

If White declines to capture the rook, 2 ♜e8 stalemate is achieved by means of 2 ... ♜c6+ 3 ♜xf7 ♜g6+ 4 ♜e7 ♜f7+ 5 ♜d6 ♜d5+ 6 ♜c7 ♜c6+.

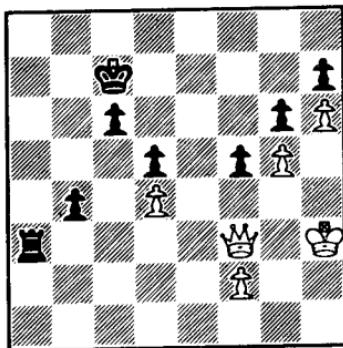
2 ... ♜g6+ 3 ♜e7 ♜f7+, and then just as in the variation 2 ... ♜e8 (A slightly modified position from the game Pribyl-Ornstein, Tallinn, 1977)

164) 1 ♜xe6+! ♜xe6 2 gf+ ♜xf5 3 ♜xg2, and a draw. (Lipnitzky-NN, Berlin, 1945)

165) 1 ♜d3!! ♜xd3 2 h5+ ♜h6 (after 2 ... ♜xh5 3 ♜xh7+ ♜xh7 White is stalemated) 3 ♜g7+! ♜xg7 4 h6+ and stalemate nevertheless. (Mindadze-Kalugin, Yalta, 1978)

If Black does not capture the bishop immediately, but first plays 1 ... ♜h1+ and only after 2 ♜xh1 – 2 ... ♜xd3, in an attempt to exploit the extra pawn in a queen endgame, then 3 ♜e8+ ♜h6 4 ♜f8+ ♜h5 5 ♜f7+, and Black has to repeat the moves, for 5 ... ♜g6 6 ♜xd5+ gives White chances of winning.

166) It is not worth sacrificing the queen since it does not lead to a pawn endgame. After 1 ... ♜xf3+ 2 ♜xf3 ♜a3 White escapes in a miraculous manner.



3 ♜h4!! The forced 3 . . . ♜xf3 leads to stalemate. (Horowitz-Pavey, USA Championship, 1951)

167) Black managed to get a draw after a preliminary rook sacrifice — 1 . . . ♜xf2+ 2 ♜xf2 ♜d2+ 3 ♜g1 ♜e1+ 4 ♜h2 ♜f2+ 5 ♜h3, and then a knight sacrifice — 5 . . . ♜f4+ 6 ♜gx4.

Or 6 ♜h4 ♜xg6+ 7 ♜xg6 ♜h2+ 8 ♜g5 ♜xg3+ and a draw.

6 . . . ♜f1+ 7 ♜g4 ♜xf4+ 8 ♜h5 ♜h4+. (Czarnecki-Noordijk, Holland, 1953)

168) If White removes the h-pawn and the rook from the board, and then plays b4-b5, he will be stalemated, and thus 1 ♜h6!! ♜xh6 2 h8=♕+ ♜xh8 3 b5 and a draw. (Marshall-NN, New York, 1923)

Black can avoid stalemate only by playing 3 . . . ♜d7 4 cd c5 (or 4 . . . c6). But after 5 bc he loses (5 . . . ♜b8 6 ♜xb6).

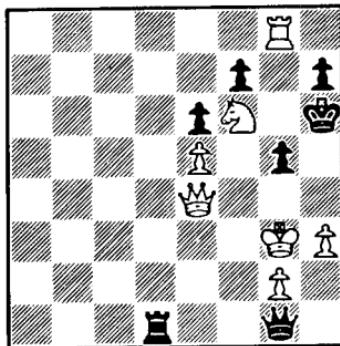
169) Black escapes by means of 2 . . . ♜xg1+ 3 ♜xg1 ♜a1+ 4 ♜h2.

Or 4 ♜f2 ♜d4+ 5 ♜xg3 (5 ♜e2 ♜e5+ and 6 . . . ♜xf5) 5 . . . ♜f2+, and the 'mad' queen chases the king (h5 must remain under attack for this).

4 . . . ♜xg2+ 5 ♜xg2 (5 ♜xg2? ♜e5+ and 6 . . . ♜xf5) 5 . . . ♜f1+! A draw. (Alexeyev-Kirpichnikov, Riga, 1964)

170) Any attempts at action (like 1 . . . ♜d7 2 ♜g3) are obviously in White's favour. A draw is forced by means of 1 . . . ♜xh3+! 2 ♜xh3 ♜e6+! 3 ♜xe6—stalemate. (Walter-Nagy, Györ, 1924)

171) 1 . . . ♜d1+ 2 ♜h2 ♜g1+ 3 ♜g3

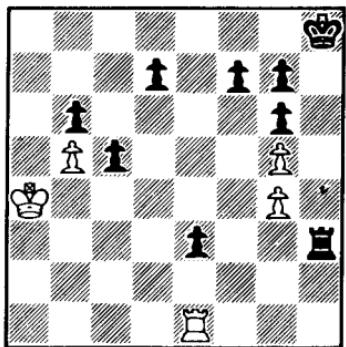


At this point White abandoned his calculations, thinking that there were no more checks. There followed, however, 3 . . . ♜d3+! 4 ♜xd3 ♜e3+ 5 ♜xe3 stalemate. The unblockaded g-pawn turned out to be pinned! This is the way the Gogolev-Varshavsky game (Aluksne, 1967) ended.

172) 1 $\mathbb{R}a8!!$ $\mathbb{R}xa8$ (it is essential to take the rook, otherwise check on a2 will follow) 2 $\mathbb{Q}a2+!$ $\mathbb{R}xa2$ stalemate. (Enigk-Effel, Correspondence, 1957)

173) By exploiting the idea of stalemate, White saves a seemingly hopeless endgame: 1 d6!! cd 2 c5 dc.

Of course, not 2 ... bc? in view of 3 b6, and can even win! Now that a5 and b4 are cut off from the king, White has to cut off the third rank.



3 $\mathbb{R}xe3!$

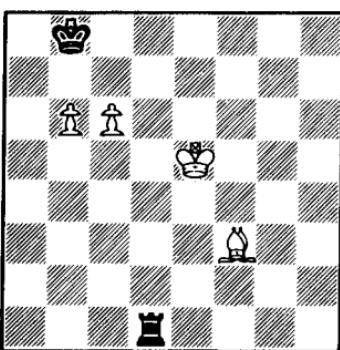
If the rook is captured it will be stalemate. It is true that Black can play 3 ... $\mathbb{R}h4$ (if 3 ... $\mathbb{R}h2$ or 3 ... $\mathbb{R}h1$, then 4 $\mathbb{R}h3+$, forcing stalemate), but then 4 $\mathbb{R}h3!$ $\mathbb{R}h7$ 5 $\mathbb{R}e3!$ The threat of mate on e8 forces Black to play the rook back to h4, after which the affair is reduced to a repetition of moves – a draw! (A study by A. Selesneyev, 1919; it is very reminiscent of a position in a real game)

174) 2 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ wins, whereas 2 $\mathbb{Q}e5?$

allows Black to escape by exploiting the idea of stalemate: 2 ... $\mathbb{R}f1$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$.

In reply to White's planned 3 $c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ there follows 4 ... $\mathbb{R}d7!$

In view of the king's position on e3 Black would have had to resign – White would have simply captured the f-pawn with the king.



3 ... $\mathbb{R}d7!$

If the rook is captured it will be stalemate. In reply to 4 $\mathbb{Q}d5$, Black once again puts the rook en prise by means of 4 ... $\mathbb{R}b7$. 5 cb leads to stalemate, and otherwise 5 ... $\mathbb{R}xb6$ is a draw. (Goldstein-Shakhnovich, Moscow, 1946)

175) Deliver mate – 1 $\mathbb{W}xe6+!$ fe 2 $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4 ef+ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ mate. (Machulsky-M. Gurevich, 1977)

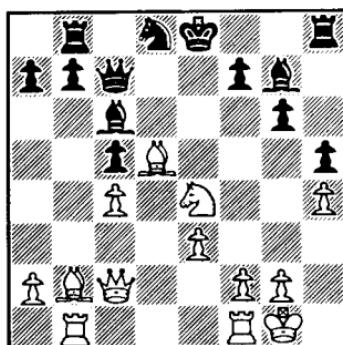
176) White mated in two moves: 1 $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ (so that the king cannot shelter on c7, the c-file must be opened) 1 ... cb 2 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ mate. (Locasto-Zakrewski, 1974)

177) Black missed the mate in three moves and after 2 ♕f6+! resigned the game. In reply to 2 ... ♘xf6 there follows 3 ♜xg6+ (the f-pawn is pinned, which means that g6 is unprotected) 3 ... ♘g7 4 ♜h7 mate. (Reshevsky-Yanofsky, Lugano, 1968)

It is interesting that about fifteen years earlier, in the Candidates' Tournament in Zürich, Reshevsky himself missed a stroke like that, although he managed to get away with a slight scare.

Szabo

Reshevsky



Black to Move

Black continued 1 ... 0-0?, to which there followed 2 ♕f6+! ♘xf6? (stronger is 2 ... ♘h8, but the grandmaster had 'forgotten' that, with the king on g8, the g-pawn is undefended). Here, instead of mating (3 ♜xg6+) Szabo played 3 ♘xf6? The game ended in a draw.

178) 1 ♜f6!! Black resigned. The queen cannot be captured because

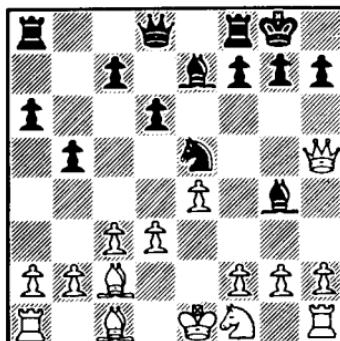
of mate. And if it is not captured, there is no defence to the 'X-ray radiation' 2 ♘h8 mate. (Szabo-Bakonyi, Hungarian Championship, 1951)

179) 1 ♜f4 ♘xd3? 2 ♜f6!! 1-0 (Karstens-Ullrich, Swinemünde, 1932)

180) A simultaneous advance on mate and the rook at d8 – 1 ♘g8!! forced Black to lay down arms. (Trifunović-Aaron, Beverwijk, 1962) The tactical blow became possible after Black had removed the second guard of the rook at d8 with the move ♘b8-b6.

181) The move 1 ... ♘c8! forces capitulation, for in reply to 2 ♜xa6 there follows 2 ... ♘c3 mate. (Wade-Kirov, Birmingham, 1974)

182) The move 1 ♘xe5? leads to the loss of a piece, for after 1 ... ♘xe5 White cannot play 2 ♜xh5 because of 2 ... ♘g4!



This is the way the Busvine-Birnberg game ended (London, 1924).

183) 1 $\mathbb{W}g8+!$ $\mathbb{B}xg8$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ the f-pawn is pinned and the threat of mate on h8 cannot be avoided. (Abrahams-Thynne, Liverpool, 1932)

184) The winning moves are 1 $\mathbb{B}h5!$ $\mathbb{B}xh5$ 2 $\mathbb{B}a6+$ and 3 $\mathbb{B}a5+$. A slightly altered position from an ancient 15th Century manuscript.

185) The apparently tempting move 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ loses a pawn after the reply 2 $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ (2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$ $\mathbb{B}g7$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xd4+$ f6 5 $\mathbb{Q}xc8$ $\mathbb{B}axc8$) Spilker-Gutop, Moscow Championship, 1976

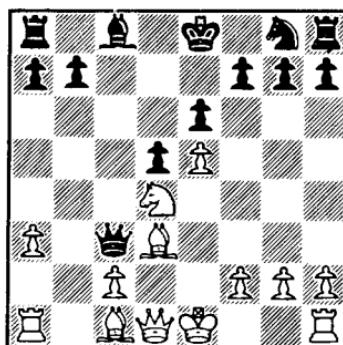
186) 1 $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$ ed 2 $\mathbb{Q}xd7!$ $\mathbb{W}xd7$ 3 $\mathbb{B}xh7+!$ A consequence of the over-worked knight at f6. Black resigned because he loses the queen — 3 ... $\mathbb{B}h8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ (Klundt-Gerer, West Germany, 1970)

187) 1 $\mathbb{W}g4+!!$ (with the aim of forcing Black to block g4) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xh6+!$ (diverting the g-pawn and at the same time clearing the way for the bishop) 2 ... gh 3 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ mate. (Vaccaroni-Mazzochi, Denmark, 1960)

188) 1 f6 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ (1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ bc 4 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$) 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ To 2 ... bc follows 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$. 1-0 (Hvenekilde-Christensen, Denmark, 1960)

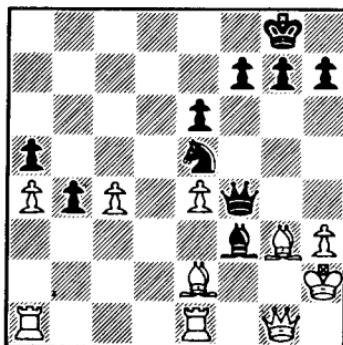
189) 1 $\mathbb{B}h4$ $\mathbb{W}a3$ 2 $\mathbb{W}xg7+!!$ $\mathbb{B}xg7$ 3 $\mathbb{h}8=\mathbb{W}+$ $\mathbb{B}xh8$ 4 $\mathbb{B}g4+$ $\mathbb{B}h6$ 5 $\mathbb{B}h1$ mate. (N. Zhuravlyev-V. Zhuravlyev, Liepaya, 1961)

190) After 1 ... cd 2 cd the tempting 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd4?$ (calculated to win material) leads to defeat: 3 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{W}c3+$.



4 $\mathbb{W}d2!$ $\mathbb{W}xa1$ (4 ... $\mathbb{W}xd4$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}b5+$ and 5 $\mathbb{W}xd4$) 5 c3! The queen, which has detached itself from the rest of its forces, lands in a trap — the threat $\mathbb{Q}d4-b3$ cannot be avoided. (Booth-Fazekas, London, 1940)

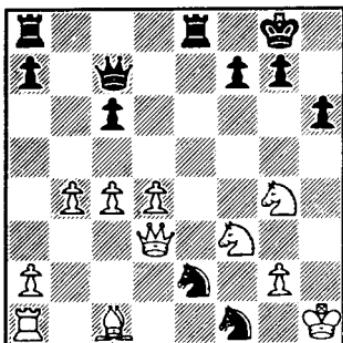
191) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}g1+!$ 2 $\mathbb{W}xg1.$



The queen has removed a flight square from the king, which allows Black to deliver mate, having opened up the h-file: 2 ... ♔g4+! 3 hg ♕h6+ 4 ♜h4 ♕xh4 mate. (Molinari-Cabral, Uruguay, 1943)

192) With the move 1 ... ♜e4 (counting only on the withdrawal of the queen) Black lost the game. There followed 2 ♔g5!, after which he had to resign: 2 ... ♜xc2 3 ♜xb7, similarly 2 ... hg 3 ♜xe4 leads to material losses, and 2 ... ♜xg2 is out of the question because of mate. (Thörnblom-Wahlbom, Stockholm, 1973)

193) If in reply to ♕c7-h2+ White were forced to capture the queen with the f-knight or the g-knight, he would be mated with the move ♔h5-g3. The queen, however, is not supported by any man, and it could be captured not only by the f3 knight but by the king. The aim is achieved by the preliminary manoeuvre 1 ... ♔hg3+ 2 ♕h2 ♔f1++ 3 ♕h1, and now ...

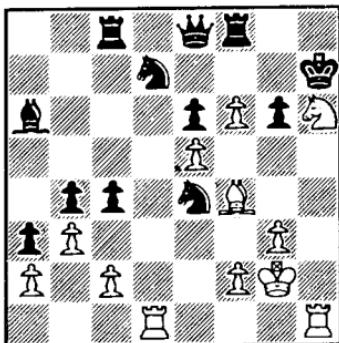


3 ... ♕e3!!

The idea of line-closing. The immediate 3 ... ♕h2+ is not suitable; 4 ♜fxh2, and there is no mate on g3. But after 4 ♜xe3 the queen is isolated and there follows a block — 4 ... ♕h2+! 5 ♜xh2 ♕fg3 mate. (Pilar-Kvičala, Prague, 1899)

194) There followed 1 ♕h6! and Black resigned. (Janowski-Sämisch, Marienbad, 1925) The threat is mate on h7. The capture of the queen is met by 2 ♜g3 mate. That same move (with the threat ♜d3-c4+ and then ♕h6xg7 mate) wins in case of 1 ... f6.

195) White mates in eight moves: 1 ♕xh7+! ♜xh7 2 ♜h1+ ♕g8 3 ♜h6+ ♕h7.



4 ♜f7+ ♕g8 5 ♜h8+! ♜xf7 6 ♜h7+ ♕g8 7 ♜g7+ ♕h8 8 ♜h1 mate. (Platz-Just, East Germany, 1972)

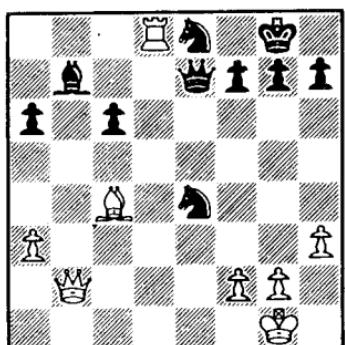
196) The move 1 ... ♜f1 decided the result of the struggle — White resigned. The capture of the bishop

is essential (otherwise the pawns on h3 and g4 are lost) but then c4 becomes available for the black king, and by taking the route c4-d3-e2 he sets off to capture the white pawns. (Nikolac-Timman, Wijk-aan-Zee, 1979)

197) The correct move is 1 g3, leading to the opening up of the g-file, which is good for White.

In the Unzicker-Dankert game (Munich, 1979) White, having decided to exchange the strong knight at e4, played 1 $\mathbb{Q}c3?$ After 1 . . . $\mathbb{W}g3+!!$ he had to resign the game (2 $\mathbb{B}xg3$ hg+ 3 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}f2$ mate; and if 2 $\mathbb{Q}h1$, then 2 . . . $\mathbb{W}xf3$ 3 gf $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ and 4 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xd3$, with an extra rook).

198) 1 $\mathbb{B}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 2 $\mathbb{W}b2!$ (the purpose of this move by White and of the following one is to divert the enemy queen from the defence of the knight at e8) 2 . . . $\mathbb{W}e7$



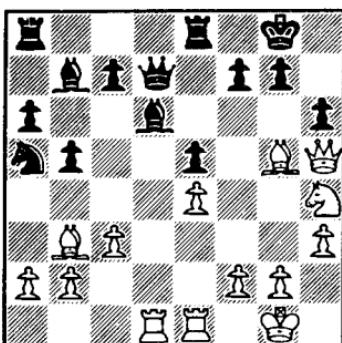
3 $\mathbb{W}xb7$ (exploiting the fact that the queen is overworked through having to defend two targets) 3

. . . $\mathbb{W}xd8$ 4 $\mathbb{W}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5 $\mathbb{W}g8$ mate. (Malich-Hort, Amsterdam, 1971)

199) 1 $\mathbb{A}g5!$

The bishop cannot be captured either by the pawn (1 . . . hg 2 $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ with mate on h8) or by the queen (1 . . . $\mathbb{W}xg5$ 2 $\mathbb{W}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 3 $\mathbb{W}g8$ mate).

1 . . . $\mathbb{W}d7$ 2 $\mathbb{B}ad1$ $\mathbb{A}d6.$



3 $\mathbb{A}xh6!$

Eliminating the king's pawn guard. The action of bringing the rook at e1 into the battle allows White to mate his opponent.

3 . . . gh

If 3 . . . $\mathbb{W}xb3$, then 4 $\mathbb{A}xg7$ $\mathbb{W}xg7$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}f5+.$

4 $\mathbb{W}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 5 $\mathbb{W}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ (there was the threat of 6 $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7 $\mathbb{W}h8$ mate) 6 $\mathbb{B}e3.$ 1-0 (Geller-Portisch, Moscow, 1963)

200) 1 $\mathbb{A}f6$ g6 2 $\mathbb{W}h4$ will be followed by 2 . . . $\mathbb{B}e8$, which frees f8 for the bishop. The following is decisive: 1 $\mathbb{A}xh7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 2 $\mathbb{A}f6!$ gf (2 . . . g6 3 $\mathbb{W}h4+$ and 4 $\mathbb{W}h8$ mate; 2 . . . $\mathbb{B}g8$ 3 $\mathbb{W}h5$ mate).

By sacrificing two pieces White has opened up the enemy king's position and now mates him: 3 ♜h4+ ♜g8 4 ♜g3+ ♜h7 5 ♜e4! 1-0 (Möhring-Fiensch, East Germany, 1961)

201) White was convinced that Black, apart from 2 ... gf, had no other reply. However the unforeseen intermediate move 2 ... ♜d5! forced him to lay down arms. In reply to 3 ♜xd5 comes the 'long check' 3 ... ♜b1+. (Cvetković-Nikolić, Čateške Toplice, 1968)

202) To win! After the decoying sacrifice 1 ... ♜h1+!! 2 ♜xh1 the move 2 ... ef creates the threats 3 ... fe=♛+ and 3 ... ♜h8 mate. This is the way a display game by Nimzowitsch ended. (Copenhagen, 1925)

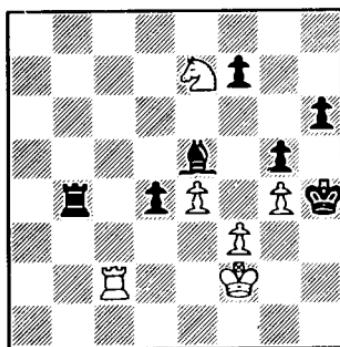
203) Win by means of 1 ... ♜xb2+! 2 ♜xb2 (in reply to 2 ♜xb2 the following leads to victory: 2 ... ♜b4+ 3 ♜a1 ♜a4+) 2 ... ♜c3+ 3 ♜c1 ♜a3!

The combination 'rests' on this subtle move which White has failed to foresee. After 4 ♜d3 ♜a1+ 5 ♜d2 ♜xb2+ 6 ♜e1 ♜e4! White resigned.

7 ♜xe4 is followed by 7 ... ♜b4+ with 8 ... ♜xe4. It is not even a question of extra pawns, seeing as White's king is totally bared. (Minić-Fischer, Rovinj, 1970)

204) The choice of retreats is not very big — to h5 and to g7 (1 ...

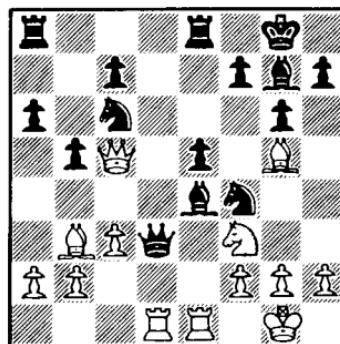
♞f6? 2 ♜d5+). The seemingly active 1 ... ♜h5 leads to defeat after 2 g4+! ♜xh4.



3 ♜g2! There is no defence to the threat 4 ♜f5 mate. (Jansson-Ivarsson, Uppsala, 1973)

The correct move is 1 ... ♜g7.

205) There followed a sequence which had been prepared by both partners: 1 ♜e3 ♜xd3 2 ♜c5 ♜xe4 (in reply to 2 ... ♜d7 White had also planned 3 ♜ad1) 3 ♜ad1.



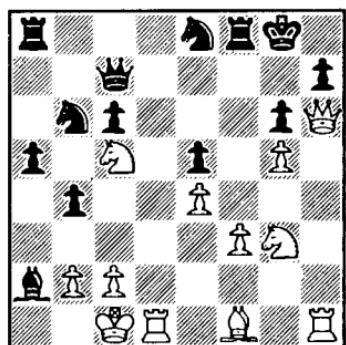
At this point White abandoned his calculations, thinking that his opponent had fallen into a trap and lost his queen. But Black had seen further, having prepared 3 ...

$\mathbb{Q}h3+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{W}xf3!$ 0-1 (Teplov-Balgin, Moscow, 1958)

206) Black reckoned that the knight would withdraw either to e2 or to b1 and that, then, by means of 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}e6$ he could go on to active play on the \mathbb{W} -side . . .

There followed, however, 2 $\mathbb{Q}a4!$ (diverting the knight at b6 from the defence of c4) and it became clear that 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ would be followed by 3 $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{B}f7$ 4 g5 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ (4 . . . $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 5 $\mathbb{W}xh7+$) 5 $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ gh 6 g6 winning.

The threat 3 $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ and 4 $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ was parried by Black with 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}e6$. But then the knight which Black had planned to edge off joined in the offensive: 3 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ 4 g5 $\mathbb{Q}e8$.



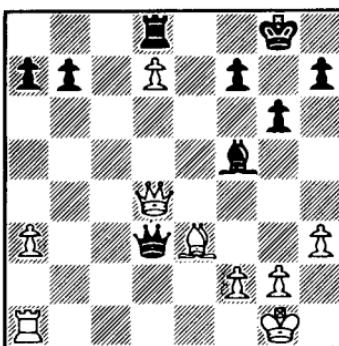
5 $\mathbb{B}d7!$ The idea of line-closing. 1-0 (Wach-Gonsiorowski, Bydgoszcz, 1973)

207) 1 $\mathbb{B}xd6!!$ ed 2 $\mathbb{Q}e8!$ Mate on f6 is inevitable, Black resigned. (Golenev-Lokhanin, 1966)

Declining the capture of the rook does not save Black either. If 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}h3$, then 2 $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ threatening not only 2 gh (the rook still cannot be captured because of 3 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ mate), but also 2 $\mathbb{B}xc6$ (2 . . . bc 3 $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ mate). The other bishop move — 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}e6$ is unsuitable because of 2 $\mathbb{B}xe6$.

208) Play 1 d7! After this White loses a pawn, but . . . creates a mating net by exploiting the weakness of the black squares.

1 . . . $\mathbb{B}d8.$



2 $\mathbb{W}f6!$

Now, if 2 . . . $\mathbb{W}xd7$, then 3 $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ first of all chasing the rook off the d-file (to deprive Black of the move $\mathbb{W}d7-d4$) and then playing 4 $\mathbb{Q}h6$.

But with 2 . . . $\mathbb{B}xd7$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}h6$ we already have the move 3 . . . $\mathbb{W}d4$. What then?

Then 4 $\mathbb{B}e1!$ and in reply to 4 . . . $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (4 . . . $\mathbb{B}d8$ 5 $\mathbb{W}xd4$; 4 . . . $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 5 $\mathbb{B}xe6!$) — 5 $\mathbb{B}xe4$. 1-0 (Dobirzin-Böhnsch, Halle, 1977)

209) By continuing 1 f6! (the ideas of decoying line-closing and pawn promotion) White wins.

1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe2$.

After 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 2 $\mathbb{W}xd6+$ or 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 2 fg $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 3 $\mathbb{W}xd6+$ Black loses a rook. In reply to 1 ... gf the following is decisive: 2 g7 $\mathbb{B}g2$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ $\mathbb{B}xg5$ (3 ... fg 4 g8= \mathbb{W}) 4 $\mathbb{W}xg5$ $\mathbb{W}xe2$ 5 $\mathbb{W}g1$.

2 fg $\mathbb{B}xd2$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xd2$ $\mathbb{W}e2$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}c1$. (Tal-Koblenc, Jurmala, 1976)

210) No. In the game between Marić-Gligorić (Yugoslavia, 1962) in reply to 1 $\mathbb{B}xf5$ there followed 1 ... $\mathbb{B}b3!!$ and White was forced to resign — not only does he not win back a piece, but he loses a rook, or the queen for a rook.

211) 1 ... $\mathbb{B}b4!$

The rook is threatening to reach a2, and so it has to be captured, but then the passed pawns become terribly powerful.

2 cb (naturally, it is hopeless for White to play 2 $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ ab 3 cb $\mathbb{B}b5$ and 4 ... $\mathbb{B}xb4$) 2 ... a4! 3 b5+ (or else 3 ... a3) 3 ... $\mathbb{B}xb5$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ c3 5 $\mathbb{B}b1$ $\mathbb{B}c4$, White resigned. He would have had to give up the rook and the bishop for the pawns. (Kmoch-Nimzowitsch, Niendorf, 1927)

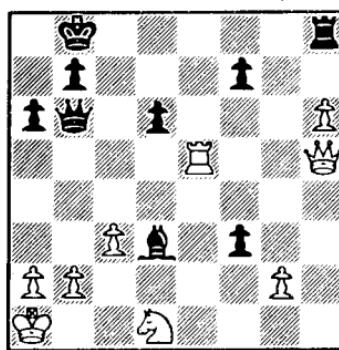
212) 1 $\mathbb{A}a6!$

The idea of decoying. As a result

of the tactical operation White exchanges the bishop at e7 and wins material.

1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ (or 1 ... $\mathbb{W}c8$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{W}xc6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{W}xb7$ 4 $\mathbb{W}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}h6+$) 2 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{W}e8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 4 $\mathbb{W}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}h6+$. (Klaman-Smyslov, 15th USSR Championship, Leningrad, 1947)

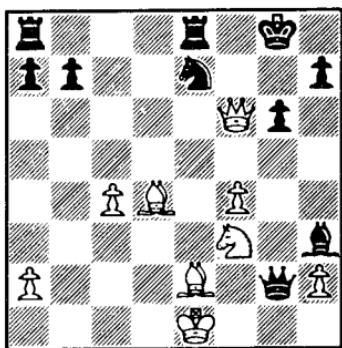
213) After the move 6 ... f3!, closing the d1-h5 diagonal, White resigned.



The pawn cannot be captured by the queen because of 7 ... de, and in reply to 7 gf, 7 ... $\mathbb{W}g1$ wins. (Neishtadt-Petrosian, Moscow Championship, 1956)

214) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}h3!!$

To 2 gh there will follow 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}f5$. And if 2 $\mathbb{Q}d4$, then 2 ... $\mathbb{W}xg2+$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ (3 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ or 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}c6$) 3 ... f6! 4 $\mathbb{W}xf6$.

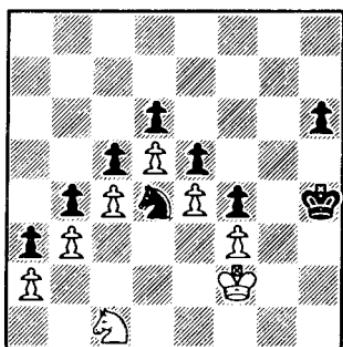


4 . . . ♜xe2+! (attracting to a discovered check) 5 ♜xe2 ♖d5+ and 6 . . . ♖xf6. Thus after 1 . . . ♜h3 White resigned the game. (Zilber-Suetin, Leningrad, 1957)

215) He can, by continuing 1 . . . ♖f1!!

If the knight is captured, then after 2 . . . ♜g3 White is in zugzwang (3 ♖e2 ♜xf3 or 3 ♜e1 ♜g2 4 ♖e2 ♜xf3, and by capturing the e-pawn, Black wins easily).

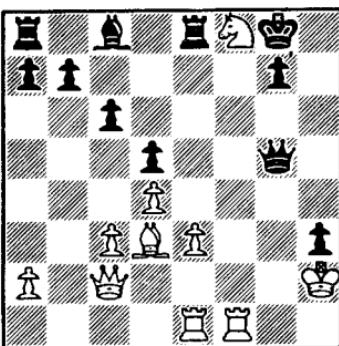
There is no other option but to play 2 ♖e2. Then 2 . . . ♜e3 3 ♖c1 (protecting a2 and b3) 3 . . . ♖c2 4 ♖d3 ♖d4 5 ♖c1.



5 . . . ♜h3!

Once again White is in zugzwang. In reply to 6 ♖d3 (otherwise Black wins the f-pawn) the immediate 6 . . . ♖xb3, as well as what occurred in the Negrea-Ciocaltea game (Sinaia, 1958) — the preliminary 6 . . . ♜h2 7 ♖c1 h5 8 ♖d3 and only now 8 . . . ♖xb3! After 9 ♖xe5 (9 ab a2) 9 . . . de White resigned. In case of 10 d6 the pawn is easily held back (10 . . . ♖d4 11 d7 ♖e6). And if 10 ab, then 10 . . . a2 and the a-pawn queens first.

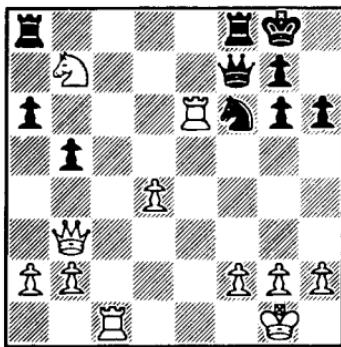
216) After 1 ♖g6 hg 2 ♖xf8 gh+ White can withdraw the king not only to h1, but also to h2, which sharply changes the evaluation of the position.



Only at this point did Black notice the error in his calculations, but it was already too late. After 3 . . . ♜g2+ 4 ♜xg2 hg there are no checks, and so White does not have to capture the g-pawn. The intermediate move 5 ♜h7+ allows him to stay a piece up: 5 ♜h8 6 ♜xg2 ♖g4 7 ♜h1 ♖xf8 8 ♜f5+ ♜g8 9 ♜xg4.

In the game 3 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ was followed by 3 ... $\mathbb{W}h6$ (3 ... $\mathbb{B}xf8?$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ and mate on the following move) 4 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 5 $\mathbb{W}f2$, and White won. (Alatortsev-Estrin, Moscow Championship, 1946)

217) No. The tempting 1 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ fg 2 $\mathbb{B}xe6$ $\mathbb{W}f7$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ is met by a refutation.



3 ... $\mathbb{Q}d5!$

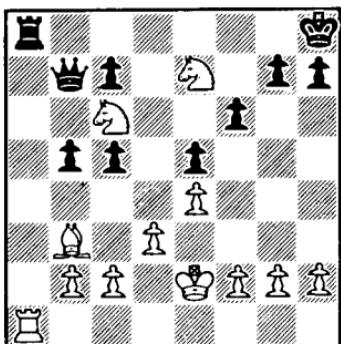
The weakness of the first rank allows Black to remain a piece up. In Simagin-Beilin (Riga, 1946) there followed 4 $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{W}xb7$ 5 $\mathbb{B}c5$ $\mathbb{B}ad8$ 6 $\mathbb{B}e5$ $\mathbb{W}f7$, and Black won.

218) The rook exchange (otherwise Black seizes the a-line), although advantageous from the positional point of view, is met by a refutation.

2 $\mathbb{Q}xc5!!$

In reply to 1 ... $\mathbb{B}xa1$ comes 3 $\mathbb{Q}d8!$, attacking the queen and at the same time threatening mate.

Well, and what if 2 ... dc?



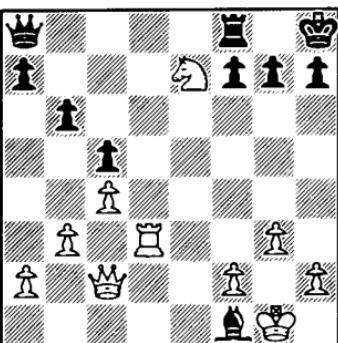
Then 3 $\mathbb{B}a7!!$, diverting the rook from the eighth rank, and to 3 ... $\mathbb{B}xa7$ — 4 $\mathbb{Q}d8!$ with the same threats. (A variation from the Levenfish-Flamberg game, Wilna, 1912)

In order to avoid a7 being attacked by the bishop White realized the preliminary exchange on c5.

219) To win the game with the striking move 1 ... $\mathbb{B}g2!$ The capture of the rook is followed by 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}e3+$. At the same time there is the threat of 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ mate. If, let us say, 2 $\mathbb{W}f1$, then 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}f4+ 3 \mathbb{W}xf4$ gf 4 $\mathbb{B}xg2$ $e5$, winning the pawn endgame. 0-1 (Bellon-S. Garcia, Cienfuegos, 1976)

220) After 1 ... $\mathbb{W}a2+$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{W}xc4$ 3 $\mathbb{W}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ White does not have to capture the d-pawn.

221)



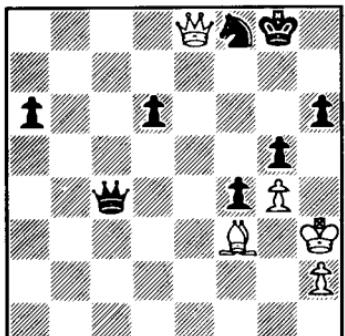
By sacrificing the bishop and the queen, he saves himself with the aid of stalemate: 4 ♜e4+! ♕xe4 5 ♜g7+! (Sliwa-Doda, Poland, 1967)

But maybe Black played the king to g6 in vain and it might have been worth it to play 3 . . . ♜g8 instead? Then White would also have achieved stalemate: 4 ♜e8+ ♜f8.

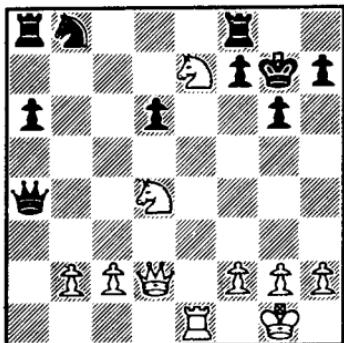
'If, reasoned the player with the black pieces, White captures the bishop, I will immediately equalize on material: 7 ♜xf1 ♜h1+ 8 ♜e2 ♜e4+ and 9 . . . ♜xe7. There is nothing else — after all, there is the threat of mate and in addition the rook is en prise. But if the diagonal is closed by the move 7 ♜d5, then the bishop will withdraw to h3, and 8 ♜h5 does not lead anywhere because of mate on g2 . . .'

But the move 7 ♜d5 was made and Black . . . immediately resigned! It threatens a problematical mate which he had not foreseen in his preliminary calculations: 8 ♜xh7+ ♜xh7 9 ♜h5 mate, which comes also after 7 . . . ♜h3. (Lengyel-Sliwa, Polanice Zdroj, 1966)

222) The attempt to win a pawn with the move 1 . . . ♜xd5 leads to a defeat after 2 ♜xd5!! ♜xa4 3 ♜xe7+ ♜h8 4 Bxg7+ ♜xg7.



5 ♜d5+ ♜xd5 6 ♜xf8+!

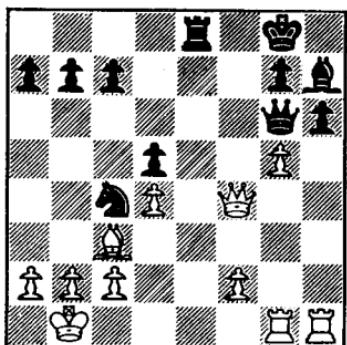


5 $\mathbb{Q}df5+!$ $\mathbb{N}f6$ (5 . . . gf 6 $\mathbb{W}g5+$ and 7 $\mathbb{W}f6$ mate; 5 . . . $\mathbb{N}h8$ – 6 $\mathbb{W}h6$) 6 $\mathbb{W}c3+$ $\mathbb{N}g5$ 7 $h4+$. 1-0 (Gusev-Melik-Pashaian, Kronstadt, 1975)

223) 1 . . . $\mathbb{B}xf4!!$ 2 $\mathbb{W}xf4$.

Had White been able to foresee the impending development of events, there is no doubt he would rather have played 2 gh , which might have been followed by 2 . . . $\mathbb{W}f6$. The move 1 . . . $\mathbb{B}xf4$ was assessed as a sacrifice made in desperation in the face of an irrefutable attack.

2 . . . $\mathbb{W}g6$ 3 $\mathbb{N}b1$.

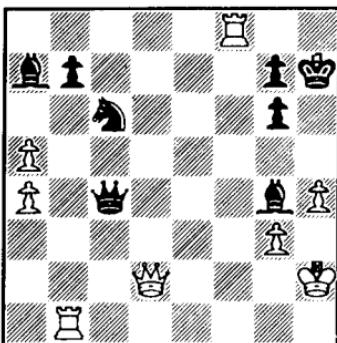


'Black has only got the one check on c2', decided White.

However, after 3 . . . $\mathbb{Q}a3!!$ he had to resign the game. In reply to 4 ba comes 4 . . . $\mathbb{W}xc2+$ 5 $\mathbb{N}a1$ $\mathbb{W}xc3$ mate, and if 4 $\mathbb{N}a1$, then 4 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xc2+$ 5 $\mathbb{N}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}a3++$ 6 $\mathbb{N}a1$ $\mathbb{W}b1+!$ 7 $\mathbb{B}xb1$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ mate. (Gudrikis-Ishchenko, Liepaya, 1968)

224) It is incorrect. After 4 $\mathbb{Q}df5++$ White did not consider the reply 4 . . . $\mathbb{N}f8$, which allows the king to avoid the mating net (5 $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ $\mathbb{N}f7$). A variation from the Opocensky-Bronstein game (Moscow-Prague, Match Tournament, 1946).

225) Black's combination is a blunder. There followed 6 $\mathbb{Q}g6+!$ hg 7 $\mathbb{B}xf8+$ $\mathbb{N}h7$.



8 $\mathbb{W}h6+!!$ A staggering blow. Black resigned (8 . . . $\mathbb{N}xh6$ – 9 $\mathbb{B}h8$ mate; 8 . . . gh – 9 $\mathbb{B}xb7$, and mate in three moves). (Popov-Novopashin, Beltsy, 1979)

226) 4 $\mathbb{Q}f6+!$ (there is no other option but to capture the knight,

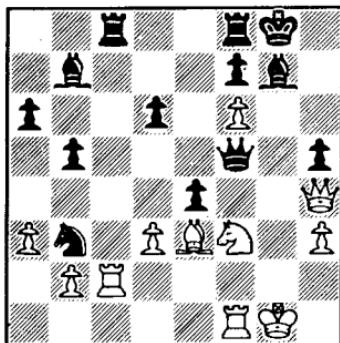
after which the g-file is opened up) 4 ... ef 5 gf (White's rook and knight are en prise, but Black must protect himself from the threat 6 $\mathbb{W}g5$) 5 ... $\mathbb{W}f5$.

Black has defended himself against mate on h5, but after 11 $\mathbb{W}f4$ there is no defence to mate on h6. (Neishtadt-Abramov, Moscow, 1953)

227) 1 $\mathbb{B}xe6!$ $\mathbb{W}xc4$.

If 1 ... de, then 2 $\mathbb{A}xe6+$ $\mathbb{B}f7$ 3 $\mathbb{W}xd4$ $\mathbb{W}f8$ (there was the threat of 4 $\mathbb{W}g7$ mate) 4 $\mathbb{A}xf7$ $\mathbb{W}xf7$ (4 ... $\mathbb{W}xb7$ 5 $\mathbb{W}g7+$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 6 $\mathbb{A}d5+$) 5 $\mathbb{A}d6$ $\mathbb{W}d7$ 6 $\mathbb{W}h8+$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 7 $\mathbb{W}xa8$ $\mathbb{W}xd6$ 8 $\mathbb{W}e4$ with an easily won ending.

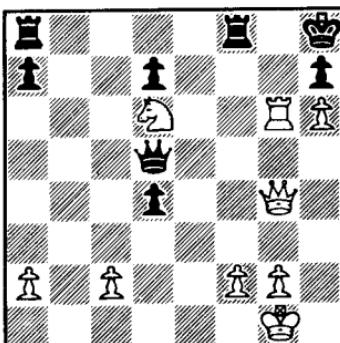
2 $\mathbb{B}xg6+$ $\mathbb{W}h8$ 3 $\mathbb{A}d6$ $\mathbb{W}d5$.



6 $\mathbb{A}e1!$

The only possible move. The alluring 6 $\mathbb{B}g2$ ef 7 $\mathbb{B}xg7+$ $\mathbb{W}h8$ 8 $\mathbb{B}g5$ would have allowed Black, after 8 ... $\mathbb{B}g8!$ 9 $\mathbb{W}xh5+$ $\mathbb{W}h7$, to fend off the attack and to stay a piece up.

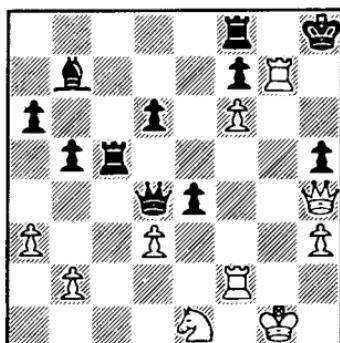
6 ... $\mathbb{W}e5$ 7 $\mathbb{B}g2$ $\mathbb{A}d4$ 8 $\mathbb{B}xg7+$ $\mathbb{W}h8$ 9 $\mathbb{A}xd4$ $\mathbb{W}xd4+$ 10 $\mathbb{B}f2$ $\mathbb{B}c5$.



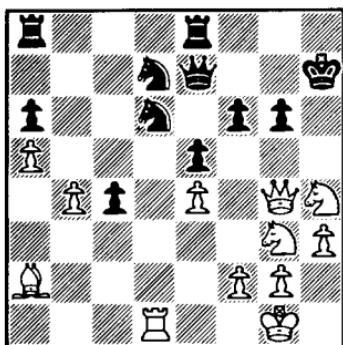
4 $\mathbb{B}g8+!!$

The themes of blocking and decoying. In reply to 4 ... $\mathbb{W}xg8$ comes 5 $\mathbb{W}xd4$ mating. 4 ... $\mathbb{B}xg8$ 5 $\mathbb{W}xd4+!$ $\mathbb{W}xd4$ 6 $\mathbb{A}f7$ mate. (Belyavsky-NN, Clock Simultaneous, Aznakaev, 1975)

228) 1 $\mathbb{W}d2$ does not reach the target in view of the reply 1 ... $\mathbb{B}ad8!$, and the knight at d6 is protected. Now if 2 $\mathbb{W}xd6?$, then 2 ... $\mathbb{A}f8$, winning material and as a result remaining two pieces up.



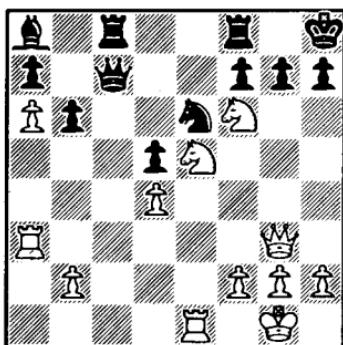
The correct move is 1 ♕g5!, decoying the queen from the defence of the knight at d6. After 1 ... f6 2 ♕g4 ♖h7 (there was the threat of 3 ♜xd6 ♜xd6 4 ♔f5+) 3 ♖h4 it is vital for Black to defend g6.



There are only two moves — 4 ... ♔f8 or 4 ... ♜g8.

In the first case the following wins: 5 ♜xg6 ♜xg6 6 ♜h5+ ♖g7 7 ♜xd6! In the second case — 5 ♜xc4! ♜g7 6 ♜xd6! ♜xd6 7 ♜hf5 gf 8 ♜h5 mate. Thus Black resigned. (Karpov-Spassky, Moscow, 1973)

229) 1 ♜xd5 cd 2 ♜f6+ ♖h8.

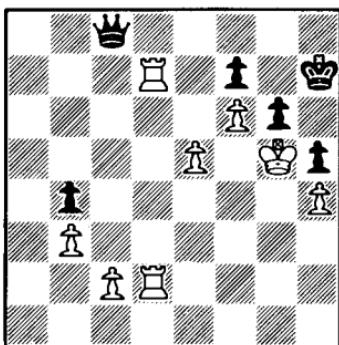


3 ♜g6!! Those who are acquainted with the classics will immediately remember F. Marshall's 'golden move' in the game Lewitski-Marshall, Breslau, 1912 (no. 353). Now 3 ... fg leads to mate — 4 ♜xg6+ hg 5 ♜h3 mate. If 3 ... hg, then 4 ♜h3 mate, and the knight cannot be captured because of 4 ♜xf6+ and 5 ♜g3+.

Black replied 3 ... ♜c2, offering to exchange queens and at the same time defending h7. The queen, however, stayed where it was — the move 4 ♜h3! curtailed any further resistance (4 ... ♜xg6 5 ♜xg6+ fg 6 ♜xh7 mate). (Rossolimo-Reissman, Puerto Rico, 1967)

230) The road to salvation is opened by the move 1 ... ♜c8!! There can then follow 2 ♜d8+ ♖h7 3 ♜xg8.

If the queen is captured it will be stalemate. White has parried the threat ♜c8-f5 mate. To 3 ♜2d7 Black would have replied 3 ... ♜xd8!



3 ... ♜e8!

This is more accurate than 3 ... ♜f8 (with the threat ♜f8-h6 mate)
4 ♜f4 ♜h6+ 5 ♜e4.

4 ♜f4.

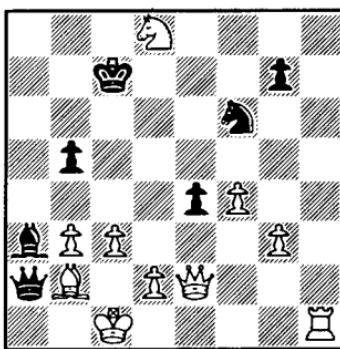
In case of 4 ♜e7? the move 4 ... ♜f8! would have been very effective, for after 5 ♜f4 ♜h6+ the rook at d2 is unprotected. In reply to ♜d2d5 the move 4 ... ♜e6 is strong.

4 ... ♜e6! Compare the resulting position with the original. The queen, which looked absolutely helpless, has escaped to a position where it has freedom of action. (Barczay-Forintos, Hungarian Championship, 1969)

231) It would seem that the only possibility of counterplay is 1 ... ♜a3. But then 2 ♜a7+, and Black loses: 2 ... ♜c7 – 3 ♜xb5+ and 4 ♜xa3; 2 ... ♜b7 – ♜xb5+ and 4 ♜a5+; 2 ... ♜d7 – 3 ♜xb5+ ♜e6 4 ♜a6+ and 5 ♜xa3.

If 1 ... ♜xb3, then 2 ♜xb5 ♜xb5 3 ♜a7+.

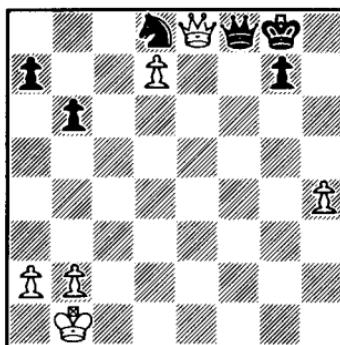
But there is still a way out! It is contained in the seemingly paradoxical sacrifice of material 1 ... ♜c7! Only after 2 ♜xd8 (to 2 ♜xb5 there is 2 ... ♜xd2) does Black reply 2 ... ♜a3.



The game by correspondence between Estrin-Neishtadt (USSR Correspondence Championship, 1957-59) went on: 3 ♜e6+ ♜d6 4 d3 (there was the threat of 4 ... ♜a1+; if 4 ♜xa3, then 4 ... ♜xa3+ with perpetual check) 4 ... ♜a1+ 5 ♜d2 ♜xb2+ 6 ♜e3 ♜xc3 7 f5 ♜e5 8 ♜f2 ♜xf5 9 ♜f4 g5 10 de ♜c5+ 11 ♜f3 gf 12 gf ♜c6 13 ♜d3+ ♜e7 14 ♜d4 ♜d6 15 ♜a1 ♜b8 16 b4 ♜e6 17 e5 ♜h3+, and the game ended in a draw.

232) 1 ♜e8+ ♜f8?

A natural move (otherwise the knight is lost). But why is it accompanied by a question mark?



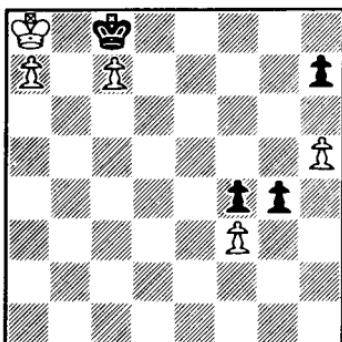
2 h5!

It becomes clear that Black . . . is defenceless against the white king's march to c7!

2 . . . ♜f7 (2 . . . g6 3 h6! and h6-h7+) 3 ♜c2 ♜d8 (and here also in reply to 3 . . . g6 or 3 . . . g5 will follow 4 h6!) 4 ♜c3 ♜f7 5 a4 ♜d8 6 ♜c4 ♜f7 7 ♜d5 ♜d8 8 b4 ♜f7 9 ♜c6 ♜d8+ 10 ♜c7. 1-0 (Mieses-NN, 1903). This is what the 'self-explanatory' move 1 . . . ♜f8 led to.

Black should have retreated 1 . . . ♜h7. After 2 ♜xd8 he had perpetual check.

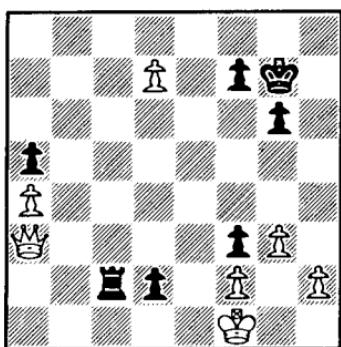
233) 1 . . . ♜c6!! 2 bc (if 2 ♜a7, renewing the threat b5-b6 then 2 . . . ♜c7, still forcing the opponent to capture the rook) 2 . . . g5! 3 a7 f5 4 c7 f4! 5 h4 (otherwise after h7-h5 the storm g5-g4 is decisive) 5 . . . g4 6 h5.



6 . . . h6!

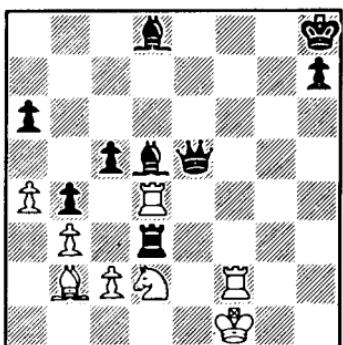
The final touch. If 6 . . . gf or 6 . . . g3, then 7 h6 and a draw! But at this point White resigned. (Milenković-Stankov, Yugoslavia, 1970)

234) White cannot place another queen on the board in view of 3 . . . ♜c1+, and there is also the threat of d2-d1=♛ mate. It is true that he does have perpetual check by attracting the enemy king to f8 (3 ♜f8+ ♜xf8 4 d8=♛+ ♜g7 5 ♜d4+). But White has not only got a draw . . .



3 ♜xf3!! Suicide? No, a win! Black resigned without waiting for 3 . . . ♜c1+ 4 ♜d1! (by holding up for an instant the promotion of the enemy pawn, White forcibly reduces the game to a technically won pawn endgame!) 4 . . . ♜xd1+ 5 ♜e2 ♜b1 6 d8=♛ d1=♛+ 7 ♜xd1 ♜xd1 8 ♜xd1, and the strong extra h-pawn renders any resistance from Black fruitless. (Ermenkov-Sax, 1970)

235) The move 1 ♜xd4! places Black in a desperate situation. The threat is 2 ♜xd5 ♜xb2 3 ♜xd8. The alluring attempt at counter-attacking 1 . . . ♜xg3 2 ♜xg3 ♜xg3+ 3 hg ♜xg3+ is refuted by means of 4 ♜f1 ♜xd3.



5 $\mathbb{Q}g4!!$ In reply to 5 ... $\mathbb{W}xb2$ comes mate — 6 $\mathbb{Q}f8+$. 1-0 (Tarrasch-Walbrodt, Hastings, 1895)

236) 1 $\mathbb{Q}e4!!$ $\mathbb{W}e7$.

After 1 ... de 2 $\mathbb{Q}3xe4$ there is no way of avoiding 3 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ and the capture on h7. In case of 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ White continues the attack by means of 2 hg hg (2 ... de? 3 gf+ and 4 $\mathbb{W}f6$ mate) 3 $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ gh 4 $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ mate. The same mate also follows 2 ... fg (instead of 2 ... hg) 3 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ gh 4 $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ etc.

2 $\mathbb{Q}xh7!$

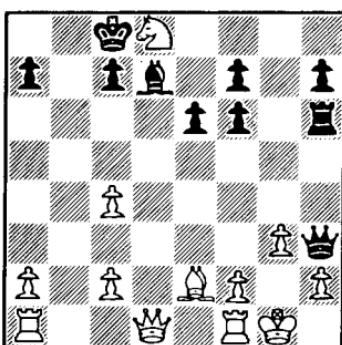
In view of the threat of check on f6 the knight has to be captured, but then the black king's pawn guard collapses.

2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 3 hg fg 4 $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$.

In reply to 4 ... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ it is sufficient to play 5 $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$ $\mathbb{W}xh7$ 6 $\mathbb{W}xe6+$ and 7 $\mathbb{W}xc8$ in order to win. The same follows 4 ... $\mathbb{W}g7$. And if Black defends e6 by means of 4 ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$, then 5 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ with the threat of 6 $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$ $\mathbb{W}xh7$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ is decisive.

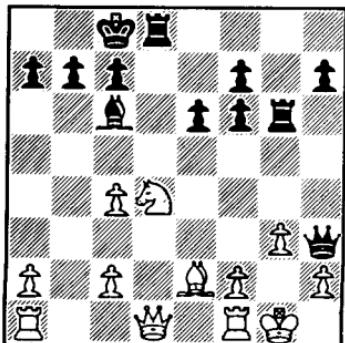
5 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ (and now the attack is concluded by the knight's invasion of f6) 5 ... $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}h4+$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 8 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 9 $\mathbb{W}h7+$, and mate on the following move. (Fischer-Panno, Buenos Aires, 1970)

237) The tempting 1 ... $\mathbb{B}h6$ loses after 2 cb+! $\mathbb{Q}b8$ (if 2 ... $\mathbb{W}xb7$, then 3 $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ and then $\mathbb{B}f1-e1$, escaping from mate and remaining with a material advantage) 3 $\mathbb{Q}c6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ (to 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 4 $\mathbb{W}xd8+$ $\mathbb{W}xb7$ there follows 5 $\mathbb{B}ab1+$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 6 c5+ mating) 4 $\mathbb{Q}xd8+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ (4 ... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ — 5 $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ and $\mathbb{B}f1-e1$).



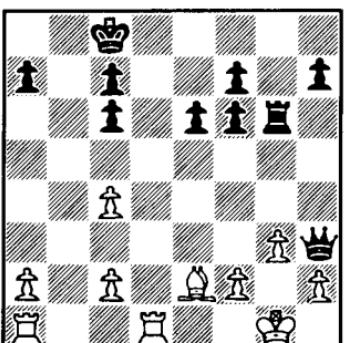
5 $\mathbb{W}xd7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 6 $\mathbb{B}fd1+$ (gaining a vital tempo for defence against mate) and then $\mathbb{Q}e2-f3$. White has a rook and two minor pieces for the queen, as well as a winning position.

In the Nimzowitsch-Huess game (Zürich, 1906) the move 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ was played.



White is threatened with mate on g2. 2 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ is unsuitable in view of 2 . . . $\mathbb{B}xd4$, and if 2 f3, then 2 . . . $\mathbb{B}xg3+$ 3 hg $\mathbb{W}xg3+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{B}g8$.

But by playing 1 dc, Nimzowitsch came up with a brilliant queen sacrifice. Like a thunderbolt out of the sky there followed 2 $\mathbb{Q}xc6!!$ $\mathbb{B}xd1$ 3 $\mathbb{B}fxd1$ bc.



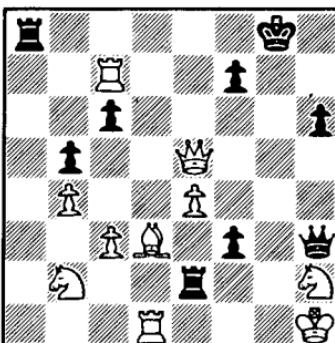
White only has a rook and a minor piece for the queen, but in this case it is not really a question of a balance of power. After the 'quiet' move 4 c5!! the black king found himself in a mating net. The threats are 5 $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ and 6 $\mathbb{B}d8$ mate. Nimzowitsch's opponent pro-

tected the eighth rank by means of 4 . . . $\mathbb{B}g8$, but with the move 6 $\mathbb{B}ab1$ Nimzowitsch created a new, by now irrefutable, threat of mate 7 $\mathbb{Q}a6$ mate.

Thus Black's knight sacrifice was a blunder — White wins in all the variations.

238) In reply to 7 . . . $\mathbb{B}e6$? there follows 8 $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ (clearing the line) 8 . . . bc 9 $\mathbb{B}xd6+$ (attraction) 9 . . . $\mathbb{B}xd6$ 10 $\mathbb{W}c5+$ $\mathbb{B}e6$ 11 $\mathbb{W}e7$ mate.

It is tempting for Black to play 7 . . . $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 8 $\mathbb{B}xc7+$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 9 $\mathbb{W}c5+$ (9 $\mathbb{B}xf7+$ $\mathbb{B}g8$) 9 . . . $\mathbb{B}g8$ and to 10 $\mathbb{W}xe5$ — 10 . . . $\mathbb{B}e2$, threatening another mate, namely on g2.

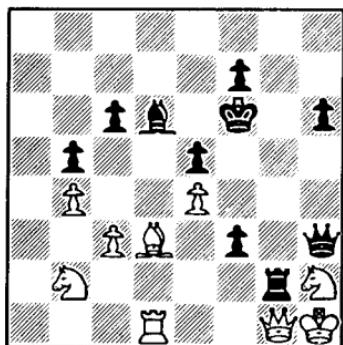


Now if 11 $\mathbb{B}g1+$, then 11 . . . $\mathbb{W}g2+$ 12 $\mathbb{B}xg2$ fg+ 13 $\mathbb{W}g1$ $\mathbb{B}a1+$ mating.

But this nice idea is crushed by the move 11 $\mathbb{B}c8+!$, diverting the rook from the a-file (along which it was invading the first rank with a decisive effect) or the queen from h3 (after which the whole mating

construction collapses). As a result White is left with a decisive material advantage.

The correct reply for Black is 7 ... $\mathbb{B}xa7+$! The Sergeyev-Chernov game (Izhevsk, 1947), of which this is an extract, continued 8 $\mathbb{W}xa7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 9 $\mathbb{W}g1$ (there is no other way of defending h2).



At this point, in vain, Black rushed to capture the queen. With the unobvious move 9 ... $\mathbb{Q}b8!$ he placed his opponent in a difficult situation. The threat is 10 ... $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ (the bishop, who so far has been playing the role of an 'extra', joins in the action). In reply to 10 $\mathbb{B}a1$ there still comes 10 ... $\mathbb{Q}a7!$

In case of 10 $\mathbb{B}f1$ (10 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{B}xg1+$ 11 $\mathbb{Q}xg1$ $\mathbb{W}g3+$ 12 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$) Black would have captured the queen in a much more advantageous situation – with the f-pawn soundly protected, the bishop would have cooperated excellently with the queen. In all the variations the advantage is on Black's side.

239) 1 $\mathbb{Q}g8!$

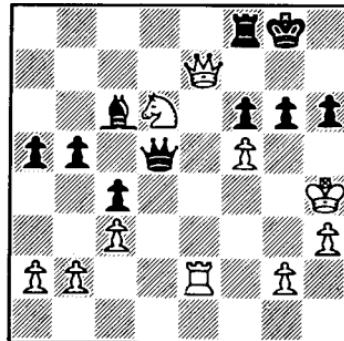
Threatens mate on h7, so there is no choice – 1 ... $\mathbb{B}xg8$. Then 2 $\mathbb{Q}f7!!$ $\mathbb{B}xg6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g$, and mate in two moves. (A study by Berthold Lasker the brother of the then World Champion)

240) White wins by marching the king ... to g6! – 1 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ b5 2 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ a5 3 $\mathbb{Q}h4$.

It is easy to see that Black has no counterplay. If he cannot come up with anything against the move $\mathbb{Q}g4-h5$, it will be all over.

3 ... g6.

In reply to 4 $\mathbb{Q}g5?$ will come, of course, 4 ... $\mathbb{W}g5$ mate. Does this result in the refutation of White's plan?



4 $\mathbb{B}e3!!$ $\mathbb{W}xg2$ (4 $\mathbb{g}5+?$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}h5$) 5 $\mathbb{B}g3\mathbb{W}f2$.

In reply to 5 ... $\mathbb{g}5+$ comes 6 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{W}xg3$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ (it is amusing that if, instead of 6 $\mathbb{Q}h5$, White defends the rook by playing 6 $\mathbb{Q}g4$, he is mated – 6 ... $\mathbb{Q}f3$ mate). This is why Black pins the rook.

6 fg ♜f4+ 7 ♜g4 ♜f2+ 8 ♜h5.
1-0 (Teichmann-Players in Consultation, Glasgow, 1902)

241) 1 . . . ♜d1+! 2 ♜xd1 ♜e1+ and 3 . . . ♜h1 mate. (Antoniuk-Zak, Viliandi, 1978)

242) 1 . . . ♜xh2+! 2 ♜xh2 ♜h4+ 3 ♜g1 ♜g3, and mate on the following move. (Reshevsky-Ivanović, Skopje, 1976)

243) 1 ♜f6+! ♜xf6 2 ♜g6+ ♜g7 (2 . . . ♜h8 3 ♜xf6+ ♜h7 4 ♜xf7+ ♜h8 5 ♜d7 also loses) 3 ♜xf7+ ♜h8 4 ♜d7. (Smyslov-Fuller, Hastings, 1968/69)

244) 1 ♜xc6+ bc 2 ♜a6 mate. (Karlsson-Rögaard, Sweden, 1978)

245) 1 . . . ab! 2 ♜xa8 ♜b6, and the white queen is caught. (Castaldi-Reshevsky, Olympiad, Dubrovnik, 1950)

246) 1 ♜xh7+ ♜xh7 2 ♜h5+ ♜g8 3 ♜e4! There is no satisfactory defence to the threat 4 ♜h4. 1-0 (Skorpik-Vinklar, Czechoslovakia, 1978)

247) By sacrificing a rook White extricates the enemy king out of his refuge and leads him away under escort: 1 ♜xh7+ ♜xh7 2 ♜h3+ ♜g6 (2 . . . ♜g7 3 ♜h6 mate) 3 ♜h6+ ♜f5 4 ♜h7+ ♜g6 (the very same mate follows 4 . . . ♜g4) 5 ♜h3 mate. (C. Torre-Yates, Baden-Baden, 1925)

248) By attracting the knight to f8 with a sacrifice, White promotes the pawn to a queen: 1 ♜f8+ ♜xf8 2 e7 (an instructive example)

249) After 1 ♜c8! Black resigned in view of the inevitable mate. (Bronstein-Goldenov, Kiev, 1944)

250) 1 ♜e8+, and mate on the following move (Domuls-Shkunda, 1977). The themes are decoying the queen from the defence of the bishop at f6 (in the variation 1 . . . ♜xe8 2 ♜xf6 mate) and closing the back rank (in the variation 1 . . . ♜xe8 2 ♜f8 mate).

251) 1 . . . ♜xh2+! 2 ♜xh2 ♜g4+ 3 ♜g1 ♜h3+ 4 ♜f1 ♜h2 mate. (Emmrich-Moritz, Germany, 1922)

252) The attack on the h-file is concluded by 1 ♜f6! (decoying — 1 . . . ♜xf6 2 ♜h7+ and 3 ♜xf7 mate plus the 'X-ray threat' 2 ♜h8+). (Rytov-Malevinsky, Leningrad, 1969)

253) 1 . . . ♜f3+! 2 ♜h1.
2 gf would have been followed by 2 . . . ♜g5+ 3 ♜h1 ♜h5!, and the queen cannot make it from a5 in time to defend the ♜-side — the weakness of the white square turns out to be decisive: 4 ♜h2 ♜h3+; 4 ♜g1 ♜xf3+ 5 ♜g2 ♜h3.
2 . . . ♜d6 3 gf ♜f4 4 ♜g2 ♜h3+! 5 ♜xh3 ♜xf3+ 6 ♜h4 g5+ 7 ♜xg5 ♜h8! 1-0 (Dien-Pervago, St. Petersburg, 1905)

254) 1 . . . ♜xg2+! 2 ♜xg2 ♕a8+!

The most accurate. In reply to 2 . . . ♜g6 White would have replied 3 ♜f3 followed by ♜f3-e2.

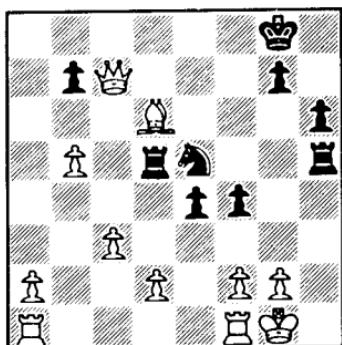
3 f3.

3 . . . ♜g6+ 4 ♜h3 g5+ 5 ♜xg5 ♜g6+ and 6 . . . ♜g4 mate; 3 ♜g3 ♜g6+ 4 ♜h4 ♜d8+ and 5 ♜f3 mate; 3 ♜g1 ♜g6+, and mate on the following move.

3 . . . ♜g6+ 4 ♜h1 (4 ♜h3 ♜c8+ 5 ♜h4 ♜d8+ mating) 4 . . . ♜xf3+! (decoying the rook from defending g1) 5 ♜xf3 ♜g1 mate. (Young-Barden, Correspondence, 1945)

255) 1 ♜f6+! (to divert the g-pawn and deprive Black of the move g7-g6; the extent to which this is important will become clear after the final manoeuvre) 1 . . . gf (1 . . . ♜xf6 2 ♜d8 mate) 2 ♜xe6+ fe 3 ♜h5 mate. (Bogda-Ferreira, Paraguay, 1976)

256) After 1 . . . ♜xh2+ White resigned in view of the forced mate: 2 ♜xh2 ♜h5+ 3 ♜g1.



3 . . . ♜f3+! 4 gf ♜dg5 mate. (Prokopovich-van der Mije, '8

March' Women's Tournament, Belgrade, 1979)

257) 1 ♜xf6 ♜xf6 (1 . . . gf 2 ♜g4+ ♜h8 3 ♜h5 is hopeless for Black) 2 ♜xh7+! ♜xh7 3 ♜h5+ ♜g8 4 ♜g6, and mate is inevitable. (Kogan-Foster, Boston, 1937)

258) 1 ♜f6! ♜xf6 (in reply to 1 . . . ♜h8, 2 ♜af1 wins) 2 ♜xh6+ ♜e7 3 ♜e1+. 1-0 (Miles-Wedberg, Stockholm, 1976)

259) 1 ♜a5! ♜f8 2 ♜g5. 1-0 (Shulman-Sandler, Baldone, 1977)

In reply to the immediate 1 ♜g5? would have come 1 . . . ♜a1+, and it is White who would have been mated (on f3). Thus it was essential, first of all, to force the enemy rook to leave the a-file. This was achieved by means of decoying.

260) 1 ♜h6+. By sacrificing the queen, White extricates the enemy king out of his refuge: 1 . . . ♜xh6 2 ♜h4+ ♜g5 (2 . . . ♜g7 – 3 ♜xh7 mate) 3 ♜c1+ ♜xh4 4 ♜f4+ ♜g5 5 ♜f3+ ♜h4 6 ♜h3 mate. (Kulis-Balik, Czechoslovakia, 1954)

261) The black queen is stuck in the enemy camp. But how can she be caught? 1 ♜a1 will be followed by 1 . . . ♜b2. This means that, somehow, b2 must be removed from the queen. This is achieved by means of a decoying sacrifice – 1 ♜c3! ♜xc3 2 ♜a1, and the queen is trapped! (Sheidl-Gmeiner, Correspondence, 1965–1966)

262) 1 ... ♘b4! The knight at b3 is en prise, and wherever it retreats to, there will follow 2 ... ♘d3+ winning the queen. 0-1 (Shilinsh-Zaksis, Riga, 1978)

263) 1 ... ♜h2+! 2 ♜xh2 (if 2 ♜f1, then 2 ♜f6+ mating) 2 ... ♜d7 3 ♜xd7 e2. The pawn promotes to a queen without any hindrance. 0-1 (NN-Richter, Berlin, 1931) The point of the check with the bishop was to divert the king from the passed pawn.

264) Black wins by means of the move 1 ... ♜xf2+! (2 ♜xf2 ♘d4+!) — a tactical possibility which was missed in the Farago-Hazai game (Budapest, 1976), where 1 ... ♜ce8 was played.

265) 1 ♜xg6+! hg (if 1 ... ♜xg6, then 2 ♜xe6+ ♘f7 3 ♜f6 mating) 2 h7+ (the ‘quiet’ move 2 ♜f2 also wins) 2 ... ♜xh7 3 ♜xf7+ ♘g7 4 ♜f2! 1-0 (Taimanov-Petrosian, Zürich, 1953)

266) 1 ... d5! (the introduction to a standard combination — it is essential to open the diagonal for the bishop at f8) 2 ♜xd5 ♜xc3+! 3 bc ♘a3 mate. (NN-Boden, London, 1860)

267) 1 ♘f6+! (forcibly opening the g-file) 1 ... gf 2 gf+ ♜h8 3 ♜g7! ♘e6! 4 ♜xh7+! 1-0 (4 ... ♜xh7 5 ♜h5+ ♜g8 6 ♜g1+) (Zach-Musil, Correspondence, 1954)

268) By sacrificing the knight, and then the queen, White eliminates the enemy king’s pawn guard and delivers mate: 1 ♘c6+! bc 2 ♜xa7+! ♜xa7 3 ♜a1+ ♜b6 4 ♜hb1+ ♜c5 5 ♜a5 mate. (From a display game by G. Marco, 1898)

269) White is threatened with mate, but Black receives it a move earlier: 1 ♘f5+! (diverting the g-pawn) 1 ... ♜h5 (1 ... gf 2 ♜xf6+ and 3 ♜g5 mate) 2 ♜xh7+! Diverting the knight, in order to deliver mate after 2 ... ♘xh7 — 3 g4 mate. (Medina-Sanz, Olot, 1975) Just like in Stamma’s problems!

270) 1 ♜xe4! fe (after 1 ... ♜xf1 2 ♜xf1 there follows the same as happened in the game) 2 ♜xe4+ ♜h8 3 ♜g6+ ♜h7 4 ♜xf8++ ♜h8 5 ♜g6+ ♜h7.

But what next? Next — a change of direction: 6 ♘e5+! ♜h8 7 ♘f7 mate (here is why White captured the rook). (Alekhine-Fletcher, Simultaneous Display, London, 1928)

271) After 1 ♜f6!! Black resigned. (Terpugov-Kan, Leningrad, 1951)

272) Black boldly played 1 ... ♜xf5!, without any fear of a sideways leap by the bishop, and in reply to 2 ♜xc6 sacrificed the queen by means of the move 2 ... ♜h3+!! After 3 gh ♜xc6+ 4 ♜h2 the knight joined in the attack — 4 ... ♘g4+, and then, after 5 hg

hg, so did the rook, delivering mate on h8. (Vereshchagin-Arklis, Tambov, 1923)

273) The pawn at e5 is protected, and it may seem that the king is safe at d4. But after the rook and bishop sacrifices — 1 ... ♜xe5! 2 fe ♜xe5+, driven out of his refuge, he sets off on the road to destruction: 3 ♜xe5 ♜c7+ 4 ♜f6 (there is no way back — 4 ... ♜d4 is followed by 4 ... ♜g7 mate) 4 ... ♜g7+ 5 ♜g5 ♜e5+, and mate on the following move. (Mandel-Kurze, Berlin, 1968)

274) If the rook at d2 and the knight at d4 were removed from the board, mate could be delivered by means of the move ♜d7xd1. And so 1 ... ♜c2+!! (c2 is no longer in Black's control, but this is not necessary — the white rook will block its own king's exit!) 2 ♜xc2 ♜b3+! Clearing the d-file (3 cb or 3 ♜xb3 — 3 ... ♜xd1 mate). (Driksna-Strautins, Correspondence, 1967-1968)

275) 1 ... ♜e4! 2 ♜xd8 (if White does not capture the queen, but plays 2 de, then 2 ... ♜xg5 with the threat 3 ... ♜h5) 2 ... ♜g3! 3 ♜c6+ (3 fg ♜f3 mate) 3 ... ♜de2+ 4 ♜xe2 ♜xe2 mate. (Mondolfo-Kolisch, 1859)

276) 1 ♜xh7+! ♜xh7 2 ♜h5+ ♜g8 3 ♜xg7+! ♜xg7 4 ♜g1+ ♜f6.

At this point 5 ♜g5+ ♜e6 6

♜xe5+ ♜d7 is not very promising for White — Black is a rook and a knight up. But the 'quiet' move 5 f5! makes mate inevitable. (Nedeljković-Matanović, Belgrade, 1950)

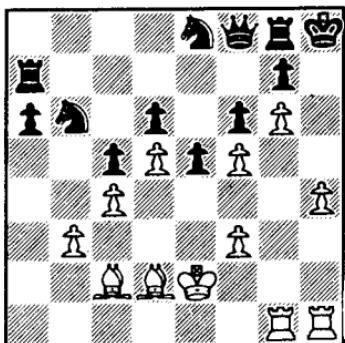
277) There followed 1 ... ♜xb3+, and White resigned in view of the catastrophic weakness of the black squares (Kestler-E. Torre, 1977). The result of the battle is decided by the manoeuvre ♜a3-b4-c3. In reply to 2 cb there comes 2 ... ♜e4+ 3 ♜a1 ♜b4 and then, after the queen has withdrawn, — 4 ... ♜c3+. And if 2 ab, then 2 ... ♜b4 3 c3 (otherwise 3 ... ♜c3) 3 ... ♜e4+, and mate on the following move.

278) 1 ... ♜g3+! 2 hg ♜f6! and after 3 ♜xf2 ef mate is inevitable. (Herman-Ranfeld, 1976)

279) The decisive factor is the unfortunate position of White's king. If the black knight is placed on d5, it will be mate. But the immediate 1 ... ♜b6 is unsuitable — the threatening knight will be exchanged, so this is why 1 ... ♜xc4! 2 ♜xc4 and only now 2 ... ♜b6 3 ♜c5 (forced) 3 ... ♜d5+. After 4 ♜xd5 cd the pawn endgame with the advanced passed pawn is hopeless for White: 5 e4 fe 6 fe de 7 ♜xd4 ♜e6, and Black won. (Dartav-Kogan, Riga, 1977)

An alternative win is 2 ... e5+ 3 de ♜xe5.

280) 1 ♜xh7+! ♜xh7 2 g6+ ♜h8.



3 $\mathbb{B}g5!$ Threatens mate on h5, and in reply to $3 \dots fg$, the other rook mates — $4 hg$ mate. (V. Borisenko-Nakhimovskaya, USSR Team Championship, 1969)

281) There followed $1 g6!$, and Black resigned the game: after $1 \dots hg$ $2 \mathbb{B}e8!$ he is defenceless against the threat $3 \mathbb{B}xf8+$ and $4 \mathbb{B}h8$ mate. (Rigo-Szell, 23rd Olympiad, Buenos Aires, 1978)

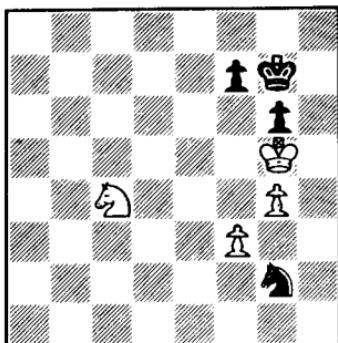
282) $1 \mathbb{B}g5!$ (the bishop must get to e6) $1 \dots fg$ $2 \mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}e8 3 \mathbb{W}h7$, and mate is inevitable. (Avirović-Tagirov, Yugoslavia, 1948)

283) The 'quiet' move $1 \dots \mathbb{B}g2!$ was made and White resigned: the threat $2 \dots \mathbb{Q}g5$ is irrefutable. (Smejkal-Vogt, Leningrad, 1977)

284) The only possibility of winning is, obviously, contained in the move $1 \dots \mathbb{Q}h5+$. But it does not lead to a material advantage: the rook at g5 ends up en prise. However, it is possible to exploit the advanced position of the white king

and to cut him off from his lines of retreat.

$1 \dots \mathbb{Q}h5+ 2 \mathbb{B}h4 \mathbb{Q}xf4 3 \mathbb{W}xg5$, and the study move $3 \dots \mathbb{Q}g2!$ complete the encirclement — there is no defence to the threat $4 \dots f6$ mate.



285) $1 \mathbb{Q}f6+! gf 2 \mathbb{Q}xe7 \mathbb{W}xe7 3 \mathbb{W}g4+ \mathbb{B}h8 4 \mathbb{W}h4!$, and Black loses the queen. In reply to $4 \dots \mathbb{Q}xh2+$ White plays $5 \mathbb{B}h1!$, in order to prevent the enemy queen from getting out of the pin with a tempo ($5 \mathbb{W}xh2 \mathbb{W}d6+$ and $6 \dots f5$). (Wibe-Schneider, Norway-Sweden Match, 1975)

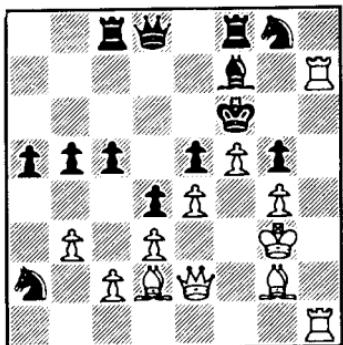
286) The straightforward $1 \mathbb{W}xa8+ \mathbb{B}e7 2 \mathbb{W}xh8$ allows Black to force a draw by means of $2 \dots \mathbb{W}xe4+ 3 \mathbb{W}d1$ (or $3 \mathbb{W}f1 \mathbb{W}h1+$ etc.) $3 \dots \mathbb{W}a4+$.

The objective is reached by $1 \mathbb{Q}a3! \mathbb{W}xal$ and now, as the bishop at d6 is pinned and cannot capture the knight, — $2 \mathbb{W}d5!$ attacking f7. 1-0 (Pytlakowski-Makarczik, Lodz, 1947)

287) Black's knight and White's knight are both en prise, but with the move 1 b4! White attracts the bishop to b4 and after 1 ... ♜xb4 2 ♜c2 wins a piece. (Em. Lasker-Euwe, Nottingham, 1936)

288) The game was terminated by the move 1 ... ♜d1!, diverting the black rook from the defence of f2. The capture on d1 leads to mate in two moves, otherwise the rook is lost. (Hromadka-Sämisch, Püstyán, 1922)

289) 1 ♜h5g5! (clearing the h-file for the rook) 1 ... ♜xg5 2 ♜xg5 hg 3 ♜h7+ ♜f6.



4 ♜xg5+!

Attracting the enemy king to g5 and at the same time freeing d2 for the queen.

4 ... ♜xg5 5 ♜1h6! ♜xh6 (otherwise 6 ♜d2 mate) 6 ♜d2+ ♜f6 7 ♜xh6+ ♜e7 8 ♜e6 mate. (A variation from a match game between Chigorin-Schifters, St. Petersburg, 1895)

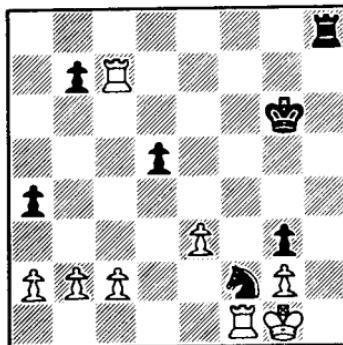
290) 1 ♜xg7+! ♜xg7 2 ♜h6+ ♜h8 (if 2 ... ♜g8, then 3 f6) 3 g6! ♜c5+ 4 ♜1f2 fg 5 fg ♜g5+ 6 ♜xg5 ♜xg5 7 ♜xf8+ ♜xf8 8 ♜xf8+ ♜g7. White's rook and knight are en prise, but after 9 gh Black had to resign. (Fischer-Cardoso, New York, 1957)

291) 1 ... ♜xd2! (decoying) 2 ♜xd2 ♜d4!

The knight cannot be captured because of 3 ... ♜xd4 mate, and there is no time for the intermediate queen exchange in view of 3 ... ♜e2 mate. All that White can do is gain control of e2.

3 ♜h5 ♜g5+! Once again decoying, and this time it is decisive (the queen is diverted from the h5-d1 diagonal — 3 ♜xg5 ♜e2 mate, and the pawns—from the f-file—3 fg ♜f2 mate) 0-1 (Marshall-Soldatenkov, New York, 1928)

292) 1 ... ♜g3+ 2 hg (must not leave the opponent a knight up) 2 ... hg+ 3 ♜g1 ♜f2.



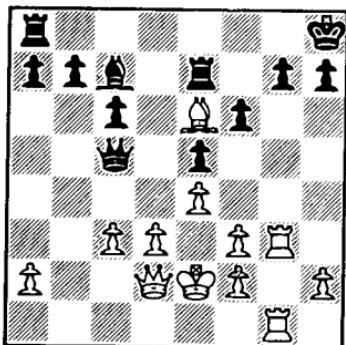
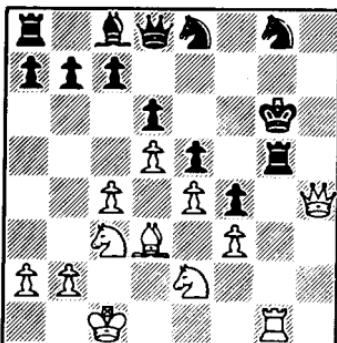
4 $\mathbb{B}xf2$ (there is nothing else left) 4 . . . $\mathbb{B}h1+!$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ gf. 0-1 (Mandel-H. Johner, 1930)

293) 1 $\mathbb{B}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 2 $f5+!$ ef 3 $\mathbb{W}xh6+!$ (decoying the pawn on g7) 3 . . . gh 4 $\mathbb{B}ag8$ mate. (Bernstein-Kotov, Groningen, 1946)

294) 1 $\mathbb{A}xc5$ $\mathbb{W}xc5$ 2 $\mathbb{A}e6.$

First of all White has decoyed the queen with the aid of an exchange. Now he chases away the rook, and, keeping g8 in his sights, he deals his opponent a devastating tactical blow.

2 . . . $\mathbb{B}e7.$



3 $\mathbb{W}h6!!$ Black resigned. 3 . . . gh is followed by 4 $\mathbb{B}g8+$ mating and any other replies are met by the decisive 4 $\mathbb{W}xh7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 5 $\mathbb{B}h3$ mate. (Kramer-Rüster, Altheide, 1926)

295) 1 $\mathbb{B}xh7+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 2 $\mathbb{W}h4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6.$

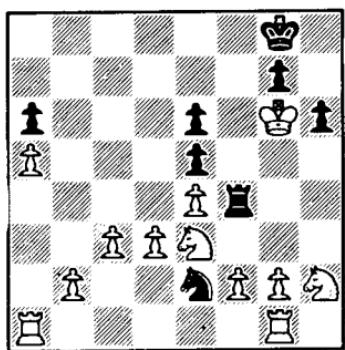
3 $\mathbb{Q}xf4+!$ (clearing the diagonal for the bishop at d3) 3 . . . ef 4 $e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xf5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 6 $\mathbb{W}h7+!$ (now the king will have to move to the \mathbb{W} -side) 6 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 7 $\mathbb{B}e1+$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 8 $\mathbb{W}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 9 $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 10 $\mathbb{W}c2$ (the first 'quiet' move, although it does threaten mate 11 $\mathbb{W}c3+$ and 12 $\mathbb{W}a3$ mate) 10 . . . $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 11 $\mathbb{W}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 12 $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ (clearing the a-file) 12 . . . dc 13 $\mathbb{W}a3+$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 14 $\mathbb{W}b3+$ and 15 $\mathbb{W}b5$ mate. (Wade-NN, London, 1958)

296) After 1 $\mathbb{B}d8!!$ all of White's pieces are en prise, but not one of them can be captured (1 . . . $\mathbb{W}xc3$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xe8$ mate; 1 . . . $\mathbb{W}xd8$ 2 $\mathbb{W}g7$ mate; 1 . . . $\mathbb{B}xd8$ 2 $\mathbb{W}xf6$; 1 . . . $\mathbb{W}xf5$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xe8$ mate). Nor can Black play 1 . . . $\mathbb{W}e6$ (2 $\mathbb{W}g7$ mate), or 1 . . . $\mathbb{W}e5$. 1-0 Durka-Jablonitzky, Czechoslovakia, 1977)

297) 1 . . . $\mathbb{W}xh2+!$ 2 $\mathbb{W}xh2$ $\mathbb{B}h6+$ 3 $\mathbb{W}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ 4 $\mathbb{W}g4$ $\mathbb{B}f4+$ 5 $\mathbb{W}g5$ $\mathbb{B}h2!$

The first 'quiet' move after the queen sacrifice and a series of checks. Threatens 5 . . . h6 mate.

6 ♜xf8+ (the only defence — the king will be able to go to g6) 6 . . . ♜xf8 7 ♜f3 (otherwise 7 . . . ♜f7 and 8 . . . h6 mate) 7 . . . h6+ 8 ♜g6 ♜g8! 9 ♜xh2 (otherwise 9 . . . ♜f6 mate).



9 . . . ♜f5!

The rook frees f4. At the same time it threatens mate on g5.

10 ♜xf5 ♜f4 mate. (Herrmann-Hüssong, Frankfurt, 1930)

298) All that Black has to do is to play ♜f6-h6 and White will be mated. But on one condition i.e. if the c-file is closed. The point is that the immediate 1 . . . ♜fh6 will be followed by 2 ♜c7+ ♜f6 (he cannot withdraw to the back rank in view of 3 ♜c8+ with the rook exchange and a won endgame for White) 3 ♜f7+ ♜g5 4 ♜g7+ ♜f6

(4 . . . ♜h5? 5 ♜f7) 5 ♜f7+ and a draw through repetition of position.

Thus on his first move Black closes the line — 1 . . . ♜c3!! Now in reply to 2 bc the move 2 . . . ♜fh6 wins instantly. In order to escape the threatened mate White has to play 2 f4. Then 2 . . . g3 forcing 3 ♜xc3 (there was also the threat of 4 . . . ♜e2 mate) 3 . . . bc 4 ♜f3 (as before he needs to protect himself from ♜f6-h6) 4 . . . cb 5 ♜xg3+ ♜f8 6 ♜d7+ ♜e7 7 ♜g7+ ♜f7. 0-1 (Kreuzahler-Leifold, West Germany, 1973)

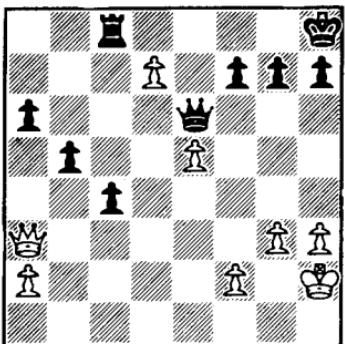
When one looks at the starting position, it is hard to imagine that the result of the battle will be decided by the promotion of the pawn at b4.

299) 1 ♜xf7! ♜xf7 2 ♜c4+ ♜f8 3 ♜f1+ ♜f6 4 ♜xf6+ gf 5 ♜g8+ ♜e7 6 ♜e6+ ♜f8 7 ♜xf6+, and mate on the following move. (Hartston-Penrose, London, 1963)

300) 1 ♜c8!! With the pawn at d7 in a double attack and undefended by any other man, and c8 also under his control, Black still cannot capture on d7 or on c8. But anyway, Black has nothing else left.

1 . . . ♜xc8.

In reply 1 . . . ♜xd7 comes 2 ♜f8+ (the queen and the rook interact with the help of 'X-rays'!), and mate on the following move.



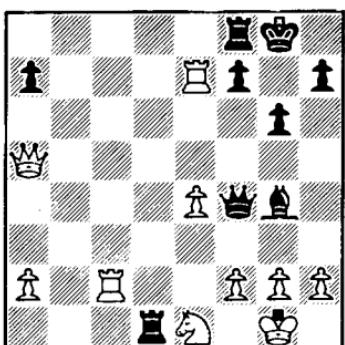
2 ♕e7!!

A combination of the themes of decoying and pawn promotion (2 ... ♕xe7 3 dc=♕+) 1-0 (Alekhine-NN, Simultaneous Display, Trinidad, 1939)

301) 1 . . . ♕f4! (attention: the first rank!) 2 ♜e7.

A head-on decoying sacrifice. If 2 . . . ♜xd2, then 3 ♜xe8+ and 4 ♜xd2 or 2 . . . ♜xd2 3 ♜xe8+ and everything is alright for White.

2 . . . ♜f8! (simple and strong — Black maintains the threat) 3 ♜a5 ♜d1+ 4 ♜e1.



4 . . . ♜g5!

The concluding tactical blow on the themes of decoying and the overworked man. White cannot capture on g5, and if he withdraws the queen in such a way as to protect the rook at e7 and the knight at the same time, it will end up overworked: 5 ♜b4 ♜xe7!, and so he resigned. (Tal-Olafsson, Las Palmas, 1975)

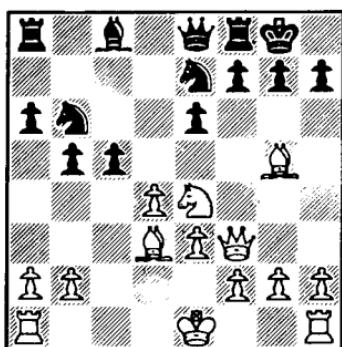
302) 1 ♜d7! The knight cannot be captured because of the loss of the queen (1 . . . ♜xd7 2 ♜xh7+ ♜h8 3 ♜f5+). There is also the threat of 2 ♜xf6+. Black had to defend h7 by means of 1 . . . ♜g6 and go down on material. (Simagin-Razuvayev, Moscow, 1967)

303) The double blow 1 . . . ♜b6! decides the result of the game. The capture of the queen is impossible in view of 2 . . . ♜e2 mate! There are also the threats of 2 . . . ♜xb2 mate, as well as 2 . . . ♜xe3+. (Shebarshin-Sozin, Novgorod, 1923)

304) 1 ♜e4! ♜fd5.

The knight at c6 cannot be captured because of 2 ♜xf6+ and 3 ♜xc6. In reply to 1 . . . ♜b7, 2 ♜xe7+ ♜xe7 3 ♜xf6 (3 ♜xf6+ gf 4 ♜h5 or 3 . . . ♜xf6 4 ♜h5 would have also been amply sufficient) 3 . . . gf 4 ♜xf6+ ♜g7 (4 . . . ♜h8 5 ♜h5) 5 ♜g4+ ♜xf6 (5 . . . ♜h6 — 6 ♜h4+; 5 . . . ♜h8 — 6 ♜h5) 6 ♜h4+.

2 ♜xe7+ ♜xe7.



3 ♜f6+! Black resigned in view of the variation 3 ... gf 4 ♚xh7+! ♜xh7 (4 ... ♜g7 5 ♜xf6+ ♜xh7 6 ♜h6+ ♜g8 7 ♜f6) 5 ♜h5+ ♜g8 (5 ... ♜g7 6 ♜h6+ etc.) 6 ♜xf6 ♜g6 7 ♜h6. (Ed. Lasker-Winkelman, New York, 1926)

305) In order to mate, Black has to make the moves ♜h7-g6 and ♜d1-h5 mate. But in reply to 1 ... ♜g6 will come 2 ♜xe6+, and so 1 ... ♜f6+! After 2 ef, the move 2 ... ♜g6! is decisive. 0-1 (Buksza-Kovács, Hungary, 1965)

306) With the aid of pawn sacrifices White brings the 'bad' bishop into the battle:

1 e5! de

If 1 ... fe, then 2 f6! ♜xf6 3 ♜xg4+ and then 4 ♜e4.

2 d6!

To 2 ... cd comes a third sacrifice — 3 c5, clearing the a2-b8 diagonal.

2 ... c5 3 ♜e4.

The bishop has made it after all! After 3 ... ♜d7 4 ♜h6 Black resigned — the threat 5 ♜d5+ is irrefutable. (Alekhine-H. Johner, Zürich, 1934)

307) 1 ... f5+! 2 gf (if 2 ♜h4, then 2 ... ♜h1 mate) 2 ... ♜f5+ and 3 ... ♜h5 mate. (Borisenko-Simagin, 22nd USSR Championship, Moscow, 1955)

308) 1 ... ♜c3!!

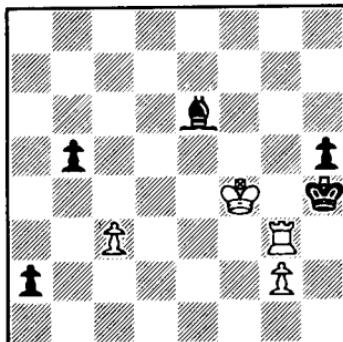
By 'shifting from its place' the pawn at b2, Black gets a passed pawn on the a-file, and there is no way of preventing it from promoting to a queen.

2 bc (the same result is achieved by 2 ♜xc3 dc) 2 ... a4! 3 cd cd (not straight away 3 ... a3? in view of 4 ♜c3, holding up the pawn) 4 c3 a3. 0-1 (Bonner-Medina, Spain, 1976)

309) White has material for a passed pawn. But if he captures it, Black will play 1 ... ♜g3 and win the pawn at g2.

The correct move is 1 ♜g6. cutting off the king. In reply to 1 ... a4 comes 2 ♜e3 a3 3 ♜f4 a2 4 ♜g3 ♜e6.

There was the threat of 5 ... ♜h3 mate, but now we have another mate, on the theme of blocking.



5 $\mathbb{B}h3+$! (walling up h3) 5 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 6 g3 mate. (Moldoyanov-Samochanov, 1974)

310) 1 . . . $\mathbb{B}d3!!$ 2 $\mathbb{W}xb6$.

The rook cannot be captured either by the bishop (because of mate on g2) or by the queen (in view of 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ 3 $\mathbb{B}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$ and 4 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xd3$).

2 . . . $\mathbb{B}xh3!$

The rook is unassailable because of mate. If 3 $\mathbb{W}xc6$, then 3 . . . $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ 4 $\mathbb{B}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ mate, and so White decided to guard f2 by means of the move 3 $\mathbb{Q}d4$. There then followed 3 . . . $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ 4 $\mathbb{B}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5+$, and White resigned without waiting for his queen to be captured: 5 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}h2+$ 6 $\mathbb{B}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}c7+$. (Gerasimov-Smyslov, Moscow, 1935)

311) 1 $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$

By attracting the rook into a diagonal pin, White also diverts it away from the eighth rank, after which he uses yet another pin — along the d-file.

1 . . . $\mathbb{B}xf7$ 2 $\mathbb{W}e6!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 3 $\mathbb{B}xd8+$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xe6+$ $\mathbb{B}h8$.

The combination is over, White has won a pawn and simplified the position. But Black's troubles do not end there. After 5 $\mathbb{B}d7$ $\mathbb{B}a8$ 6 $\mathbb{B}c7$ c5 7 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ Black resigned. (Bogoljubow-Erdely, 4th Olympiad, Prague, 1931)

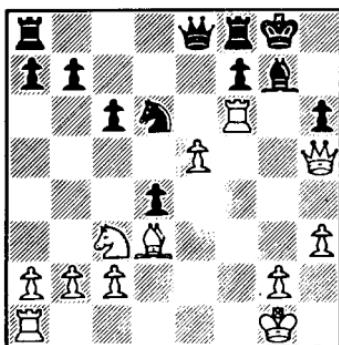
312) 1 $\mathbb{Q}xd4!$ ed.

In reply to 2 e5 Black had planned 2 . . . f5. There followed, however, 2 $\mathbb{B}f6!!$

The idea behind the move is to

block the f-pawn. In case of 2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ the move 3 e5 wins immediately.

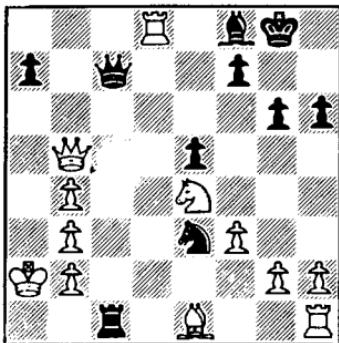
2 . . . $\mathbb{Q}g8$ (there is no other defence in sight) 3 e5 h6.



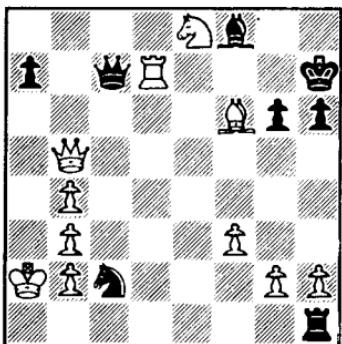
4 $\mathbb{Q}e2!$

In reply to 4 $\mathbb{B}xd6$ Black could have played 4 . . . $\mathbb{W}xe5$, attacking both the rook and the knight at the same time. After the knight has withdrawn there is already the threat of the capture on d6. In reply to 4 . . . $\mathbb{Q}b5$ the move 5 $\mathbb{W}f5$ is decisive, and if 4 . . . $\mathbb{Q}xf6$, then 5 $\mathbb{W}xh6$, and so Black resigned. (Fischer-Benko, New York, 1963/64)

313) 1 . . . $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xd8$ $\mathbb{B}c1+$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}a2$.



In the Vogt-Pribyl game, which was played at the 20th Olympiad in Skopje (1972), Black went on to play 3 ... $\mathbb{W}xd8$, having failed to spot the elegant conclusion to the attack — 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}c2!$ After this ‘quiet’ move, White would have been unable to avoid mate. For instance: 4 $\mathbb{B}xf8+$ $\mathbb{W}xf8$ 5 $\mathbb{A}d2$ $\mathbb{B}xh1$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}xh6+$ $\mathbb{E}e7$ (on no account 6 ... $\mathbb{Q}g8?$ in view of 7 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ and 8 $\mathbb{W}e8$ mate) 7 $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ f6 8 $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{W}f8$ or 4 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 6 $\mathbb{A}c3$ $\mathbb{B}xh1$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}xe5+$ f6 8 $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 9 $\mathbb{B}d7+$.



9 ... $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ White has only one check left — 10 $\mathbb{B}xe7+$. After 10 ... $\mathbb{W}xe7$, like in the first variation, there follows mate on a1.

314) This position is taken from the Enklaar-Szabo game (Wijk-an-Zee, 1973). The Dutch Master had made his last move (f4-f5) on the recommendation of a textbook on theory. Szabo replied 1 ... d5 and the game went on for 47 moves.

But had Szabo played 1 ... $\mathbb{W}c5!$ the struggle would not have lasted long. There is no defence to

the threats 2 ... $\mathbb{W}xc4$ and 2 ... e5 — White goes a piece down.

315) 1 $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ f5.

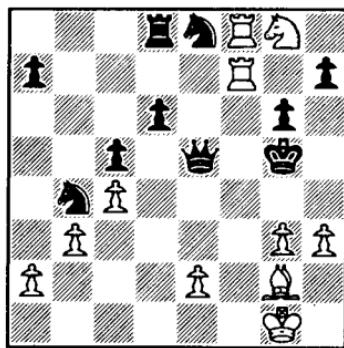
If 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc4$, then 2 $\mathbb{B}xd7$ $\mathbb{W}xd7$ 3 $\mathbb{W}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 4 $g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 5 $\mathbb{W}h6$ mate.

2 ef $\mathbb{W}xf5$.

In reply to 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ the sequence 3 $\mathbb{W}xc6!$ $\mathbb{B}xb7$ 4 d7+ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ (4 ... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 5 $g4+$ and $\mathbb{W}h6$ mate) 5 ab wins.

3 $\mathbb{Q}xe6$. In reply to 3 ... $\mathbb{W}xe6$ comes 4 $\mathbb{B}xd7+$ $\mathbb{W}xd7$ 5 $\mathbb{W}f6+$. 1-0 (Tal-Dvoretsky, 42nd USSR Championship, Leningrad, 1974)

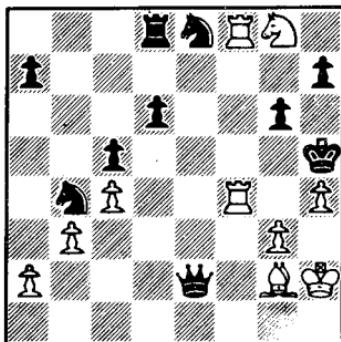
316) 1 $\mathbb{W}xf8+!$ $\mathbb{W}xf8$ 2 $\mathbb{B}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4 $\mathbb{B}f8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 5 $\mathbb{B}1f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$.



By bursting through to the enemy rear White has forced the king to leave his retreat. But the queen has been given up and the king must be mated ...

7 $\mathbb{W}h2!$ (threatens 8 $h4+$ and then 9 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ mate) 7 ... $\mathbb{W}xe2$. The bishop is pinned but there is another line of attack — 8 $h4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ (8 ...

$\mathbb{Q}h5$ 9 $\mathbb{B}xh7+$ and 10 $\mathbb{B}f4$ mate) 9 $\mathbb{B}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$.



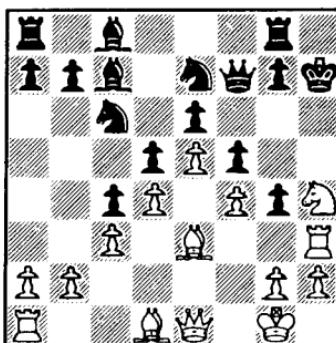
10 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $g5$ 11 $g4+$. The queen has to be given up, since in reply to 11 ... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ there comes 12 $h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 13 $\mathbb{B}4f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 14 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ mate. 1-0 (Levenfish-Gotgilf, Leningrad, 1924)

317) 1 $\mathbb{A}c8!$ (attracting the rook to c8) 1 ... $\mathbb{B}xc8+!$ (decoying the king) 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 3 $\mathbb{W}xc8+$ $\mathbb{B}b8$ 4 $\mathbb{W}c6+$ $\mathbb{B}b7$ 5 $\mathbb{W}a4+$ $\mathbb{B}b8$ 6 $\mathbb{W}e8+$ mating. (Niedermann-Zucks, 1895)

318) 1 ... $\mathbb{B}e3!!$ A tactical blow on the themes of the pin (cannot play 2 $\mathbb{B}xe3$), decoying (2 $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ 3 $\mathbb{W}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{W}d2$) and attraction to a fork (2 $\mathbb{W}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}f1+$). Generally, whichever way the rook is captured, it involves the loss of the queen. At the same time the rook at c3 is en prise. And if 2 $\mathbb{B}d3$, then 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}f3+$. 0-1 (Karafiat-Neishtadt, by correspondence, 1965-1966)

319) 1 $\mathbb{Q}g5+!$ hg 2 $\mathbb{B}h3!!$ $g4$. There was the threat of 3 $\mathbb{Q}g6+!$

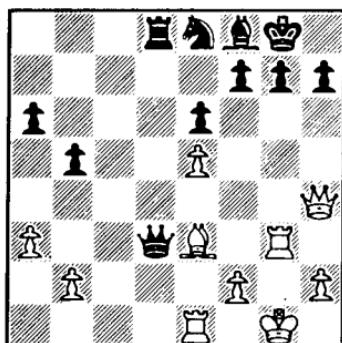
$\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}h5+$. If 2 ... $\mathbb{B}h8$, then also 3 $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 4 $\mathbb{B}xh8$ with the threat 5 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ mate. To 4 ... $g4$ comes 5 $\mathbb{W}h4$.



3 $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ gh 4 $\mathbb{W}h4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ inevitably mating. (Morra-NN, Nice, 1923)

320) The extra material guarantees White an obvious advantage. But he has the possibility of settling the result of the game in a few moves.

1 $g6!$ The simultaneous attack (on mate and the rook at d8) forces the reply 1 ... $\mathbb{W}xg6+$. Then 2 $\mathbb{B}d3$ (also forced — the rook must be guarded).



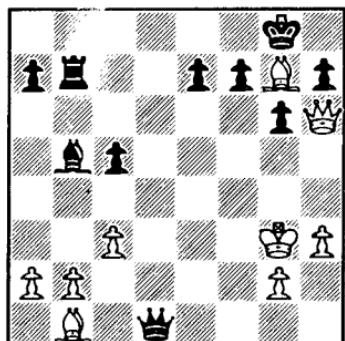
3 ♜g5. An open attack that leads to the loss of the rook. (Polugayevsky-Antoshin, 23rd USSR Championship, Leningrad, 1955)

321) 1 ♘d8 comes to mind. But then 1 ... ♜f2+!, and Black wins.

The correct move is 1 ♜g7! In reply to 1 ... ♜xg7 there comes, of course, 2 ♘d8+, but even now Black has a check on f2: 1 ... ♜f2+ 2 ♜f1 (2 ♜xf2 ♘xb2+) 2 ... ♜b5+.

As before, the bishop cannot be captured because of ♘d1-d8+, and there is not enough time for the queen to withdraw — in case of 2 ... ♜b8 the game is terminated by 3 ♜e5!

3 ♜xf2 ♜e2+ 4 ♜g3 ♜xd1.



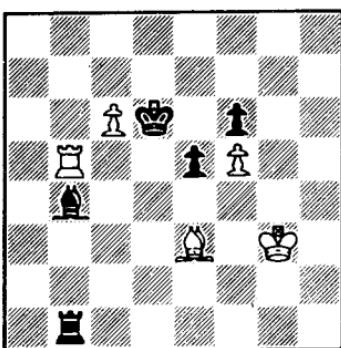
5 ♜h8!!

Only this 'short' move achieves the aim. The capture of the bishop is followed by 6 ♜f8 mate.

5 ... ♜d6+ 6 ♜f2. Having run out of checks, Black resigned. (Bartrina-Ghitescu, Olot, 1974)

However Black has the stronger possibility (after 1 ♜g7) of 1 ... f6 2 ♜h8 and then 2 ... ♜f2+ 3 ♜f1 ♜b5+ 4 ♜xf2 ♜e2+ 5 ♜g3 and now 5 ... ♜e5+ (possible because of the move ... f7-f6) with a draw.

322) 1 f5+! gf 2 gf+ ♜d6 (if 2 ... ♜xf5, then 3 c7).

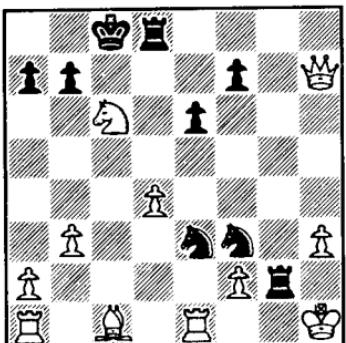


3 ♘xb4!! (attracting the rook)
3 ... ♜xb4 4 ♜c5+!

Decoying the king from the sixth rank, after which he will not be able to catch up with the pawn. At the same time, in connection with the position of the rook at b4, it is precisely the c-file that the king is being attracted to, so that the rook will not be able to stop the pawn from the rear.

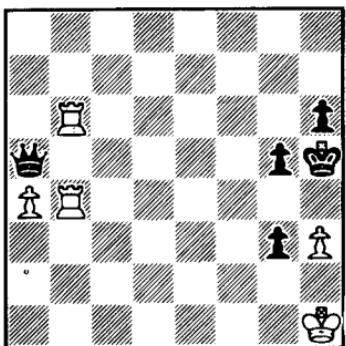
4 ... ♜xc5 5 c7. 1-0 (From an Exhibition Game by M. Vidmar, 1936)

323) 1 ... ♜e3! 2 ♜xc6 (2 ♜xe3 2 fe or 2 ♜xh4 – 2 ... ♘g1++) 2 ... ♜f3!! with the irrefutable threat of mate on h2. (A variation from the game Tolush-Flohr, Kiev, 1944)



2 f3 ♜xf3! 3 ♜xf3 ♜xf3 leads to the same result.

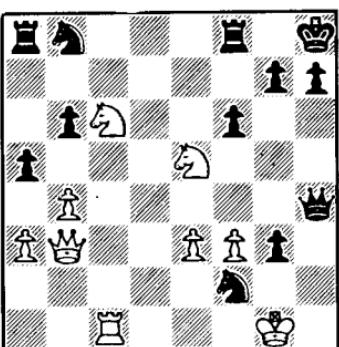
324) 1 g4+!! fg (in reply to 1 ... ♜h4 comes 2 ♜h2! h5 3 ♜h6 mating).



2 ♜h4+!! gh (2 ... ♜xh4 – 3 ♜xh6 mate) 3 ♜b5+ ♜xb5 4 ab, and the pawn promotes to a queen unhindered. (Mieses-NN, Metz, 1935)

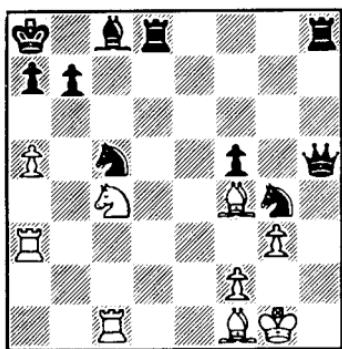
325) A position taken from P. Stamma's book (1737). White, it

would seem, is under the threat of imminent mate. But with the aid of a series of sacrifices he is the first one to deliver mate: 1 ♜h4! (first of all the black queen is diverted from guarding c8; at the same time the diagonal is cleared for the queen) 1 ... ♜xh4.



2 ♜g8+! (attracting the king to g8 will enable the remaining pieces to mate) 2 ... ♜xg8 (2 ... ♜xg8 3 ♜f7 mate) 3 ♜e7+ ('unloads' the c-file, along which the rook will deal the final blow) 3 ... ♜h8 4 ♜f7+ (forcing Black to bare the eighth rank) 4 ... ♜xf7 5 ♜c8+ ♜f8 6 ♜xf8 mate.

326) A position taken from P. Stamma's book (1737), White is threatened with mate on h2 and h1, his queen is en prise. But by sacrificing the queen, and then the knight and the rook, White delivers mate with the two bishops: 1 ♜f4+ gf 2 ♜xf4+ ♜a8.



3 ♕b6+! ab 4 ab+ ♔a6 5 ♕xc8+ ♕xc8 6 ♕xa6+! ba 7 ♔g2+ ♔c6 8 ♕xc6 mate.

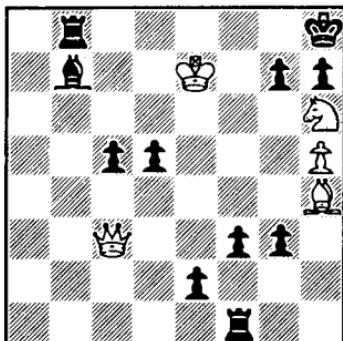
This composition was used in the chess poem 'Hakrab', published in London in 1840.

327) A position taken from P. Stamma's book (1737). There is the threat of 1 ... ♔e2 mate, and the white queen is en prise. The banal 1 ♕c4+, after 1 ... ♕b6 leads to a loss in view of the threats 2 ... ♕h1 mate and 2 ... ♔f3 mate. A sacrifice is the decisive move — first the rook, and then the queen: 1 ♕a5+! ♕xa5 (1 ... ♕b6 2 ♕xc5 mate) 2 ♕xc5+! dc 3 ♔c4+ ♕b5 4 ♕b6 mate.

328) It is generally considered that this position is from a Deschapelles-La Bourdonnais game played in the second decade of the last century. The opening moves have not been preserved and one can express serious doubts about the legality of the game. By exploiting the idea of attraction White constructs a mating net: 1 ♔xh6+ gh 2 ♕h8+!!

♕xh8 3 ♔f7! There is no defence to the threat of mate on f6. Black delayed it for just one move: 3 ... ♕f8+ 4 ♕xf8 e1=♕ 5 ♔f6 mate!

Let us return to the starting position. Maybe Black made a blunder in reply to 1 ♔xh6+ and, rather than capturing the knight, he should have perhaps withdrawn the king?



Then he would have been mated in another no less intriguing, manner: 2 ♔f7+ ♕g8 3 ♕xg7+!! ♕xg7 4 ♕f6+ ♕g8 5 ♔h6 mate.

329) Hoffmann-Petroff (Warsaw, 1844): 1 ... ♔xd5 2 ♔xf7 0-0!! White was only reckoning on 2 ... ♕xf7 3 ♕xd5+ ♕e8 4 ♕xc5. 3 ♔xd8.

The capture of the queen leads to a forced mate. However everything else also loses: 3 ♕xd5 ♕xf7 4 ♕xc5 ♕g5+ 5 ♕h3 d6+; 4 e6 ♕d6+, and similarly 4 ♕f1 ♕g5+ 5 ♕h3 ♕h5+ 6 ♕g3 d6. And if 4 h3, then 4 ... ♕g5+ 5 ♕h2 ♕f4+.

3 ... ♕f2+ 4 ♕h3 (4 ♕g4 — 4 ... ♕f4+ mating) 5 ... d6+ 5 e6

(5 g4 ♜f4 mate) 5 . . . ♜f4+ 6 ♜g4 ♜xe6 7 ♜xe6.

More forceful would have been 7 g3. Black would have won all the same by continuing 7 . . . ♜d4+ or 7 . . . ♜xd8+!, but the mate would have been more difficult to get than it actually was in the game.

7 . . . ♜xe6+ 8 ♜g5 ♜f5+ 9 ♜g4 h5+ 10 ♜h3 ♜f3 mate.

330) Anderssen-Kieseritzky (London, 1851): 1 ♜d6(!)

A 'quiet' move offering Black either one of the two rooks. 1 ♜e3! was less binding and probably stronger.

1 . . . ♜xg1?

After this, Anderssen's combination forces a win. As W. Steinitz pointed out, 1 . . . ♜xa1+ 2 ♜e2 ♜b2! would have left Black a chance of escaping.

2 e5!! ♜xa1+ 3 ♜e2 ♜a6.

The threat was 4 ♜xg7+ ♜d8 5 ♜c7 mate, and Kieseritzky decided to defend c7. As was proved later, there was no relief to be found in other continuations.

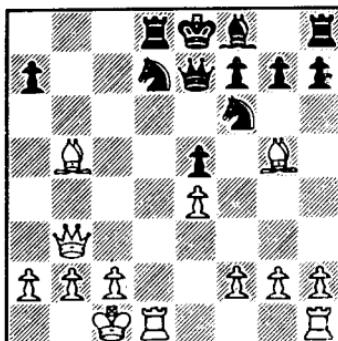
4 ♜xg7+ ♜d8 5 ♜f6+! (decoying) 5 . . . ♜xf6 6 ♜e7 mate. The game which was given the name 'Immortal Game'.

331) Anderssen-Dufresne (Berlin, 1852): 1 ♜xe7+! (decoying the knight at c6) 1 . . . ♜xe7 2 ♜xd7+!! (attracting the king to a double discovered check) 2 . . . ♜xd7 3 ♜f5++ ♜e8 4 ♜d7+ and mate on the following move. W. Steinitz called this game the 'Evergreen Game'.

332) L. Paulsen-Morphy (New York, 1857): 1 . . . ♜xf3!! 2 ♜f g6+ 3 ♜h1 ♜h3 4 ♜d1. More forceful would have been 4 ♜d3, although even after that Black would have won by means of the subtle move 4 . . . f5!! with the threat 5 . . . ♜g2+ and 6 . . . ♜xf3 mate. For instance, 5 ♜c4+ ♜f8! (5 . . . ♜h8? 6 ♜f7!) and once again White is threatened with mate. 6 ♜h4 ♜xf1 does not help, nor does 6 ♜g1 ♜xg1+ and 7 . . . ♜e1+.

4 . . . ♜g2+ 5 ♜g1 ♜xf3+ 6 ♜f1 ♜g2+ (more precise would have been 6 . . . ♜g2 with mate not later than the fourth move) 7 ♜g1 ♜h3+ (here the manoeuvre 7 . . . ♜e4+ 8 ♜f1 ♜f5 led to mate) 8 ♜h1 ♜xf2 9 ♜f1 ♜xf1 10 ♜xf1 ♜e2 11 ♜a1 ♜h6 12 d4 ♜e3! 0-1

333) Morphy-Duke of Brunswick and Count Isouard (Paris, 1858): 1 ♜xb5! cb 2 ♜xb5+ ♜bd7 3 0-0-0 ♜d8 (3 . . . ♜b4 – 4 ♜xf6).



4 ♜xd7! ♜xd7 5 ♜d1 ♜e6 (here also in reply to 5 . . . ♜b4 would have come 6 ♜xf6) 6 ♜xd7+ ♜xd7 7 ♜b8+! ♜xb8 8 ♜d8 mate. A

game that has figured in every textbook; it was played in a box at the Paris Opera.

334) Marache-Morphy (New York, 1859): 1 . . . $\text{Bx}e4!$ 2 $\text{Qx}e4 \text{Qg}3!!$ 3 $\text{Qxd}4$ (3 $\text{Bx}h7 - 3 . . . \text{Qde}2$ mate) 3 . . . $\text{Qe}2+$ 4 $\text{Bh}1 \text{Qx}h2+! 5 \text{Bx}h2 \text{Bh}8+$ and mate on the following move.

335) Rosanes-Anderssen (Breslau, early 1860's): 1 . . . $\text{Bxb}3!$ 2 ab $\text{Bxb}3$ 3 $\text{Qe}1 \text{Qe}3+$. Freeing the f-file, after which comes mate on b1.

336) Rosanes-Anderssen (Breslau, 1863): 1 . . . $\text{Qe}5!$ 2 a4 (the bishop cannot be captured because of 2 . . . $\text{Bb}6+$ mating) 2 . . . $\text{Qf}1+$. Having sacrificed his queen, Anderssen mated his opponent in four moves: 3 $\text{Bxf}1 \text{Qxd}4+$ 4 $\text{Ae}3 \text{Bx}e3$, and mate on the following move.

337) Anderssen-Zukertort (Barmen, 1869): Anderssen mated his partner in five moves: 1 $\text{Bx}h7+! \text{Bx}h7$ 2 $f6+$ $\text{Bg}8$ (2 . . . $\text{Bxd}3 - 3 \text{Bh}3+$ and 4 $\text{Bh}8$ mate) 3 $\text{Qh}7+!$ (the second attraction of the king to h7!) 3 . . . $\text{Bx}h7$ 4 $\text{Bh}3+ \text{Bg}8$ 5 $\text{Bh}8$ mate.

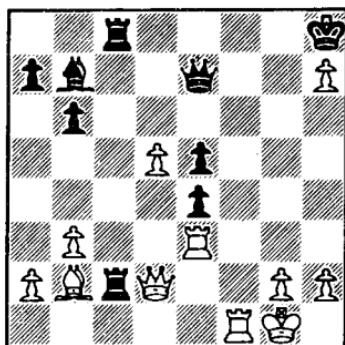
339) Steinitz-Zukertort (Match, London, 1872): 1 $\text{Bx}h7+! \text{Bx}h7$ 2 $\text{Bh}5+ \text{Bg}8$ 3 $\text{Bx}g6+$ $\text{Bg}7$ 4 $\text{Bh}6!$ $\text{Bf}8$ 5 $\text{Bh}8+$ $\text{Be}7$ 6 $\text{Bxe}5+ \text{Bf}7$ 7 $\text{Bx}e8+$ $\text{Bf}6$ 8 $\text{Bh}6+$ $\text{Bf}5$ 9 $\text{Bx}e5+$ $\text{Bg}4$ 10 $\text{Bf}4$ mate.

339) Anderssen-L. Paulsen (Vienna, 1873): 1 $\text{Qef}6+!$ gf 2 $\text{Qxf}6+ \text{Bf}7$ 3 $\text{Bxh}7+ \text{Bg}7$ (3 . . . $\text{Bg}6$ 4 $\text{Bf}3!$) 4 $\text{Bxg}7+!$ (attraction to a fork) 4 . . . $\text{Bxg}7$ 5 $\text{Qxe}8+$ $\text{Bf}8$ 6 $\text{Bxf}5+$ $\text{Bxf}5$ 7 $\text{Qxd}6$ and White obtained a material advantage.

340) Zukertort-Blackburne (London, 1883): 1 $\text{fg}!$ $\text{Bc}2$.

Black has no choice, since 1 . . . hg would have been followed by 2 $\text{Bg}3$.

2 $\text{gh}+$ $\text{Bh}8$ 3 $\text{d}5+$ $\text{e}5$.

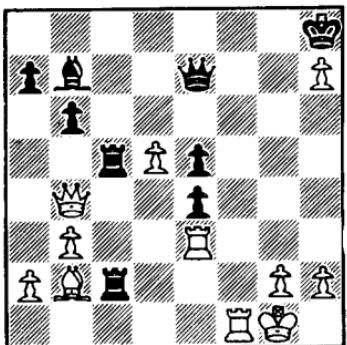


It may look as if White has achieved nothing and that Black will simply capture the bishop on his next move . . .

4 $\text{Bb}4!!$

A decoying sacrifice. If it is accepted Black will be mated . . . by the rooks on the outer files: 4 . . . $\text{Bxb}4$ 5 $\text{Qxe}5+$ $\text{Bxh}7$ 6 $\text{Bh}3+$ $\text{Bg}6$ 7 $\text{Bg}3+$ $\text{Bh}7$ 8 $\text{Bf}7+$ $\text{Bh}6$ 9 $\text{Bf}4+$ $\text{Bh}5$ 10 $\text{Bh}7$ mate.

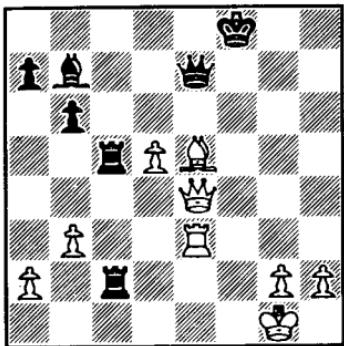
4 . . . $\text{Bc}5$.



5 ♜f8+!!

The second decoying sacrifice. The capture of the rook will enable Black to capture the pawns at e5 and e4 with check, after which the black king will remain alone with White's pieces: 5 . . . ♜xf8 6 ♜xe5+ ♜xh7 7 ♜xe4+.

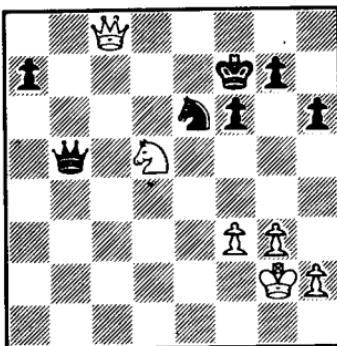
But the pawn can be captured instead of the rook — 5 . . . ♜xh7. Then the pawns at e5 and e4 are captured in reverse order: 6 ♜xe4+ ♜g7 7 ♜xe5+! ♜xf8.



8 ♜g7+! The concluding sacrifice, the theme of which is determined by the partner's reply: if 8 . . . ♜xg7 9 ♜xe7+ it is decoy-

ing (the king from guarding the queen) if 8 . . . ♜xg7 9 ♜e8 mate, it is attraction (of the queen to g7) which barricades the king's retreat on g7. 1-0

341) Zukertort-Englisch (London, 1883). How can the pawn at c7 be prompted on? In reply to 1 ♜b8+ will come 1 . . . ♜d7, and White achieves nothing. The elegant 1 ♜b5! ♜xb5 2 c8=♕+ ♜f7 is decisive.



White has given up his queen and promoted another one: the balance of power has not changed. But only for an instant.

3 ♜xe6+! (by attracting the king to a fork, White goes a piece up) 3 . . . ♜xe6 4 ♜c7+ and 5 ♜xb5.

342) Em. Lasker-Bauer (Amsterdam, 1889): 1 ♜xh7+! ♜xh7 2 ♜xh5+ ♜g8 3 ♜xg7! ♜xg7 4 ♜g4+ ♜h7 5 ♜f3 e5 6 ♜h3+ ♜h6 7 ♜xh6+ ♜xh6 8 ♜d7! 1-0

The primary source of many later combinations (Nimzowitsch-Tarrasch, St. Petersburg, 1914; Alekhine-Drütt, 1924).

343) Chigorin-Steinitz (World Championship Match, Havana, 1892): 1 ♜xf7! (there is another, positional, way to victory which is contained in the move 1 a5) 1 ... ♜xf7 2 e6+ ♜xe6 3 ♜e5 ♜c8.

In reply to 3 ... ♜e8, 4 ♜e1 ♜f6 is very strong and now 5 ♜xe7+! ♜xe7 (5 ... ♜xe7 – 6 ♜g4+) 6 ♜f3+ ♜e6 7 ♜f7+ ♜d7 8 ♜g4+ ♜c7 9 ♜f4+ ♜d7 10 ♜d6+ ♜c8 11 ♜xe7.

4 ♜fe1 ♜f6 5 ♜h5! g6 (if 5 ... ♜g6, then 6 g4 with the threat 7 g5+) 6 ♜xe7+ ♜xe7 (6 ... ♜xe7 – 7 ♜h4+ g5 8 ♜g4+ ♜f7 9 ♜xg5) 7 ♜xg6++ ♜f6 8 ♜xh8 ♜xd4 (in reply to 8 ... ♜xh8, 9 ♜e5 ♜c8 10 g4 wins) 9 ♜b3 ♜d7 10 ♜f3 ♜xh8 11 g4 ♜g8 12 ♜h6+ ♜g6 13 ♜xf5+. After 13 ... ♜xf5 14 ♜f8+ Black loses the queen. 1-0.

344) Steinitz-Chigorin (World Championship Match, Havana, 1892): 1 ♜xh7+! (a combination based on the action of the long-range bishops) 1 ... ♜xh7 2 ♜h1+ ♜g7 3 ♜h6+ ♜f6 4 ♜h4+ ♜e5 5 ♜xd4+, and Black resigned (5 ... ♜f5 6 g4 mate).

345) Steinitz-Bardeleben (Hastings, 1895): 1 ♜xe7+! ♜f8.

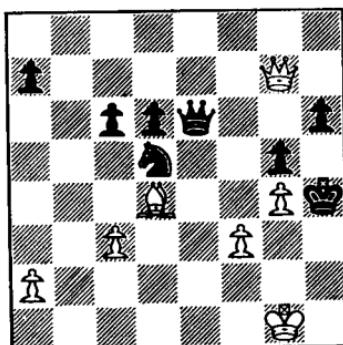
If 1 ... ♜xe7 (1 ... ♜xe7 – 2 ♜xc8+), then 2 ♜e1+ ♜d6 (2 ... ♜d8 – 3 ♜e6+ ♜e7 4 ♜c5+) 3 ♜b4+ ♜c7 4 ♜e6+ (4 ♜c1+ is also sufficient) 4 ... ♜b8 5 ♜f4+ ♜c7 6 ♜xc7 ♜xc7 7 ♜e8 mate.

2 ♜f7+! ♜g8 3 ♜g7+! (the rook

cannot be captured either by the king or by the queen; in his turn, White cannot capture the unguarded queen because of mate) 3 ... ♜h8 (3 ... ♜f8 – 4 ♜xh7+) 4 ♜xh7+!

In this position the game was interrupted — Bardeleben . . . left the tournament hall, and Steinitz demonstrated before the spectators the following finale: 4 ... ♜g8 5 ♜g7+! ♜h8 6 ♜h4+ ♜xg7 7 ♜h7+ ♜f8 8 ♜h8+ ♜e7 9 ♜g7+ ♜e8 (if 9 . . . ♜d8, then 10 ♜f8+ ♜e8 11 ♜f7+ and 12 ♜d6 mate; 9 . . . ♜d6 – 10 ♜xf6+) 10 ♜g8+! ♜e7 11 ♜f7+ ♜d8 12 ♜f8+ ♜e8 13 ♜f7+ 14 ♜d6 mate.

346) Schlechter-Meitner (Vienna, 1899): 1 g4+! fg 2 hg+ ♜h4.



3 ♜xh6+!! ♜xh6 4 ♜h2. As there is no defence to 5 ♜f2 mate, Black resigned.

347) Reggio-Mieses (Monte Carlo, 1902), Black will deliver mate with the move ♜b6-e3+ if he can divert or cut off the enemy queen. But the straightforward 1 . . . ♜h4+

does not achieve the aim, since White is not forced to capture the bishop, or to play g2-g3. After 2 ♜d2 the bishop check turns out to be a futile stroke.

The decisive move is 1 ... ♘g3! The reply 2 hg closes the line of action of the defender of e3 (2 ... ♗e3+), and to 2 ♗xg3 there follows a decoying blow exploiting a pin — 2 ... ♖h4! As a result White loses his queen.

348) Popil-Marco (Monte Carlo, 1902). Thinking that the pinned bishop at d4 was lost, Marko resigned the game. A classic example of resigning in a winning position. The move 1 ... ♖g1!! led to victory.

349) Nimzowitsch-Hoffer (Nürnberg, 1904): 1 ♖e8!! ♘axe8 (1 ... gf — 2 ♔g4!; 1 ... ♗xf2 — 2 ♔xf7+ ♖h8 3 ♔g6 mate) 2 ♗h6!! gh 3 ♔g4. 1-0

350) Capablanca-Raubitschek (New York, 1906): it is impossible to decoy the queen from defending a7 — he has free squares on the 'diagonal of life'. But if White's second rook were to land on a5, Black would not be able to avoid mate. The forced manoeuvre 1 ♘f1! ♖d4 2 ♘f5! achieves the aim. By positioning itself on the f-file the rook prevents any checks. There is no defence to the deadly threat 3 ♘xa7+! ♗xa7 4 ♘a5.

351) Rotlewi-Rubinstein (Lodz, 1907): 1 ... ♘xc3! 2 gh ♘d2! 3 ♗xd2 ♗xe4+ 4 ♗g2 ♘h3! 0-1

352) Ed. Lasker-Thomas (London, 1911): 1 ♗xh7+!! (attraction to a double discovered check, as a result of which the black king has to venture out into the enemy camp) 1 ... ♗xh7 2 ♗xf6++ ♗h6 (2 ... ♗h8 — 3 ♗g6 mate) 3 ♗eg4+ ♗g5

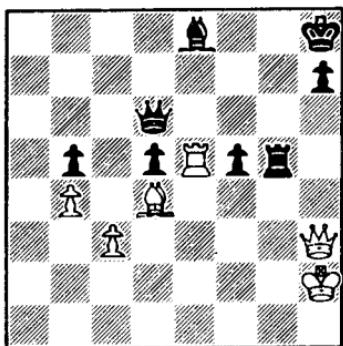
4 h4+ (4 f4+! achieved the aim more rapidly) 4 ... ♗f4 5. g3+ ♗f3 6 ♗e2+ (a move earlier mate could have been reached by means of 6 0-0-0 with the threats 7 ♗e5 mate or 7 ♗h2 mate) 6 ... ♗g2 7 ♘h2+ ♗g1 8 ♗d2 mate.

353) Lewicki-Marshall (Breslau, 1912). After the extremely beautiful move 1 ... ♗g3!! had been made White resigned (2 fg ♗e2+ and 3 ... ♘xf1 mate; 2 hg ♗e2 mate; 2 ♗xg3 ♗e2+ 3 ♗h1 ♗xg3+ 4 ♗g1 ♗xf1 or 4 ... ♘h5). In essence it is a combination that leads to a general exchange for the purpose of realizing an already existing material advantage. Another, not as effective way would have been 1 ... ♗e3.

354) Duras-Spielmann (Pistyan, 1912): 1 ♗g3!!

This way the rook at e5 unpins itself. There is the threat of the double discovered check 2 ♘xe8++.

1 ... ♗xh6+ 2 ♗h3 ♗d6 (the queen exchange lost).



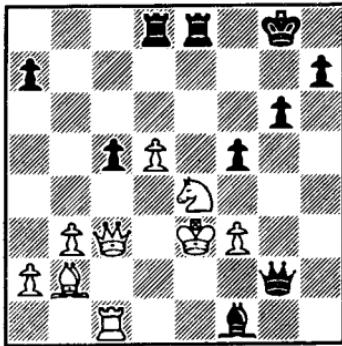
3 ♜h1! (now the blow on e8 cannot be prevented) 3 ... ♜g8 4 ♜xe8+ ♜f7 5 ♜h8. 1-0

355) Nimzowitsch-Tarrasch (St. Petersburg, 1914). Black wins with the aid of a model combination: 1 ... ♜xh2+! 2 ♜xh2 ♜h4+ 3 ♜g1 ♜xg2.

In reply to 4 ♜xg2, 4 ... ♜g4+ 5 ♜h1 ♜d5 is decisive. In order to protect himself against mate White has to give up the queen with the move 6 ♜xc5, but after 6 ... ♜h5+ 7 ♜xh5 ♜xh5+ 8 ♜g1 ♜g5+ Black wins the knight as well.

4 f3 ♜fe8! 5 ♜e4 (now 5 ♜xg2 will be followed by 5 ... ♜e2+) ♜h1+ 6 ♜f2 ♜xf1.

The material advantage is already on Black's side since White cannot capture on f1 because of 7 ... ♜h2+ and 8 ... ♜xc2. White's attempt at creating threats on the long diagonal is parried: 7 d5 f5! 8 ♜c3 (after 8 ♜f6+ ♜f7 9 ♜xe8 ♜xe8 White is mated) 8 ... ♜g2+ 9 ♜e3.



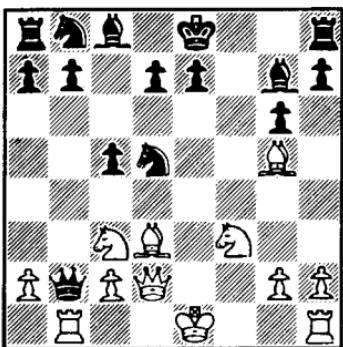
9 ... ♜xe4+! 10 fe f4+ 11 ♜xf4 ♜f8+ 12 ♜e5 ♜h2+ 13 ♜e6 ♜e8+ 14 ♜d7 ♜b5 mate.

356) Tarrasch-Players in Consultation (Naples, 1914): 1 ♜c7!! (closing two lines and forcing Black to capture the bishop) 1 ... ♜xc7 (if 1 ... ♜xc7, then 2 ♜b7+ ♜xb7 3 ♜xc5 mate; 2 ... ♜xa5 3 ♜a1+) 2 ♜xc5+! (diverting the queen from defending b7) 2 ... ♜xc5 3 ♜b7+ ♜xa5 4 ♜a1 mate.

357) Capablanca-Tenner (New York, 1918): 1 ♜h6+ ♜h8 2 ♜xe5!! (decoying the queen from defending the eighth rank) 2 ... ♜xe5 3 ♜xf7+! And now the rook is decoyed from defending the back rank. Black resigned, since 3 ... ♜xf7 4 ♜d8+ leads to mate, and after 3 ... ♜g8 4 ♜xe5 he ends up a piece down.

358) Réti-Euwe (Rotterdam, 1920). Both partners (White, by sacrificing a second pawn and Black, by accept-

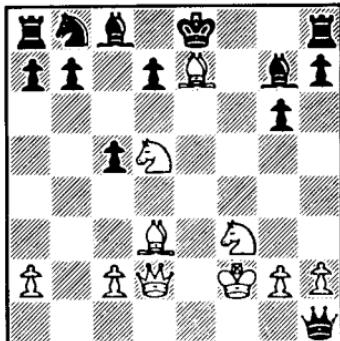
ing the sacrifice) had played for the same variation, each one reckoning it to be in his favour: 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 2 $\mathbb{B}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$. Black had pinned his hopes on this move. He had declined 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}a3$ in view of 3 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}xa2$ 4 0-0.



'In reply to 3 $\mathbb{B}xb2$ comes 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc3$, winning back the queen and going three pawns.'

'3 $\mathbb{B}xb2$ is followed 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc3$, winning back the queen and staying three pawns up. After all, the knight at d5 cannot be captured: the rook is unguarded' — this is the way Black reasoned, having opted, on the question of 'to take or not to take', for 'taking'. But White had planned something different.

There followed 3 $\mathbb{Q}xd5!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xb1+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xe7$.



The queen is out of the game, and Black, with a huge material advantage at his disposal, is in effect, battling without his queen. The threat is $\mathbb{Q}d2-e2$.

5 ... $d6$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$.

If 7 ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$, then 8 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$, otherwise there is the deadly check on e2. It now follows after the exchange of the knight at c6.

8 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ bc 9 $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ 9 ... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ is followed by 10 $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 11 $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 12 $\mathbb{Q}xg6++$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 13 $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 14 $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ mate. And if 9 ... $\mathbb{Q}d8$, then 10 $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 11 $\mathbb{Q}a6$ mate. 1-0

359) Adams-C. Torre (New Orleans, 1920): 1 $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ (here as well as further on the queen is decoyed from defending the back rank) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}c7!$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ (if 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}a4$, then 4 $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ $g6$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xc8$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}xe8+$) 4 a4! (the attraction of the queen to the fourth rank decides the result of the game) 4 ... $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ (if 4 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe2$, then 5 $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ $h6$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}xe8$) 5 $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}xb7!$ As there is nowhere else left to retreat, Black resigned. Perhaps

the best example of a decoying sacrifice aimed at exploiting the weakness of the eighth rank.

360) Lund-Nimzowitsch (Oslo, 1921): 1 ... b4! 2 ab ♜xh4! 3 gh g3! 4 fg c3+ 5 bc (5 ♜xc3 ♜xe3) 5 ... a3. White resigned.

The sacrifice of material and the g-pawn was aimed at depriving the bishop at e3 of its pawn guard. This forced White to play 5 bc in reply to 4 ... c3+, which led to the realization of the passed a-pawn.

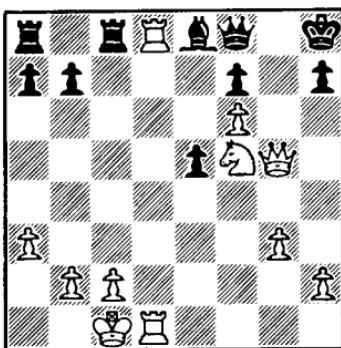
361) Alekhine-Sämisch (Berlin, 1923): 1 fe! ♜xg3 2 ef+ ♜h8 3 ♜d5! Black resigned. The pawn at f7 turns out to be stronger than the black queen. For instance: 3 ... ♜c5 4 ♜e6 ♜e5 5 ♜xe5 de 6 ♜xc5 bc 7 ♜c7 ♜b8 8 ♜e8; 3 ... ♜b7 4 ♜e6 ♜e5 5 ♜xd8; 3 ... ♜a7 4 ♜c6 ♜e5 5 ♜xe5 de 6 ♜xa7 ♜xa7 7 ♜xb6 ♜f8 8 ♜xc8 ♜xc8 9 ♜xd7; 3 ... ♜b8 4 ♜c6 ♜e5 5 ♜xe5 de 6 ♜xb8 ♜xb8 7 ♜c7! ♜f8 8 ♜e6.

362) Nenarokov-Grigoriev (Moscow, 1923). The rook is guarding the d-pawn, and the bishop — the h-pawn. And nevertheless Black wins!

1 ... ♜d6!! A purely study-like example of line-closing, performed in a real game. The capture with the bishop is impossible — the d-pawn will promote, and if 2 ♜xd6 White immediately loses control of the b8=h2 diagonal, and 2 ... h2 ends the game.

363) Em. Lasker-Réti (New York, 1924): 1 ♜xc6 (removing the defender of d8) 1 ... ♜xc6 (in reply to 1 ... ♜xc6 the decoying sacrifice 2 ♜d8! wins) 2 ♜d8 ♜cc8.

If 2 ... ♜xd8 3 ♜xd8 ♜e6, then 4 ♜e7!, closing the e-file and threatening 5 ♜xe8.



3 ... ♜g7+! ♜xg7 4 fg+ ♜g8 5 ♜e7+. 1-0

364) Réti-Bogoljubow (New York, 1924): 1 ♜f1 ♜d8 (1 ... ♜e7 — 2 ♜f7+ ♜h8 3 ♜d5!) 2 ♜f7+ ♜h8 3 ♜e8! 1-0

365) C. Torre-Em. Lasker (Moscow, 1925): 1 ♜f6!

By sacrificing the queen, White, with the aid of a 'windmill' — i.e. multiple attraction to discovered check — 'grinds up' several enemy pieces or even the whole flank.

1 ... ♜xh5 2 ♜xg7+ ♜h8 3 ♜xf7+ ♜g8 4 ♜g7+ ♜h8 5 ♜xb7+ ♜g8 6 ♜g7+ ♜h8 7 ♜g5+ (by the same means the pawn at a7 could have been captured, but White did

not want to open the a-file for his opponent) 7 ... ♜h7 8 ♜xh5 ♜g6. Black wins back a piece, but finally he is two pawns down.

366) Capablanca-Zubaryev (Moscow, 1925): 1 ♜e1+ ♜e5 (if 1 ... ♜d8, then 2 ♜a8+, and to 1 ... ♜d6, 2 ♜b6+ wins) 2 d6+! ♜e6 3 ♜b3+ ♜f5 4 ♜d3+ ♜g5 5 ♜e3+ ♜f5 (5 ... ♜h5 – 6 g4+) 6 ♜e4+ ♜e6 7 ♜c4+ ♜xd6 (otherwise it is mate) 8 ♜d1+ ♜e7 9 ♜xd7+ ♜xd7 10 ♜xa6. 1-0

367) Alekhine-Colle (Paris, 1925): 1 ♜xd7! ♜xd7 2 ♜e8+ ♜h7 3 ♜cc8. The queen and the g-pawns have barricaded the king's exit, and he can only be saved at the cost of huge losses. 1-0

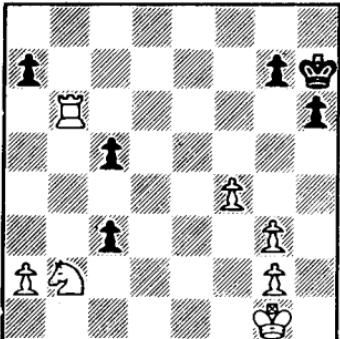
368) Alekhine-NN (Simultaneous display, Holland, 1933): 1 ♜e5!! de (1 ... ♜xe5 – 2 ♜xe5 de 3 g6 mating) 2 g6!! 1-0 2 ... ♜xg6 is followed by 3 ♜c4+ ♜f7 (or 3 ... ♜f7) 4 ♜h8 mate.

369) Tulkowski-Wojciechski (Poznan' 1931): 1 ... ♜d2 2 ♜a4 ♜xb2!! 3 ♜xb2 c3.

Now 4 ♜d3 will be followed by 4 ... c4+ 5 ♜f1 cd with an easy win. And 5 ♜xb6 (instead of 5 ♜f1) 5 ... cd 6 ♜c6 d2 offers no escape either. But White can change the order of the moves by capturing immediately on b6.

4 ♜xb6. Now 4 ... ab will be followed by 5 ♜d3 and White wins easily. And if 4 ... cb, then, of

course, 5 ♜xb2. But what was Black counting on?



4 ... c4!!

The isolated pawns turn out to be stronger than the rook and the knight! If White plays 5 ♜xc4, then 5 ... c2, and the pawn promotes to a queen. And 5 ♜e6 cb 6 ♜e1 c3 is also bad for White. That only leaves 5 ♜b4, but then 5 ... a5!!

The third pawn steps into the game with a decisive effect.

6 ♜a4 (6 ♜b5 – 6 ... c2; 6 ♜xc4 – 6 ... cb) 6 ... ab. 0-1
One of the most beautiful endgames in the history of chess.

However 2 a4! ♜xb2 3 a5 draws – ed.

370) Lilienthal-Capablanca (Hastings, 1934/35): 1 ef!! ♜xc2 2 fg ♜g8 3 ♜d4 ♜e4.

If 3 ... ♜d2, then 4 ♜ae1+ ♜e5 5 ♜xe5+ ♜d7 6 ♜d5+ ♜e8 7 ♜e1+. And 3 ... ♜xc3 4 ♜ae1+ ♜e5 5 ♜xe5+ ♜d7 6 ♜e7+ is also hopeless for Black.

4 ♜ae1 ♜c5 5 ♜xe4+ ♜xe4 6 ♜e1.

The concluding move of the combination – White is left with a decisive material advantage.

6 ... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$, and without waiting for White's reply, Capablanca resigned. There could have followed 8 $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 9 f6 with 10 $\mathbb{Q}g3+$.

371) Em. Lasker-Pirc (Moscow, 1935): 1 $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$ gf 2 $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$.

In reply to 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$, 3 $\mathbb{Q}f5+$ ef 4 $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ wins. If 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$, then 3 $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ and still 4 $\mathbb{Q}f5!$, exploiting the pin. In reply to 4 ... $\mathbb{Q}e8$, 5 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ is decisive.

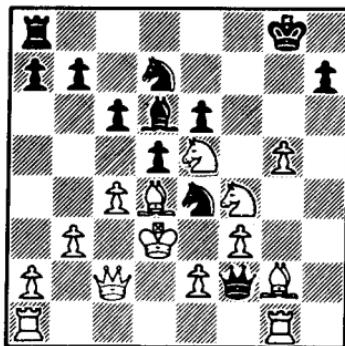
3 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$.

Tantamount to resignation. However, there was no escape in 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$, which would have been followed by that same move 4 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ with the further 4 ... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}a4!$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 8 $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 9 $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ and 10 $\mathbb{Q}h8$ mate or 4 ... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ (instead of 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}c7$) 5 $\mathbb{Q}xd6!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}d1+$.

4 $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}xe6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3+$ 8 $\mathbb{Q}h1$. 1-0

372) Botvinnik-Vidmar (Nottingham, 1936): 1 $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ (1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf7 - 2 \mathbb{Q}xd5+$) 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ (if 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$, then 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ and the rook at c8 is unprotected) 3 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}d7$. 1-0

373) Kotov-Bondarevsky (Leningrad, 1936): 1 ... f4+! (blocking f4 with the aim of depriving the king of it) 2 $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}d3$.



3 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd4+!$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ mate.

374) Bondarevsky-Ufimtsev (Leningrad, 1936). Black's previous move was $\mathbb{Q}h3-g2$, which was followed by 1 $\mathbb{Q}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}e8+!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g5!$, and mate is inevitable.

375) Botvinnik-Capablanca (AVRO Tournament, Holland, 1938): 1 $\mathbb{Q}a3!$ (decoying the queen) 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}xa3$.

If 1 ... $\mathbb{Q}e8$, then 2 $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}d8$.
2 $\mathbb{Q}h5+!$ (decoying the g-pawn)
2 ... gh.

Once again Black has to accept the sacrifice. After 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ there is no perpetual check: 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d2+$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3+$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4+$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}g4+$.

3 $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5 $e7!$ (White has given up two pieces for the sake of this advance) 5 ... $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}f2$.

The white king shelters from the

checks on ... h5!

6 ... ♜c2+ 7 ♜g3 ♜d3+ 8 ♜h4
 ♜e4+ 9 ♜xh5 ♜e2+ 10 ♜h4 ♜e4+
 11 g4! (a small subtlety: not 11
 ♜h3? in view of 11 ... h5) 11 ...
 ♜e1+ 12 ♜h5. The checks have
 ended. 0-1

376) Botvinnik-Keres (World Championship Match-Tournament, The Hague-Moscow, 1948): 1 ♜xg7+!
 ♜xg7 2 ♜h5+ ♜g6 (if 2 ... ♜f8,
 then 3 ♜xf6 ♜xf6 4 ♜xf6) 3 ♜e3!!
 1-0

377) Keres-Kotov (Candidates' Tournament, Budapest, 1950): 1
 ♜xe6! ♜xe6 (in case of 1 ... ♜xh5
 2 ♜d5! ♜b6 3 ♜xc4 ♜xc4 4 ♜c7+
 Black would have lost material) 2
 ♜d5 ♜d8 (if 2 ... ♜xd5 3 ed ♜f5,
 then 4 ♜e1+! ♜e5 5 f4 with the
 threat 6 fe ♜xg5 7 ed+) 3 ♜g4 (in
 reply to 3 ... ♜e8 would have
 come 4 ♜d2! with the threats 5
 ♜xd7 and 5 ♜c3) 4 f4 ♜xe4 5
 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 (5 ... ♜xd7 – 6
 ♜xf6) 6 ♜xf6 gf 7 ♜xf6+ ♜c7 8
 ♜xh8 ♜c6 9 ♜d2 ♜h6 10 ♜ae1
 ♜g6 11 ♜e7+ ♜d8 12 ♜fe1, and

White won.

378) Kotov-Keres (Candidates' Tournament, Budapest, 1950): 1
 ♜f4!! gh 2 ♜xg6.

The knight cannot be captured
 because of mate, and there is the
 threat of 3 ♜e7+. 2 ... ♜e8 3
 ♜h8! ♜e7.

The following is not much better
 either: 3 ... ♜e7 4 ♜h7+ ♜f8 5
 ♜xh6+ ♜g8 6 ♜h7+ ♜xh8 7 ♜g6+
 ♜g8 8 ♜h7+ and 9 ♜h8 mate or 3
 ... ♜d7 4 ♜h7+ ♜f8 5 ♜g6+, and
 Black loses the queen. In case of
 3 ... ♜f8 White has a pleasant
 choice between 4 ♜xf7 or 4 ♜h7
 ♜e7 5 f4 etc., as happened in the
 game.

4 ♜h7+ ♜f8 5 f4! ♜xc4 6 f5 ef
 7 0-0 ♜c8 8 ♜xf5 ♜xf5 9 ♜xf5
 ♜e8 10 ♜xf7 ♜d7 11 ♜f5+ ♜c6 12
 ♜f6+ ♜d7 13 e6+ ♜c6 14 ♜xe7
 ♜xh8 15 ♜xc7+ ♜b5 (if 15 ...
 ♜xc7, then 16 ♜e7+ ♜c8 17 ♜f1)
 16 ♜e7 a5 17 ♜d7+ ♜a6 18 ♜b1.
 1-0.

If Black had played 18 ... ♜e8,
 then 19 ♜a7+ would have been
 decisive, and if 18 ... ♜xa3 – 19
 ♜xb6+ ♜xb6 20 ♜c6 mate.